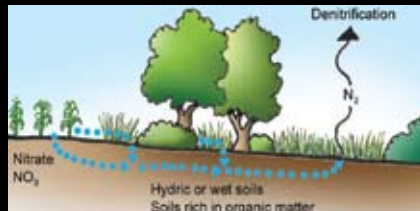




Conservation Buffers



Design Guidelines for Buffers, Corridors, and Greenways



Abstract

Bentrup, G. 2008. Conservation buffers: design guidelines for buffers, corridors, and greenways. Gen. Tech. Rep. SRS-109. Asheville, NC: Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southern Research Station. 110 p.

Over 80 illustrated design guidelines for conservation buffers are synthesized and developed from a review of over 1,400 research publications. Each guideline describes a specific way that a vegetative buffer can be applied to protect soil, improve air and water quality, enhance fish and wildlife habitat, produce economic products, provide recreation opportunities, or beautify the landscape. These science-based guidelines are presented as easy-to-understand rules-of-thumb for facilitating the planning and designing of conservation buffers in rural and urban landscapes. The online version of the guide includes the reference publication list as well as other buffer design resources www.bufferguidelines.net.

Keywords: Buffer, conservation planning, conservation practice, corridor, filter strip, greenway, riparian, streamside management zone, windbreak.

About the author

Gary Bentrup is a Research Landscape Planner, National Agroforestry Center, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southern Research Station, Lincoln, NE 68538.



**National
Agroforestry
Center**



Table of Contents

Acknowledgments	ii
USING THE GUIDE	
Purpose of this Guide	1
The Guide Online	2
Limitations of this Guide	2
Landscape Design Concepts	3
Planning Conservation Buffers	5
How to Use this Guide	11
DESIGN GUIDELINES	
1. Water Quality	15
2. Biodiversity	43
3. Productive Soils	61
4. Economic Opportunities	67
5. Protection and Safety	77
6. Aesthetics and Visual Quality	89
7. Outdoor Recreation	99
Glossary	107



Click Here

- Online version with over 1400 references
- Online slideshow with guidelines
- Additional buffer design resources

Acknowledgments

The author would like to thank the many scientists whose research was used in the synthesis of this guide. Collectively, their work provides an invaluable scientific foundation for protecting and improving the health and vitality of the places we live.

Special recognition is extended to Mike Dosskey, U.S. Department of Agriculture, National Agroforestry Center (NAC), who developed the buffer width tool and assisted with the development of other guidelines on water quality.

The author is also deeply indebted to his many colleagues at NAC whose input and feedback significantly enhanced this project as well as to the Southern Research Station Science Delivery team for their assistance and editorial review.

The author wishes to acknowledge the many individuals whose technical reviews substantially improved the quality of this guide:

Lynn Betts, USDA NRCS, Des Moines, IA

Bill Berry, Buffer Notes, Stevens Point, WI

Jim Carlson, New Castle, CO

William Clark, Iowa State University, Ames, IA

Robert Corry, University of Guelph, Guelph, ON, Canada

Mary Cressel, USDA NRCS, Washington, DC

Barth Crouch, Pheasants Forever, Salina, KS

Seth Dabney, USDA ARS, Oxford, MS

Richard T.T. Forman, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA

Wendell Gilgert, USDA NRCS, Portland, OR

Hank Henry, USDA NRCS, Greensboro, NC

George Hess, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, NC

Jerry Jasmer, USDA NRCS, Casper, WY

Craig Johnson, Utah State University, Logan, UT

Richard Kittelson, Northeast Iowa RC&D, Postville, IA

John Kort, PFRA Shelterbelt Centre, Indian Head, SK, Canada

Mike Kucera, USDA NRCS, Lincoln, NE
Jerry Lemunyon, USDA NRCS, Fort Worth, TX
Rich Lewis, NY Soil & Water Conservation Committee, Albany, NY
Greg McPherson, USDA USFS, Davis, CA
Fabian Menalled, Montana State University, Bozeman, MT
Roberta Moltzen, USDA NRCS, Des Moines, IA
Judy Okay, USDA USFS, Annapolis, MD
Jennifer Ousley, U.S. EPA, Kansas City, KS
Jim Robinson, USDA NRCS, Fort Worth, TX
Dick Rol, Foothill Associates, San Diego, CA
Max Schnepf, Soil and Water Conservation Society, Ankeny, IA
Richard Sutton, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, NE
Bern Sweeney, Stroud Water Research Center, Avondale, PA
Mark Tomer, USDA ARS, Ames, IA
Lyn Townsend, USDA NRCS, Portland, OR
Doug Wallace, USDA NRCS, Columbia, MO

Funding for this research was provided in part by the University of Missouri Center for Agroforestry under the project “A Floodplain Analysis of Agroforestry’s Physical, Biological, Ecological, Economic and Social Benefits” from 1999 through 2006 of Cooperative Agreements AG-02100251 with the USDA Agricultural Research Service (ARS) and CR-826704-01-0 with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The information provided here is the sole responsibility of the author and may not represent the policies or positions of the ARS or EPA.

Funds to assist with printing were provided by:
USDA Forest Service Region 2 State and Private Forestry
USDA Forest Service Region 8 State and Private Forestry
USDA NAC State and Private Forestry
USDA NRCS Science and Technology—Agroforestry

All photos are courtesy of the U.S. Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service. All illustrations were created by the author except for the photo illustration on page 4 provided by Ryan Dee.

PURPOSE OF THIS GUIDE

Conservation buffers are strips of vegetation placed in the landscape to influence ecological processes and provide a variety of goods and services to us. They are called by many names, including wildlife corridors, greenways, windbreaks, and filter strips to name just a few (fig. 1).

Benefits that conservation buffers provide to us include protecting soil resources, improving air and water quality, enhancing fish and wildlife habitat, and beautifying the landscape. In addition, buffers offer landowners an array of economic opportunities including protection and enhancement of existing enterprises.

A large body of scientific knowledge exists to help guide the planning and designing of buffers. Unfortunately, this information is widely dispersed throughout the vast repositories of research literature and is not easily accessible or usable for most planners.

The purpose of this publication is to provide a synthesis of this diverse knowledge base into distilled, easy-to-understand design guidelines.



Figure 1—Conservation buffers in an agricultural landscape.

The Guide Online

Over 80 design guidelines were developed from more than 1,400 research articles from disciplines as diverse as agricultural engineering, conservation biology, economics, hydrology, landscape ecology, social sciences, and urban ecology.

These articles are cited in the online version of this guide. These references can serve as a valuable resource for additional design information.



- Online version with over 1400 references
- Online slideshow with guidelines
- Additional buffer design resources

Limitations Of This Guide

This guide is not a cookbook for design. Some of the guidelines reflect many years of research and are offered with a high level of confidence while other guidelines are based on limited research and reflect a greater degree of extrapolation to generalize them. There are still many gaps in our understanding of buffers and their ecological and socioeconomic functions and impacts. The planner must weave these guidelines together with first-hand knowledge of the site, the landscape, and landowner goals to create a design that optimizes benefits and minimizes potential problems.

Consequently, this guide should not serve as a sole source for design information but rather as a means to facilitate and communicate the design process. Additional resources, standards, and expert advice should be consulted as appropriate.

Landscape Design Concepts

One method of describing landscapes divides a landscape into three basic elements: patches, corridors or buffers, and matrix (fig. 2).



Figure 2—The landscape described in basic landscape ecology terms.

Patch: A relatively small area that has distinctly different structure and function than the surrounding landscape.

Corridor or Buffer: A linear patch typically having certain enhanced functions due to its linear shape (see box on next page).

Matrix: The background within which patches and buffers exist.

In developed landscapes, patches are often remnant areas of woodland or prairie; corridors are linear elements such as windbreaks, fencerows, and riparian areas; and the matrix is often developed lands such as cropland or urban areas.

While this guide focuses on designing buffers, the patches and matrix areas must be considered in the design process to help achieve many desired objectives. Location, structure, and management of nearby patches and matrix influence the types of functions that buffers will perform and their effectiveness.

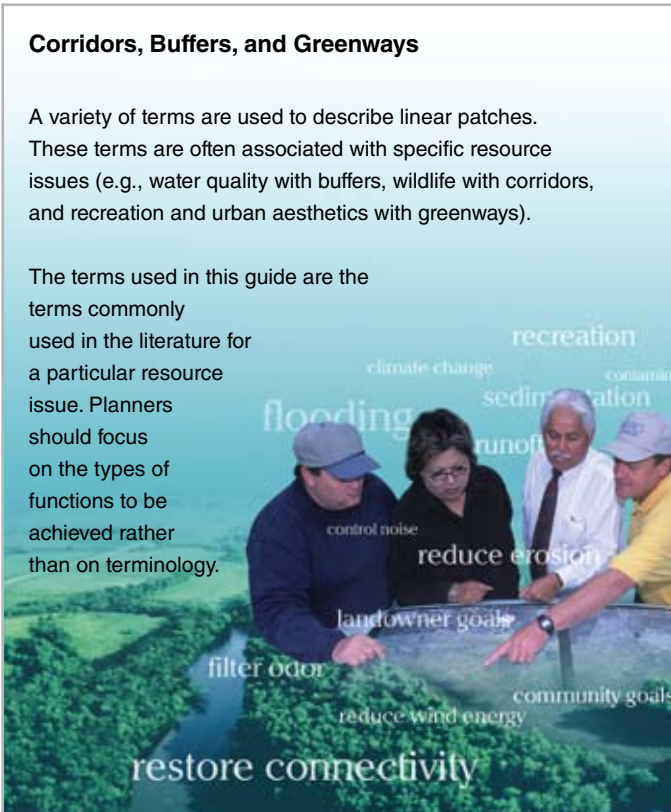
Buffer installations may be ineffective if they are designed without an understanding of landscape processes. For example, buffers installed for streambank stabilization may be ineffective in an urbanizing watershed unless they account for stream flows that are dramatically increasing due to impervious cover.

Buffers are only one tool in the planner's tool box. Planners need to be realistic in applying buffers, acknowledging both the strengths and limitations of buffers to solve and manage resource concerns.

Corridors, Buffers, and Greenways

A variety of terms are used to describe linear patches. These terms are often associated with specific resource issues (e.g., water quality with buffers, wildlife with corridors, and recreation and urban aesthetics with greenways).

The terms used in this guide are the terms commonly used in the literature for a particular resource issue. Planners should focus on the types of functions to be achieved rather than on terminology.



Planning Conservation Buffers

Functions

Conservation buffers improve resource conditions by enhancing certain landscape functions. Major issues that buffers can be designed to address and their associated functions are listed in table 1.

Most buffers will perform more than one function, even if designed with only one function in mind. Buffer design should take into account intended functions as well as unintended ones that may or may not be desirable.

Location

Location determines a buffer's juxtaposition to problem conditions in the surrounding landscape. It also determines important site characteristics, such as soil type and slope, that can influence how effective a buffer can be. One location may be better for one function, while a different location would be better for another function (fig. 3).

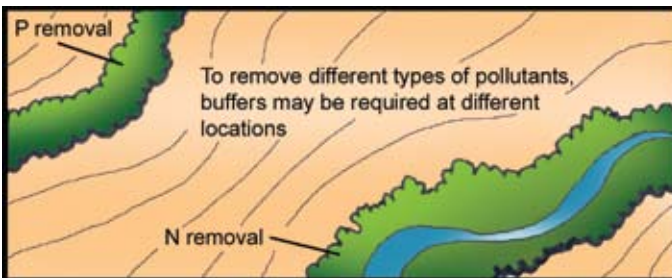


Figure 3—Buffer location will determine actual functions.

Geographic Information Systems (GIS) can be used for identifying suitable locations for buffers. By querying the landscape for site factors required for a desired function, better locations can be identified where an objective can be addressed with a buffer. GIS is particularly useful for identifying locations where a buffer can serve multiple functions.

For more information on GIS and buffer planning and design, go to www.bufferguidelines.net.

Table 1—Buffer functions related to issues and objectives

Issue and Objectives	Buffer Functions
Water Quality	
Reduce erosion and runoff of sediment, nutrients, and other potential pollutants	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration Trap pollutants in surface runoff Trap pollutants in subsurface flow
Remove pollutants from water runoff and wind	Stabilize soil Reduce bank erosion
Biodiversity	
Enhance terrestrial habitat	Increase habitat area Protect sensitive habitats
Enhance aquatic habitat	Restore connectivity Increase access to resources Shade stream to maintain temperature
Productive Soils	
Reduce soil erosion	Reduce water runoff energy Reduce wind energy
Increase soil productivity	Stabilize soil Improve soil quality Remove soil pollutants
Economic Opportunities	
Provide income sources	Produce marketable products Reduce energy consumption
Increase economic diversity	Increase property values
Increase economic value	Provide alternative energy sources Provide ecosystem services
Protection and Safety	
Protect from wind or snow	Reduce wind energy
Increase biological control of pests	Modify microclimate
Protect from flood waters	Enhance habitat for predators of pests Reduce flood water levels and erosion
Create a safe environment	Reduce hazards
Aesthetics and Visual Quality	
Enhance visual quality	Enhance visual interest Screen undesirable views
Control noise levels	Screen undesirable noise
Control air pollutants and odor	Filter air pollutants and odors Separate human activities
Outdoor Recreation	
Promote nature-based recreation	Increase natural area Protect natural areas Protect soil and plant resources
Use buffers as recreational trails	Provide a corridor for movement Enhance recreational experience

Structure

Structural characteristics of a buffer such as size and shape and the structure of the vegetation largely determine how well a buffer is capable of functioning at a given location. Planners can manipulate these variables to achieve desired objectives. The guidelines in this publication address many of these design and management considerations.

Systems

Buffers are typically designed to achieve multiple objectives—objectives of individual landowners, the community, and general public. Often multiple objectives must be addressed by multiple buffers with different designs in different locations, creating a system of buffers.

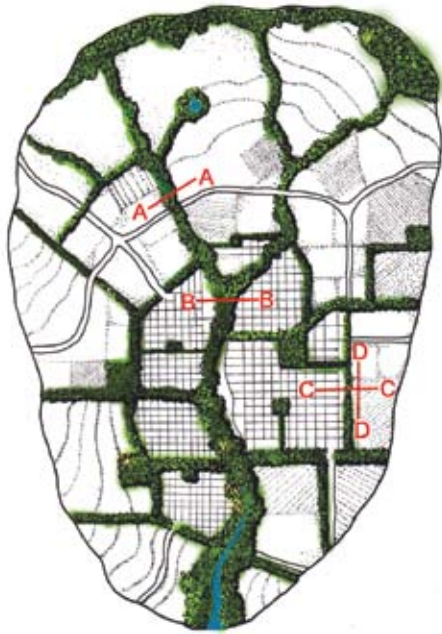
Each objective has its own scale, and each buffer function operates at its own scale. It's a complex task to address multiple objectives and functions. A planning process is a structured method to organize and conduct this task and ensure that all objectives are addressed. The result is called a landscape plan.

A typical planning process includes the following steps:

- Identifying problems and opportunities
- Determining objectives
- Inventorying resources
- Analyzing resources
- Developing alternatives
- Evaluating alternatives and making decisions
- Implementing the plan
- Evaluating the plan

For more information on planning processes, go to www.bufferguidelines.net. Figure 4 illustrates a conceptual buffer landscape plan developed through a planning process. The following page provides a brief description of the plan.

Figure 4—Conceptual plan and sections illustrating several types of conservation buffers in a watershed. Each buffer accomplishes different sets of functions and objectives.



Section A-A



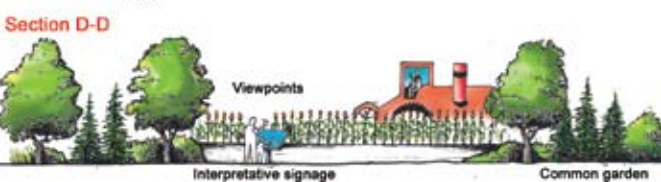
Section B-B



Section C-C



Section D-D



The buffer plan (fig. 4) demonstrates how the buffer location in the watershed plays a key role in determining the functions and objectives for a particular segment of the buffer system.

Section A-A: a buffer designed to filter agricultural runoff to reduce a community's drinking water treatment costs. This buffer provides habitat and a conduit for wildlife while offering a public recreational trail.

Section B-B: a buffer in a more urbanized area. A constructed wetland in the buffer treats runoff before it flows into the stream. An active recreation area in the buffer provides a firebreak to protect homes. Wildlife still benefits from this buffer, but this objective plays a less significant role than in Section A-A due to the buffer location.

Section C-C: a buffer between an agricultural field and a residential area. This buffer serves as a common garden for both rural and urban residents. Noise control and protection from agricultural spray is also provided by the buffer. Products such as fruits, nuts, and Christmas trees can be harvested from the buffer.

Section D-D: a buffer illustrating how the buffer in Section C-C provides aesthetic views at selected locations. Other aesthetic considerations are incorporated in the design to encourage human use. Signage informs residents about conservation measures being used to protect natural resources.

In summary:

- Consider the landscape context when designing buffers
- Design each buffer for multiple objectives
- Be aware of potential unintended effects of buffers
- Recognize the benefits and limitations of buffers
- Use a planning process

To begin using this guide, refer to the **How to Use This Guide** section.





HOW TO USE THIS GUIDE

This guide provides science-based guidelines for designing buffers. The guidelines are organized into seven resource sections:

1. Water Quality
2. Biodiversity
3. Productive Soils
4. Economic Opportunities
5. Protection and Safety
6. Aesthetics and Visual Quality
7. Outdoor Recreation

A simple step-by-step process is suggested for using the guide effectively.

Using the Buffer Design Guidelines

1. Identify resource issues of concern
 2. Select desired buffer functions for each issue from table 1
 3. Refer to the resource section for guidelines that address each desired buffer function
 4. Prepare a preliminary buffer plan or design
 5. Refine the plan using other resources as necessary
1. Issues of concern and related objectives should be identified with assistance of the landowner or stakeholder group using a planning process. Record the objectives (see table 2 for an example).

Table 2—Example table used to organize a project's objectives, the desired buffer functions, and the applicable design guidelines

Objectives	Buffer Functions	Guidelines To Consider
Reduce 50 percent of nitrogen from runoff and shallow groundwater flow	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration Trap pollutants in surface runoff Trap pollutants in subsurface flow	1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 1.12, 1.15, 1.19, 1.20, 1.21, 1.26, 2.7, 2.9, 3.1
Enhance habitat for salamanders to increase local population by 10 percent	Increase habitat area Protect sensitive habitats Restore connectivity	2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.8, 2.9, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 1.4, 1.14, 5.3
Reduce soil erosion by 50 percent	Reduce water runoff energy Reduce wind energy Stabilize soil	3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 1.1, 1.4, 1.6, 4.3, 4.4, 5.9
Produce five woody products for the decorative floral industry	Produce marketable products	4.1, 4.2, 4.4, 3.2
Increase biological pest control of aphids and thrips	Enhance habitat for predators of pests Modify microclimate	5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 2.1, 2.2, 2.9, 3.2, 3.3, 4.4
Enhance the views from the landowner's residence	Enhance visual interest Screen undesirable views	6.1, 6.5, 6.6, 6.7, 2.1, 2.9, 2.1, 3.2

2. Based on the identified issues and objectives, select the appropriate buffer functions from table 1 and record these functions (see table 2 for an example).
3. Refer to each resource section and select guidelines that address the desired buffer functions using the guideline-function matrix (fig. 5). Use the additional design guideline-function matrix (fig. 6) to identify guidelines in the other resource sections that may be useful. Record the guideline numbers (see table 2 for an example).
4. Use the selected guidelines to prepare a preliminary buffer plan. Compromises and trade-offs may be necessary to address all of the objectives and buffer functions.
5. Optional step: Refer to the referenced publications used to develop the guidelines. The online version of this guide provides over 1,400 references (www.bufferguidelines.net). These publications may provide additional design information, including more detailed design criteria for specific geographic regions. Use other printed and Web resources, experts, and personal experience to refine the buffer plan.

Implement the plan and monitor the results over time. Make adjustments to the buffer design and future buffer plans based on the monitoring.



Design Guidelines for Water Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration	Trap pollutants in surface runoff	Trap pollutants in subsurface flow	Stabilize soil	Reduce bank erosion
Location and Arrangement					
1.1 Buffers and land management	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.2 Karst landscapes	✓	✓	✓		
1.3 Frozen soils	✓	✓	✓		
1.4 Target buffers in watersheds	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.5 Arrangement near sources	✓	✓	✓		
1.6 Buffer site design	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Size and Pollutant Type					
1.7 Variable buffer width	✓	✓	✓		

Figure 5— An example of a guideline-function matrix.

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Water Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration	Trap pollutants in surface runoff	Trap pollutants in subsurface flow	Stabilize soil	Reduce bank erosion
2.1 Matrix primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.2 Patch primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.9 Corridor width	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.11 Aquatic habitat and buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.12 Stream temperature and buffers		✓			
3.1 Buffers and cropland management	✓	✓		✓	
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion				✓	

Figure 6— An example of an additional design guideline-function matrix.







1. Water Quality

Objectives

- Reduce erosion and runoff of sediment, nutrients, and other potential pollutants
- Remove pollutants from water runoff and wind

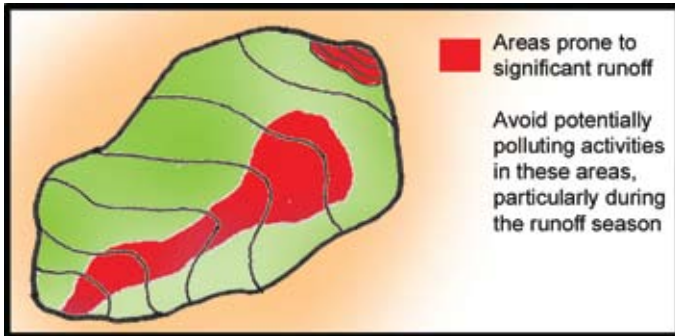
Buffer functions

1. Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration
2. Trap pollutants in surface runoff
3. Trap pollutants in subsurface flow
4. Stabilize soil
5. Reduce bank erosion

Design Guidelines for Water Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration	Trap pollutants in surface runoff	Trap pollutants in subsurface flow	Stabilize soil	Reduce bank erosion
Location and Arrangement					
1.1 Buffers and land management	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.2 Karst landscapes	✓	✓	✓		
1.3 Frozen soils	✓	✓	✓		
1.4 Target buffers in watersheds	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.5 Arrangement near sources	✓	✓	✓		
1.6 Buffer site design	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Size and Pollutant Type					
1.7 Variable buffer width	✓	✓	✓		

Design Guidelines for Water Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration	Trap pollutants in surface runoff	Trap pollutants in subsurface flow	Stabilize soil	Reduce bank erosion
Size and Pollutant Type (cont.)					
1.8 Effective buffer area ratio	✓	✓	✓		
1.9 Slope and soil type adjustments	✓	✓			
1.10 Buffers for sediment	✓	✓		✓	
1.11 Buffers for pathogens	✓	✓			
1.12 Buffers for nitrogen	✓	✓	✓		
1.13 Buffers for phosphorus	✓	✓			
1.14 Buffers for pesticides	✓	✓	✓		
1.15 Buffers for shallow groundwater			✓		
1.16 Urban runoff and roadsides	✓	✓	✓		
1.17 Buffers and grazing		✓		✓	✓
1.18 Allowances for bank erosion		✓		✓	✓
1.19 Buffer width design tool	✓	✓			
Vegetation					
1.20 Vegetation for removing pollutants	✓	✓	✓		
1.21 Stiff-stemmed grass barriers	✓	✓			
1.22 Vegetation for bank erosion control				✓	✓
1.23 In-Stream pollutant removal		✓			
1.24 Species selection	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Management					
1.25 Sediment removal	✓	✓			
1.26 Harvesting for nutrient removal	✓	✓	✓		
1.27 Plant succession	✓	✓	✓		
1.28 Vegetation and traffic	✓	✓			

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Water Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Slow water runoff and enhance infiltration	Trap pollutants in surface runoff	Trap pollutants in subsurface flow	Stabilize soil	Reduce bank erosion
2.1 Matrix primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.2 Patch primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.9 Corridor width	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.11 Aquatic habitat and buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.12 Stream temperature and buffers		✓			
3.1 Buffers and cropland management	✓	✓		✓	
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion				✓	
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers				✓	
3.5 Phytoremediation buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	
5.7 Buffers and spray drift		✓			



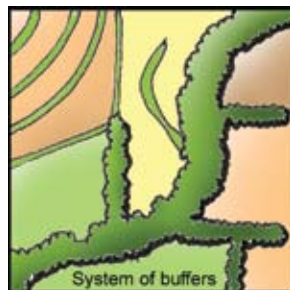
1.1 Buffers and land management

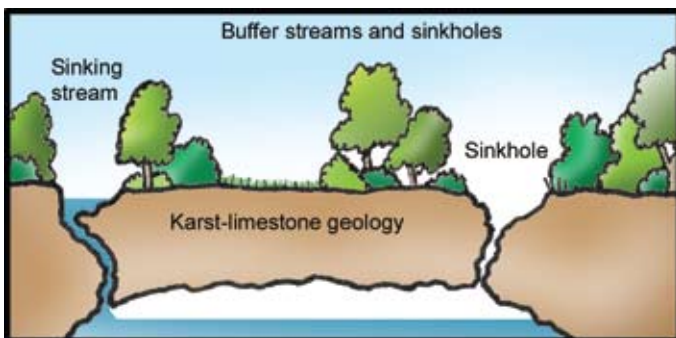
Water quality goals may not be achievable with buffers unless the adjacent land uses are also managed for better water quality. There are many ways that pollutant loads can be reduced from adjacent land uses. Refer to other publications for guidance. See general management considerations.

In some cases, it may be that inappropriate land management practices in just a few areas within a watershed are contributing a majority of the water quality problems. Targeting better land management practices in these few, select areas may yield significant improvements (see section 1.4).

General management considerations

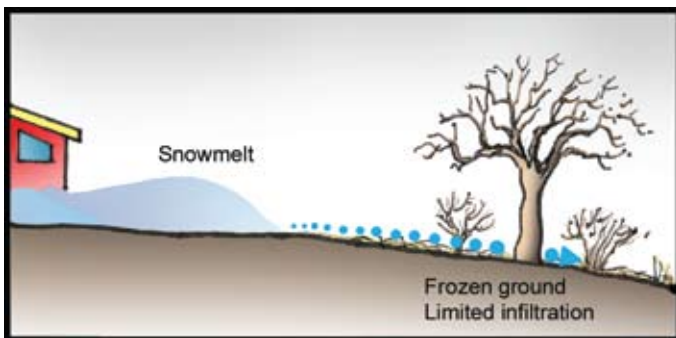
- Manage land to reduce runoff and increase infiltration.
- Maintain vegetative cover as much as possible.
- Avoid potentially polluting activities on areas most prone to generating significant runoff.
- Minimize potentially polluting activities during times of year most prone to generating runoff.
- Use a system of upland buffers to reduce runoff and pollutant load to riparian buffers.





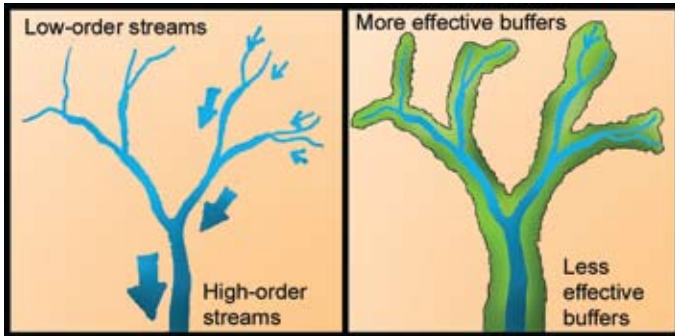
1.2 Karst landscapes

Karst or limestone dominated landscapes are particularly susceptible to water quality problems due to the direct and often short connections between surface water and groundwater. Buffers can be used around sinkholes and sinking streams to minimize polluted runoff entering directly into the groundwater system.



1.3 Frozen soils

In regions where runoff occurs while the soil is frozen, buffers will be much less effective due to limited infiltration. Other best management practices will need to be used in addition to buffers.

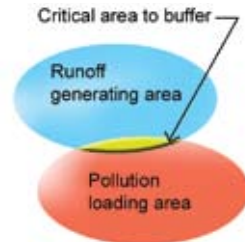


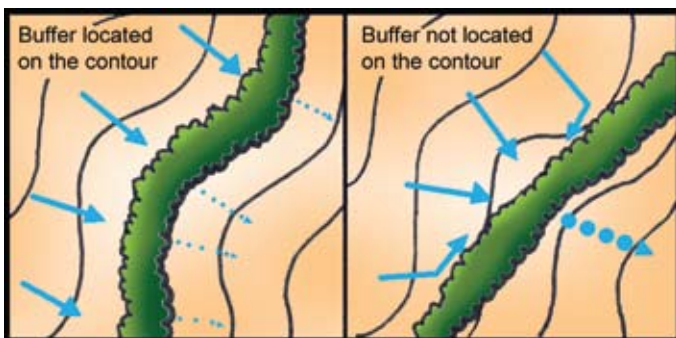
1.4 Target buffers in watersheds

Water quality buffers will be more effective in some areas than in others. Targeting buffers to areas that have high pollutant loads and suitable characteristics for pollutant removal will generally have the greatest benefit on water quality.

General targeting considerations

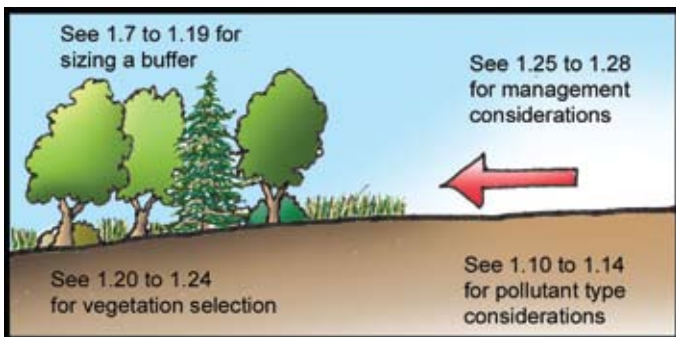
- Riparian buffers will often be more effective along small or low-order streams than larger or high-order streams since most water delivered to channels from uplands enters along low-order streams.
- Groundwater recharge areas, ephemeral channels, and other areas where runoff collects are important areas to buffer.
- In some regions, surface runoff is generated primarily from areas that become saturated during storms. Where these runoff source areas correspond to a pollution loading area, such as a cultivated field, these areas should be buffered.
- Surface runoff from cultivated areas is higher where slopes are steeper and soils are finer-textured. These areas are important to buffer.
- GIS are useful for conducting landscape-scale assessments to target buffers.





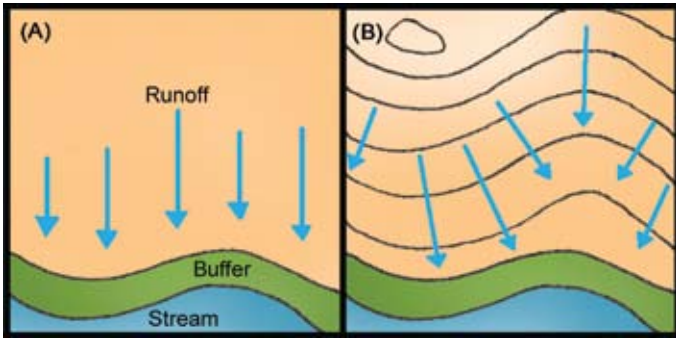
1.5 Arrangement near sources

Buffers should be located as close as possible to the pollution source and should be placed along the contour to promote shallow flow across the buffer. If the contour is not closely followed, a buffer may increase concentration of runoff flow and reduce buffer effectiveness. Grass barriers can help spread out concentrated flows (see section 1.21).



1.6 Buffer site design

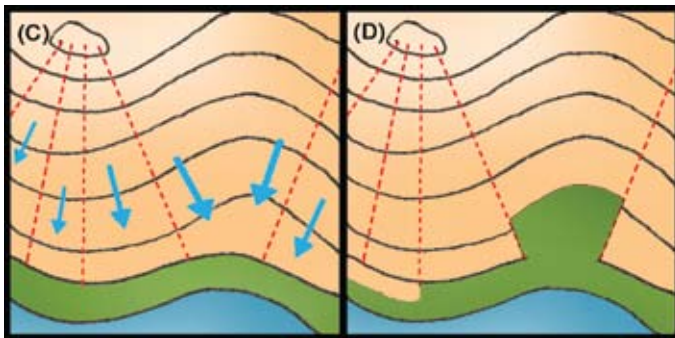
Important design elements for any buffer include its size, the kind of vegetation it contains, and how it is managed. Each of these elements is dictated by site factors including pollutant type and load, the buffer's capacity to trap and transform these pollutants and the desired level of pollution reduction. Use the figure above as a road map to guidelines on site design.



1.7 Variable buffer width

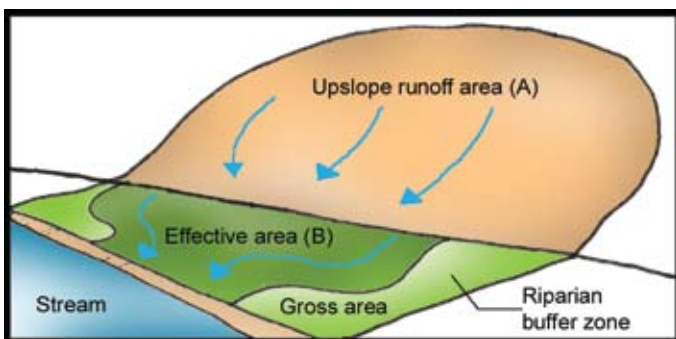
Buffers may have a fixed width where uniform runoff occurs (A). However, runoff is often nonuniform and flow is either diverging or converging due to topography, tillage practices, and other factors (B). A fixed-width buffer will be less effective in these situations.

Instead, buffer width should be variable by widening and narrowing the buffer as runoff loads and buffer site conditions vary.



Runoff areas and corresponding buffer locations to which they flow can be mapped (C). Buffer width can then be modified to account for differences in runoff loads (D). Buffers will need to be wider for upslope runoff areas that are larger and contribute greater loads.

The ratio of the upslope runoff area to buffer area can provide additional design guidance (see section 1.8).



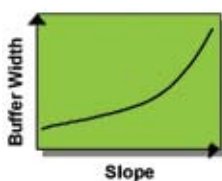
1.8 Effective buffer area ratio

The amount of runoff through an area of buffer should be low to achieve high pollutant removal. One consideration is to base the design on a ratio of upslope runoff area (A) to effective buffer area (B). Lower ratios (e.g., 20:1) can provide substantially greater pollutant removal than higher ratios (e.g., 50:1) in many cases. Note that the effective buffer area is the actual pathway that runoff travels to the stream and it may be smaller than the overall gross area of the buffer.

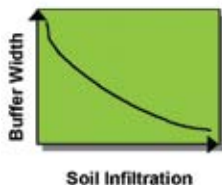
1.9 Slope and soil type adjustments

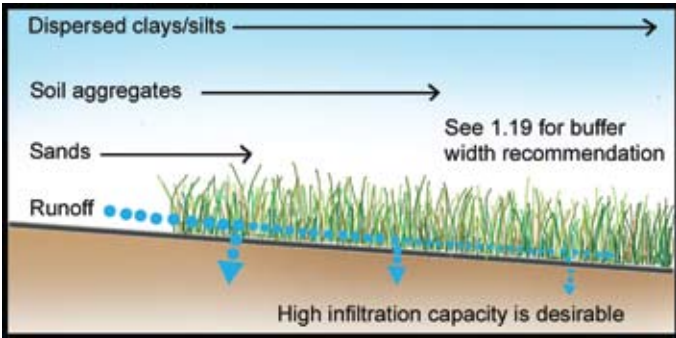
Land slope and soil type have significant impact on the ability of a buffer to remove pollutants from surface runoff.

Steeper slopes reduce performance by allowing greater pollutant transport and less time for infiltration. Steeper slopes will require wider buffers.



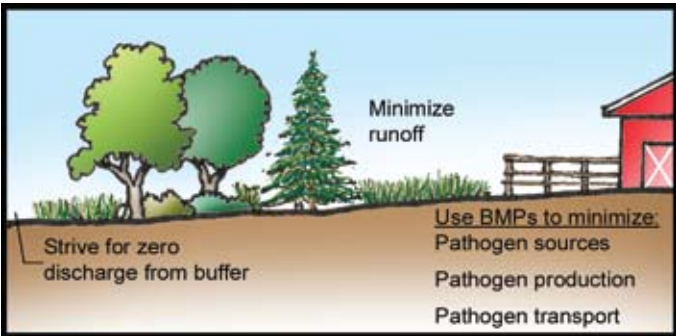
Soils with higher infiltration capacity can reduce runoff to a greater degree than soils having lower infiltration. Soils with lower infiltration capacity will require wider buffers. Finer-textured soils typically have lower infiltration than sandy soils.





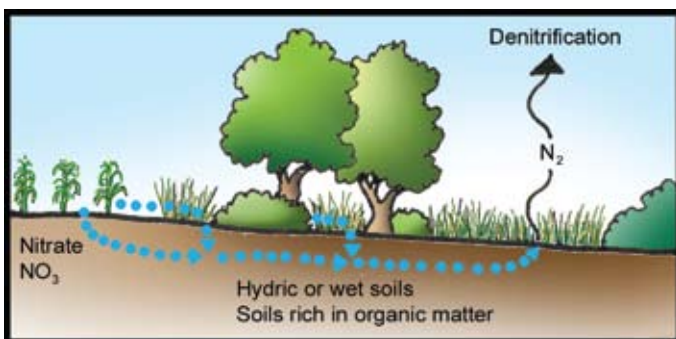
1.10 Buffers for sediment

Sediment is the pollutant most effectively removed from runoff by buffers. Coarse-textured sediments will settle out first while finer particles will require wider buffers to be removed. Buffers for sediment trapping should only be used as a final defense. Soils first need to be kept in place as much as possible with sediment and erosion control best management practices. See section 1.25 for managing sediment build-up.



1.11 Buffers for pathogens

Buffers can reduce pathogens in surface runoff from urban lands, pastures, manure-applied fields, and confined animal feeding operations but are generally ineffective by themselves to meet water quality standards. Buffers need to be combined with other best management practices to meet standards.



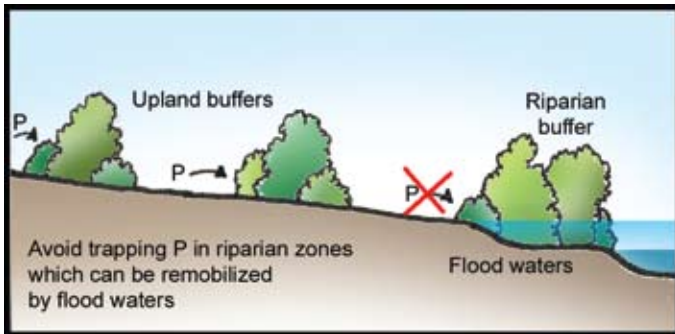
1.12 Buffers for nitrogen

Most nitrogen (N) is lost to surface water through overland flow and to groundwater by leaching of nitrate (NO_3). Plant uptake of N generally does not result in permanent removal as N is eventually returned to the soil upon death and decay of plants unless harvested (see section 1.26).

Denitrification is the primary process for permanently removing N with a buffer. In denitrification, anaerobic bacteria transform nitrate to nitrogen gas (N_2) which is released into the atmosphere. Below are some key site characteristics that promote effective denitrification with buffers.

Key design considerations

- Soils should be rich in organic matter, often provided by decaying plant material.
- Soils need to be wet or hydric.
- Soils should have moderate to high permeability to encourage infiltration and yet should be poorly drained to have anaerobic conditions. Deep coarse sands or gravel may allow dispersion to deeper groundwaters before denitrification occurs.
- Low temperatures and acidic soils will inhibit denitrification.
- See section 1.19 for buffer width recommendations for surface N runoff.
- See section 1.15 for shallow groundwater flow.



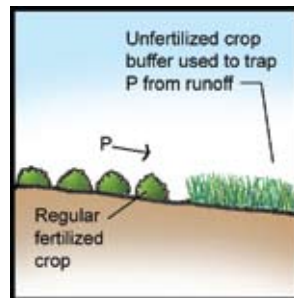
1.13 Buffers for phosphorus

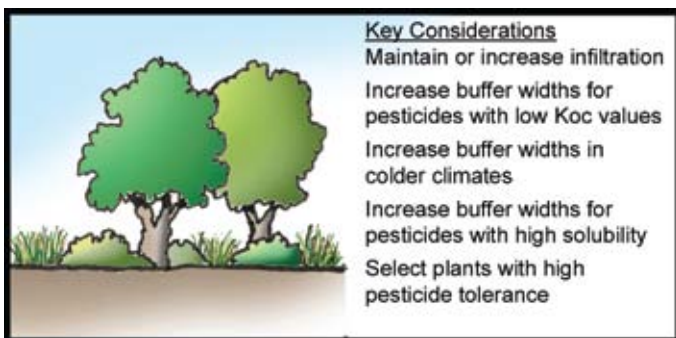
Phosphorus (P) in runoff occurs either as particulate phosphorus or as dissolved phosphorus. Particulate phosphorus is sediment-bound and can be moderately well trapped by deposition in buffers. Dissolved phosphorus must infiltrate with runoff water and be trapped in the soil.

Unlike N which can be released to the atmosphere through denitrification, P will accumulate in the buffer. Once a buffer is saturated with P, it can turn into a source for P. Other best management practices will be necessary to manage phosphorus.

Key design considerations

- Avoid trapping P in riparian buffers which can be remobilized by flood waters.
- See section 1.19 for buffer width recommendations.
- Buffers consisting of unfertilized crops or hayfields can trap and utilize P. Removing this vegetation through harvest may help export P, as well as N, out of the watershed (see section 1.26). Select plants with high nutrient demand.





1.14 Buffers for pesticides

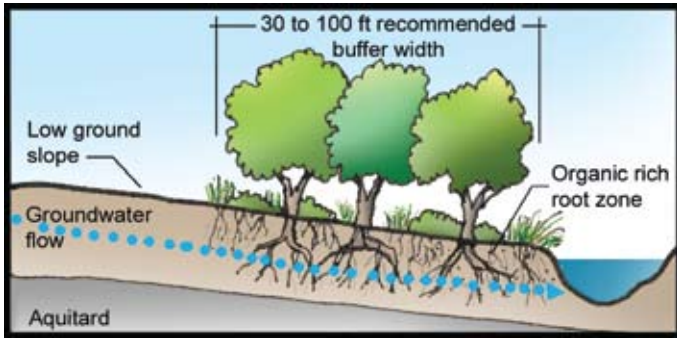
Pesticides in runoff occur either as sediment-bound or in a dissolved form. Dissolved pesticides are generally the most susceptible to leaving an application area and becoming a pollution problem. Pesticide properties can provide some guidance on the mobility of the pesticide.

Key design considerations

- Some pesticides adsorb strongly to soils while others adsorb weakly as noted by the Koc value or soil adsorption index. See table below for recommendations.
- Pesticides with high water solubilities (e.g., > 30 ppm) will generally require wider buffers.
- Pesticides with longer half lives (e.g., > 30 days) may require wider buffers.
- Other pesticide best management practices should be used in addition to buffers (see sections 5.1 to 5.4).
- See section 1.19 for buffer width recommendations.

Pesticide properties can be found on product labels.

Koc Value Influence on Buffers for Pesticides		
Koc Value	Adsorption and Movement	Buffer Recommendation
< 500	Adsorbs weakly, movement with water	Maximize water infiltration and runoff contact time with soil and vegetation Generally requires wider buffers
> 500	Adsorbs strongly, movement with sediment	Maximize sediment trapping in buffer Narrower buffers may be sufficient



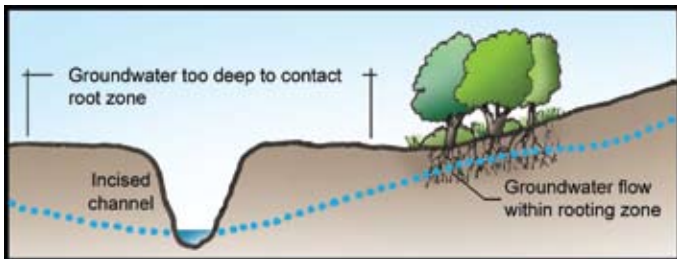
1.15 Buffers for shallow groundwater

Buffers may contact shallow groundwater and through various processes, remove some pollutants transported in it.

Nitrate	<i>Removal rates can be > 75 percent</i>
Dissolved phosphorus	<i>Not effectively removed</i>
Pesticides	<i>Limited data at this time</i>

Key design considerations

- Shallow groundwater is typically found near streams, lake shores, and wetlands. Buffers are effective where/when shallow groundwater flows toward the stream (and not vice versa).
- Where groundwater emerges as a spring or seep, it may flow across the buffer zone too quickly to be effectively treated. A wider buffer may be necessary to allow for reinfiltration.
- Buffers along deeply incised streams may not intercept groundwater. Groundwater may be shallower in locations farther away from these streams. These areas may be effective locations for buffers to filter groundwater.

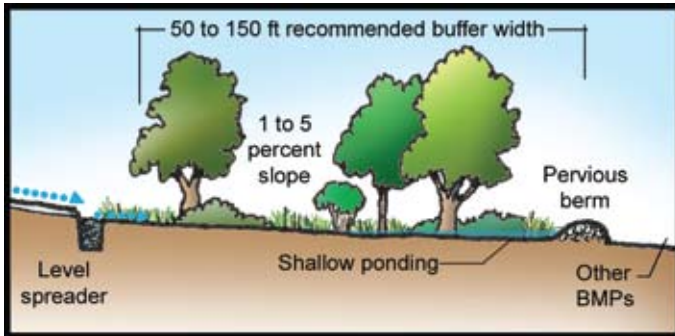


Key design considerations *(continued)*

- Most nitrate reduction in shallow groundwater occurs within 30 to 100 feet of entering a buffer.
- The greatest nitrate removal occurs on sites where groundwater flow is confined within the root zone (shallower than about 3 feet) by a dense soil layer (aquiclude) or bedrock.
- Select plants with adequate rooting depth to intercept the groundwater flow.
- Select plants tolerant of seasonal water table fluctuations and with higher root biomass.
- Because natural groundwater flow patterns can be very complex, consult with appropriate professionals.
- In areas where groundwater drainage has been augmented with drain tile pipes or ditches, groundwater flow will often bypass buffers untreated. Placing constructed wetlands at the end of tile drains or ditches can help reduce this problem.



Buffers for Shallow Groundwater Pollution	
Variable	Factors Increasing Treatment Potential
Slope	Lower ground slope (0 to 3 percent)
Depth to Water Table	Shallower water table (0 to 3 ft below surface)
Hydric Soils	Present and occupying significant width (≥ 30 feet of buffer width)
Proximity to Source	Buffer closer to the source of pollution
Soil Drainage Class (natural)	Very poorly-, poorly-, and somewhat poorly-drained ratings
Organic Matter	Soils with higher concentrations of organic matter



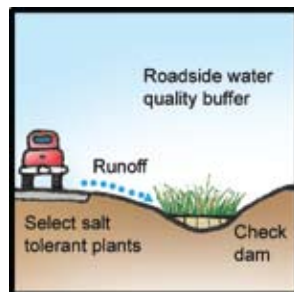
1.16 Urban runoff and roadsides

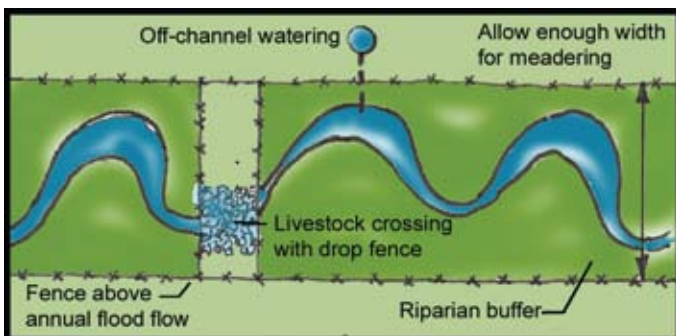
Buffers for urban runoff can be effective for trapping sediment but are generally less effective for dissolved pollutants. Buffers may be ineffective for urban stormwater where high runoff volume converges on and is channeled through the buffer. Buffers need to be designed to prevent flows from inundating or bypassing the buffer.

Key design considerations

- Buffers are best suited for low to moderate density areas (< 20 percent impervious cover).
- Flow length into a buffer should be < 150 feet for pervious surfaces and < 75 feet for impervious surfaces.
- A level spreader can be used to disperse concentrated flow along the width of the buffer.
- Other best management practices should be used with buffers including low impact development that minimizes impervious cover.

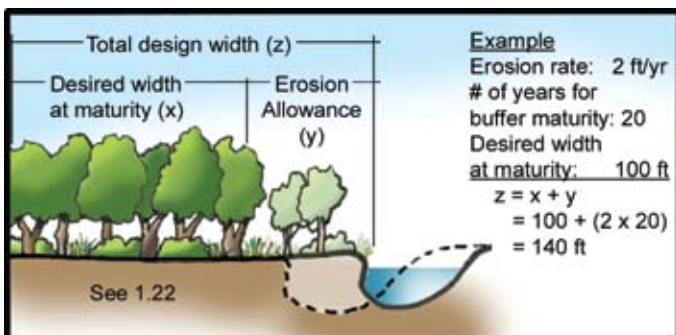
Vegetated roadside buffers can be used to improve water quality by filtering runoff. Use check dams to slow water movement and increase retention time. Select salt tolerant plants where road salt is used.





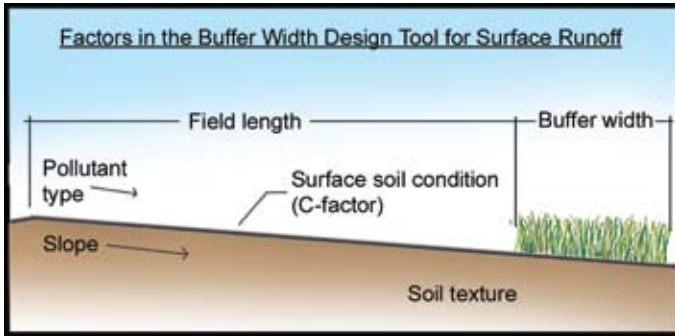
1.17 Buffers and grazing

Fencing riparian buffers from pastures is often necessary to protect water quality. Grazing has limited potential for nutrient removal from buffers (see section 1.26) and may accelerate bank erosion. Short duration grazing may be allowed within some riparian buffers. Grazing should not occur when soil is wet, when plants are emerging or setting seed, or when plant cover is limited or stressed by dry conditions.



1.18 Allowances for bank erosion

Buffers implemented for reducing streambank erosion may need to include additional width to allow for erosion while vegetation matures to the point where it becomes effective. Mature vegetation may not entirely halt streambank erosion since some erosion is natural. In severely degraded watersheds, vegetation alone will not reduce streambank erosion and other causes will need to be addressed.



1.19 Buffer width design tool for surface runoff

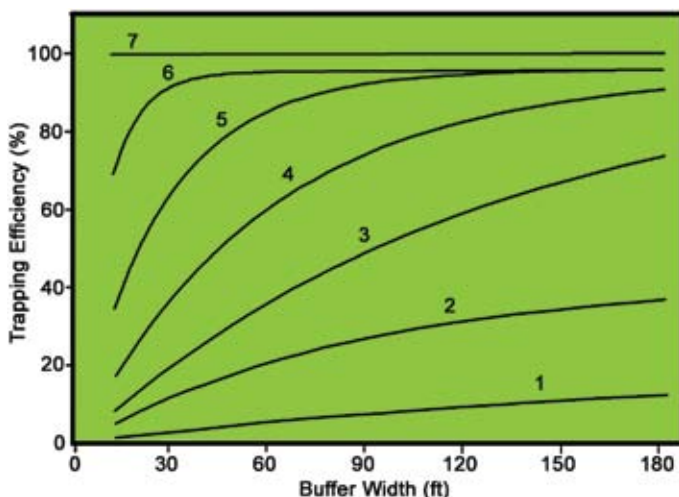
At any given site, the level of pollutant removal from surface runoff depends primarily on buffer width. The graph and tables on the following pages can be used to estimate a buffer width that will achieve a desired level of pollutant removal.

The tool is designed to quickly generate estimates of design width for a broad range of site conditions. Adjustments are made for land slope, soil texture, field size, and soil surface condition. The tool can be used for sediment, sediment-bound pollutants, and dissolved pollutants.

This tool was developed specifically for agricultural runoff but can be applied in a more general way to other land uses as well.

For more information on how this tool was developed, refer to the Frequently Asked Questions section at the end of this guideline.

Buffer Width Design Tool for Surface Runoff



Buffer Width Graph

Table A - Conditions Corresponding to Each Line in the Graph

Line Number	Field Length (feet)	C-Factor ¹	Slope (%)	Soil Texture ²	Pollutant Type
7	650	0.5	2	FSL	Sediment
6	650	0.15	2	SiCL	Sediment
5	650	0.5	2	SiCL	Sediment
4	1300	0.5	2	SiCL	Sediment
3	1300	0.5	2	FSL	Dissolved
2	650	0.5	10	SiCL	Sediment
1	1300	0.5	2	SiCL	Dissolved

1. C-Factor of 0.5 represents plowed and disked row crops with moderate residue returned to the soil surface. C-Factor of 0.15 represents conservation tillage and no-till with high residue returned to the soil. C-Factor values for other soil cover management conditions can be found on the next page.

2. FSL = Fine Sandy Loam; SiCL = Silty Clay Loam

Buffer Width Graph—The seven lines in the buffer width graph represent seven different site conditions (shown in table 1.19A) that describe the typical range of agricultural sites. The lines divide up the full range of possible pollutant removal levels into convenient increments. Use of this graph amounts to selecting one line that is most appropriate for conditions at a given site.

How to use the buffer width design tool

1. From table A, identify a reference line number for conditions that most closely resembles one's site.
2. Using table B, select a line number that is higher or lower than the reference line number depending on how one's site conditions and pollutant type differ from those of the reference line. To do so:
 - Add up the pluses and minuses to get the total adjustment.
 - Add the total adjustment number to the reference line number. The result is the appropriate line number to use for determining a buffer design width at one's site.
3. Identify the desired level of pollutant removal, then using the appropriate line in the graph, estimate the corresponding buffer width that will achieve that level.

Table B - Line Selection Adjustment Rules	
Adjustment Rule	
Pollutant Type	3 lines higher (+3) from dissolved pollutants to sediment 2 lines higher (+2) from dissolved pollutants to total P 1 line lower (-1) from sediment to total P 3 lines lower (-3) from sediment to dissolved pollutants
Field Length	1 line higher (+1) for each halving of the field length 1 line lower (-1) for each doubling of the field length
Slope	1 line higher (+1) for each 2.5% lesser slope 1 line lower (-1) for each 2.5% greater slope
Soil Texture	1 line higher (+1) for each soil category coarser 1 line lower (-1) for each soil category finer
C-Factor	1 line higher (+1) for each 0.35 lower C-Factor 1 line lower (-1) for each 0.35 higher C-Factor

Pollutant Type

Dissolved pollutants include nitrates, dissolved P, and soluble pesticides

Field Length

Length of contributing area to the buffer

Slope

Average slope of the buffer and contributing area

Soil Texture Categories

Coarse = Sandy loam, sandy clay loam, and fine sandy loam

Medium = Very fine sandy loam, loam, and silt loam

Fine = Clay loam, silty clay loam, and silt

C-Factor (from Universal Soil Loss Equation)

Cropland, clean tillage = 1.0

Cropland, plow tillage, low residue = 0.8

Pasture, permanent grass = 0.003

Forest, full canopy = 0.0001

Construction site, no mulch = 1.0

Construction site with secured mulch = 0.1

Examples using the buffer width design tool

The tables illustrate two examples using the buffer width design tool. In example one, the final reference line after adjustments is 4 while in example two, the final reference line is 1. The dashed lines on the graph below demonstrate how to obtain a buffer design width for the two examples at two particular desired trapping efficiencies.

Example One - Sediment			
Variable	Initial Reference Line	Field Site Condition	Adjustment Rule
Field Length	650 ft	1150 ft	-1
Slope	2.0%	4.5%	-1
Soil Texture	Silty Clay Loam	Loam	+1
C-Factor	0.5	0.5	0
Pollutant Type	Sediment	Sediment	0
Line Number	5		

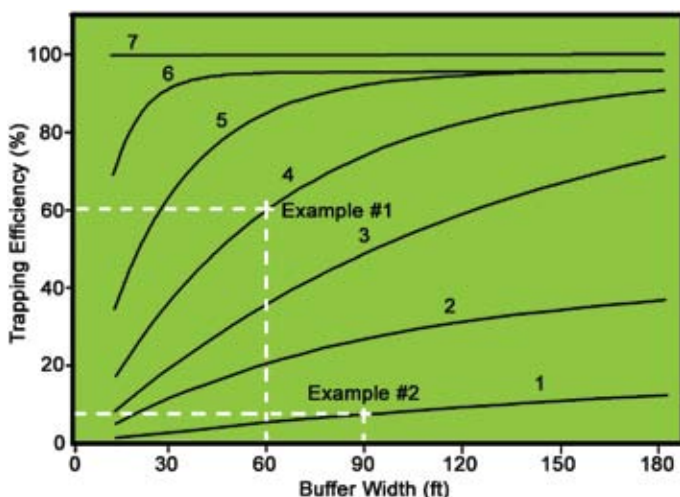
Total Adjustments: $(-1)+(-1)+(1)+(0)+(0) = -1$

Final Design Line: $(5) + (-1) = 4$

Example Two - Nitrate			
Variable	Initial Reference Line	Field Site Condition	Adjustment Rule
Field Length	1300 ft	1310 ft	0
Slope	2.0%	5.0%	-1
Soil Texture	Silty Clay Loam	Silt Loam	+1
C-Factor	0.5	0.5	0
Pollutant Type	Sediment	Dissolved	-3
Line Number	4		

Total Adjustments: $(0)+(-1)+(1)+(0)+(-3) = -3$

Final Design Line: $(4) + (-3) = 1$



Buffer width design tool: Frequently Asked Questions

How was the tool developed?

The tool was developed using a complex mathematical model of buffer processes called Vegetative Filter Strip Model (VSFMOD). It computes runoff loads of water and sediment from agricultural fields and their deposition and infiltration within buffers. Using the model, trapping efficiencies for sediment and water were estimated for a range of buffer widths and different combinations of slope, soil texture, field C-factor, and field length that are common in agricultural fields. Other site conditions were held constant (see table below). For more information, refer to Dosskey and others (2008).

Constant Conditions Used for Modeling Simulations	
Factor	Condition
Buffer	Well-established grass Slope and soil texture same as contributing area Runoff is uniformly distributed
Field source	Contour-tilled (P-factor = 1.0) Wet antecedent soil moisture condition
Rainfall	Single event 2.4 inches in 1 hour

What are the limitations of this tool?

This tool does not account for long-term sediment accumulation or long-term fate of dissolved pollutants. These limitations should remind users that the estimated trapping efficiencies are only rough estimates and may decrease over time. By reducing the number of site variables, the tool becomes simpler to use but less accurate than the full VSFMOD model.

Can other site factors be accounted for in the design tool?

Yes, any site condition that would double or halve the field runoff load should dictate an adjustment of one line below and one line above the initial reference line, respectively. To account for different size design storms, a 3.6 inch per hour and 1.5 inch per hour storm would roughly double or halve, respectively, the runoff load compared to the 2.4 inch per hour storm used to generate the reference lines.

Buffer width design tool: Frequently Asked Questions

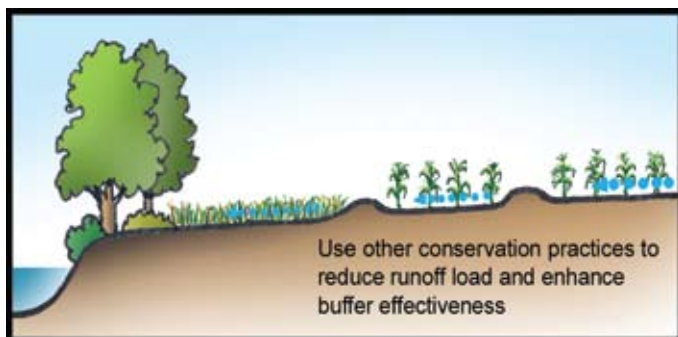
(continued)

What about extremely narrow buffers < 15 feet?

Narrow buffers < 15 feet can be effective for sediment removal in some locations. These will be locations that closely resemble conditions for lines 5, 6, and 7 (relatively lower slopes, smaller runoff areas, and permeable soils).

What if the tool shows that buffers are not particularly effective for my site conditions?

In some cases, the buffer width estimated to achieve a desired level of trapping efficiency may exceed what a landowner is willing to set aside for a buffer. These situations call for alternative or additional conservation practices to reduce runoff load, a first step in enhancing the effectiveness of any conservation buffer system (see below and section 1.1).

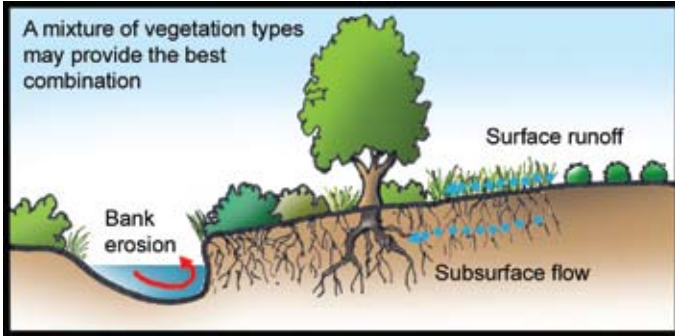


What if runoff flow is not uniform?

Non-uniform flow into a buffer in effect increases the runoff load into the portion of the buffer that has contact with the flow, reducing the effectiveness of the buffer. Select a lower line to estimate buffer width for the effective area (see sections 1.7 and 1.8). Grass barriers can help spread out concentrated flow and increase the effective area (see section 1.21).

What about trees and shrubs?

The buffer width design tool was developed for dense grass as the buffer vegetation type. Trees and shrubs can be a part of the buffer zone without changing its effectiveness as long as dense groundcover (plants and debris) is present to provide roughness and flow resistance (see section 1.20).



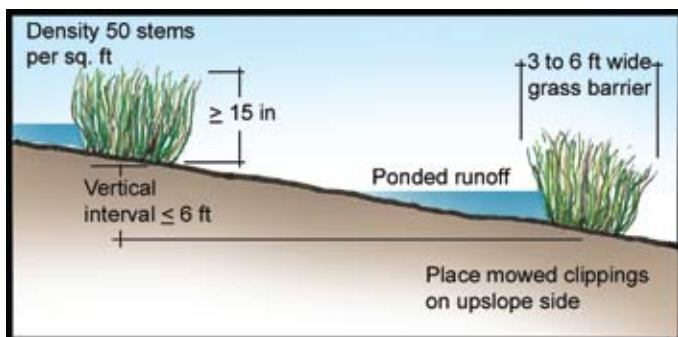
1.20 Vegetation for removing pollutants from runoff

Pollutant removal functions of vegetation include reducing flow velocities, increasing deposition and infiltration, and providing nutrient uptake and organic matter for pollutant transformation.

Many types of vegetation can provide these functions. A mixture of herbaceous and woody species may provide the best overall combination (see table below). Vegetation selection should also be based on site capabilities and landowner preferences.

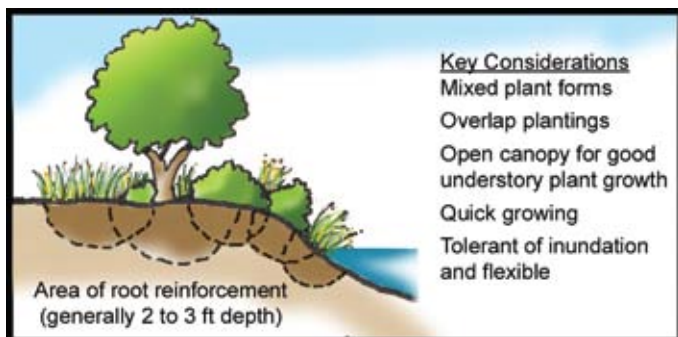
Other factors (e.g., width, slope, location, buffer area ratio, and soils) may play more important roles than vegetation type.

Vegetation Selection for Water Quality	
General Criteria	
Surface runoff	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High stem and debris density Stiff stems Tolerant of sediment build-up Tolerant of high nutrients levels and other pollutants Actively growing during runoff season
Subsurface flow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plants with roots that intercept subsurface flow Plants with higher root biomass Tolerant of wet soils and high nutrient levels Avoid N-fixing plants
Bank Erosion	See 1.18 and 1.22.



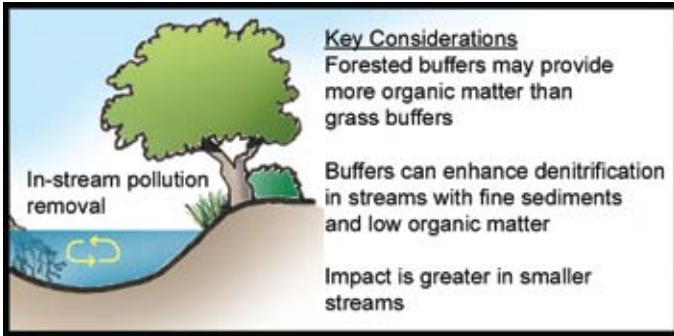
1.21 Stiff-stemmed grass barriers

Grass barriers are narrow strips of tall, dense, stiff-stemmed grasses planted perpendicular to the slope. These barriers can slow and pond runoff, promoting infiltration and deposition of sediment. Used mainly where gullies would form on steep land and to slow and disperse concentrated flow.



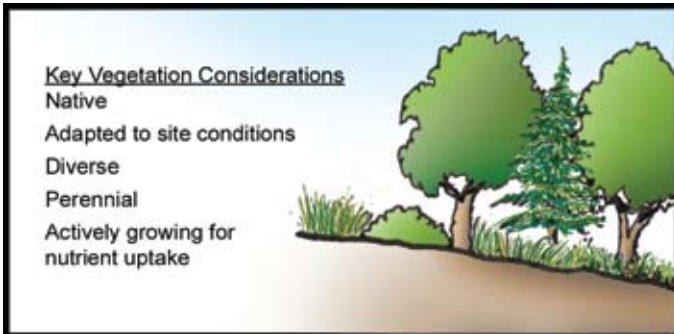
1.22 Vegetation for bank erosion control

Herbaceous plants with fibrous root systems are better for protecting banks from surface erosion. Woody species with deeper roots will be better at increasing soil cohesion and reducing mass slope failure. Select woody species that resprout from roots or from broken branches. The best approach is often a combination of plant types.



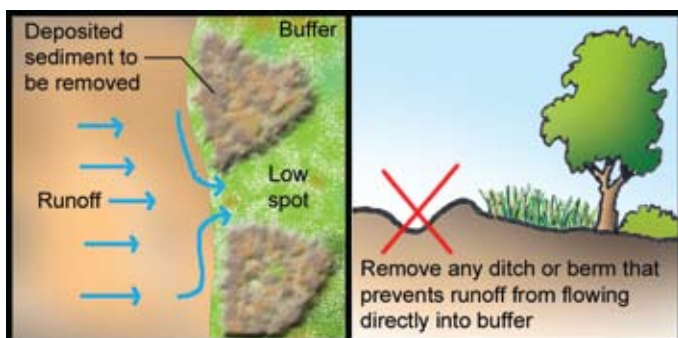
1.23 In-stream pollutant removal

Buffers can enhance in-stream processes that remove pollutants carried by streams. Plant debris supports denitrification and pesticide degradation while large woody debris promotes deposition of sediment (see section 2.11). In-stream pollutant removal rates are highly variable. Impact on stream pollution level is generally greater during low flows and in small streams.



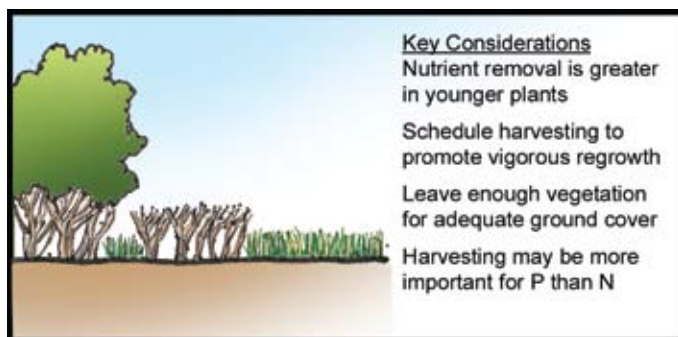
1.24 Species selection

Use historical native plant communities to guide vegetation selection, and select species adapted to site conditions. Use a diverse planting mixture to minimize pest and disease problems. Select perennial vegetation to provide permanent cover and to improve infiltration rates over time. Vegetation for nutrient uptake should be actively growing during the runoff season.



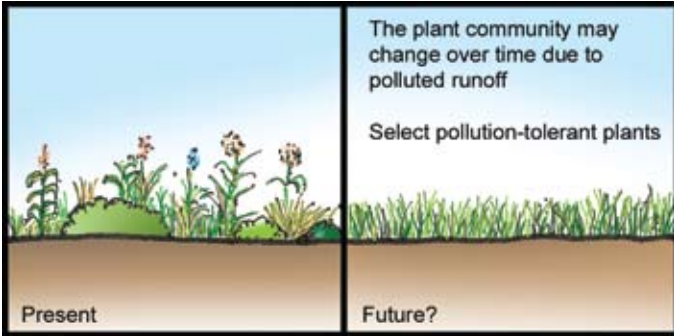
1.25 Sediment removal

Sediment trapped in a buffer will change flow into the buffer over time, often resulting in concentrated flows. Periodic removal of accumulated sediment may be necessary. Use erosion control practices in source areas to reduce sediment load and minimize the need for future sediment removal from the buffer. Prevent a ditch or berm from being created along the inflow length of the buffer due to tillage or deposition.



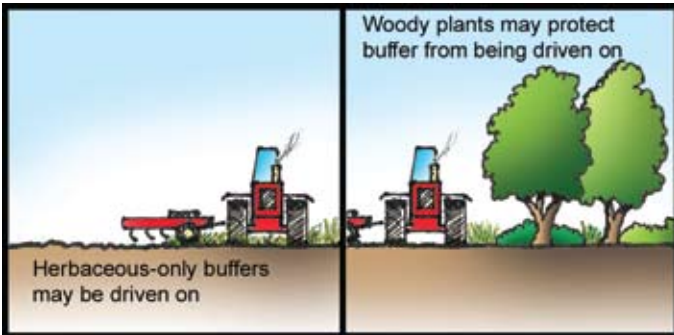
1.26 Harvesting for nutrient removal

Harvesting and removing buffer vegetation can encourage plant regrowth and nutrient uptake. Although grazing may be used to remove vegetation, up to 60 to 90 percent of the ingested nutrients will be returned to the system as feces and urine. Harvesting should be considered in context with other management options.



1.27 Plant succession

Polluted runoff favors plant species that are more tolerant of pollution and may change the buffer plant community over time. One may need to select plants tolerant of pollutant loading. Over time, trees and shrubs will naturally become established in herbaceous buffers. Periodic tree and shrub removal may be required to maintain dense herbaceous buffers or the desired mix of woody species.



1.28 Vegetation and traffic

Traffic in buffers will compact soil, reducing infiltration and vegetation density. Woody vegetation may protect a buffer from being driven on, preventing soil compaction. Herbaceous-only buffers are easier to remove thus making them more vulnerable to changes in land management.







2. Biodiversity

Objectives

- Enhance terrestrial habitat
- Enhance aquatic habitat

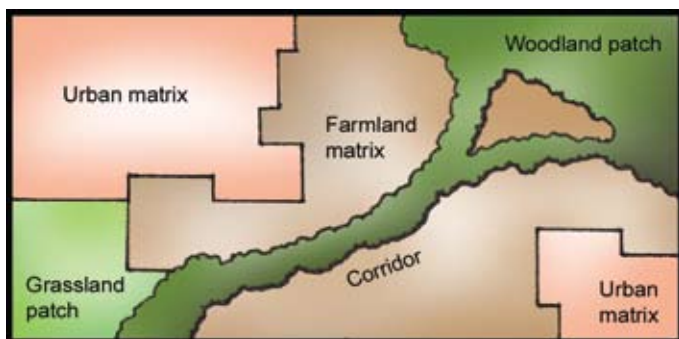
Buffer functions

1. Increase habitat area
2. Protect sensitive habitats
3. Restore connectivity
4. Increase access to resources
5. Shade stream to maintain temperature

Design Guidelines for Biodiversity	Buffer Functions				
	Increase habitat area	Protect sensitive habitats	Restore connectivity	Increase access to resources	Shade stream to maintain temperature
2.1 Matrix primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.2 Patch primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.3 Corridors and connectivity	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.4 Corridors versus connectivity zones	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.5 Corridor network	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.6 Climate change and corridors	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.7 Stepping stones and gaps	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.8 Buffers and corridors	✓	✓	✓	✓	
2.9 Corridor width	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Design Guidelines for Biodiversity	Buffer Functions				
	Increase habitat area	Protect sensitive habitats	Restore connectivity	Increase access to resources	Shade stream to maintain temperature
2.10 Edge effects of corridors		✓	✓	✓	
2.11 Aquatic habitat and buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.12 Stream temperature and buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.13 Roads and wildlife crossings			✓	✓	
2.14 Roadside corridors	✓		✓	✓	

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Biodiversity	Buffer Functions				
	Increase habitat area	Protect sensitive habitats	Restore connectivity	Increase access to resources	Shade stream to maintain temperature
1.4 Target buffers in watersheds	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.14 Buffers for pesticides		✓			
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers	✓		✓	✓	
3.4 Grassed waterways	✓		✓	✓	
4.5 Alley cropping	✓		✓	✓	
4.9 Crop pollinator habitat	✓		✓	✓	
5.1 Managing insect pests with buffers	✓		✓	✓	
5.2 Plants that attract beneficial insects	✓		✓	✓	
5.3 Buffers and spray drift		✓			
6.5 Developing an ecological aesthetic	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7.1 Trail design and wildlife	✓	✓	✓	✓	
7.2 Flight initiation distance buffers		✓	✓	✓	
7.3 Trails along riparian corridors		✓	✓	✓	✓

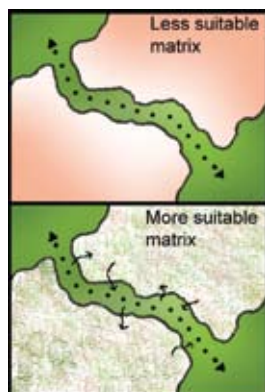


2.1 Matrix primer

The role of patches and matrix needs to be considered when designing corridors to enhance biodiversity. In human-dominated landscapes, the matrix is often developed lands (e.g., urban, agriculture) while patches are remnants that have a different plant and animal community than the surrounding area.

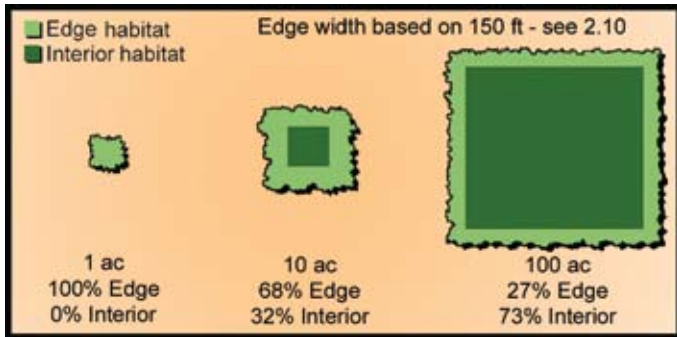
The potential value of corridors to link isolated patches depends on the type and condition of the matrix. A corridor will usually be more valuable in landscapes where the matrix is less suitable for biodiversity.

Below are considerations for managing the matrix for biodiversity. See next page for patch guidelines.



Key matrix guidelines

- Consider the matrix at multiple spatial and temporal scales.
- Cluster development to protect more open space. Use other smart growth principles where possible.
- Minimize disturbance of natural vegetation.
- Minimize introduction and spread of non-native species.
- Manage disturbances (e.g., haying, earth-moving) to reduce negative impacts.



2.2 Patch primer

Large patches typically conserve a greater variety and quality of habitats, resulting in higher species diversity and abundance. The larger the patch is, the higher percentage of interior habitat that it will contain. This benefits interior species which are often the most vulnerable to habitat loss and fragmentation.

Minimum patch area requirements for species are highly dependent on species, quality of habitat, and landscape context. The table below provides a summary of patch area requirements. In general, larger animals require larger patches. A biologist should be consulted to refine these ranges.

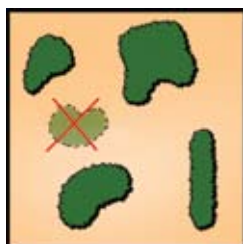
Example Ranges of Minimum Patch Area	
Taxa	Patch Area
Plants	5 to \geq 250 ac
Invertebrates	50 sq ft to \geq 2.5 ac
Reptiles and Amphibians	3 to \geq 35 ac
Grassland Birds	12 to \geq 135 ac
Waterfowl	\geq 12 ac
Forest Birds	5 to \geq 95 ac
Small Mammals	2.5 to \geq 25 ac
Large Mammals	40 ac to \geq 2 sq mi
Large Predator Mammals	3.5 to \geq 850 sq mi

Key patch guidelines

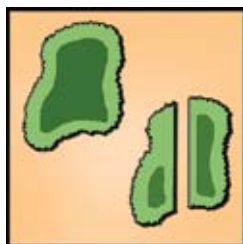
Small patches play a critical role in protecting biodiversity, particularly in areas with limited habitat. Small patches can capture a range of habitat types or unique habitats. Include large and small patches in a plan.



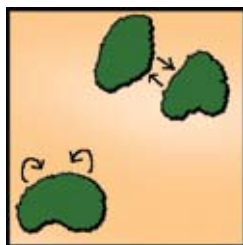
Redundancy is an essential component of ecosystems at all scales. If several patches exist in an area, species may not be seriously threatened or lost if one of the patches is destroyed or degraded.



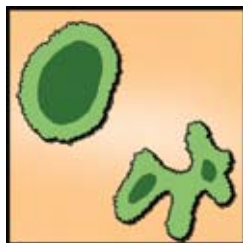
Of two patches having exactly the same area, one fragmented and one unified, the unified patch will be of far greater value. Biodiversity will remain higher and negative edge effects will be reduced.

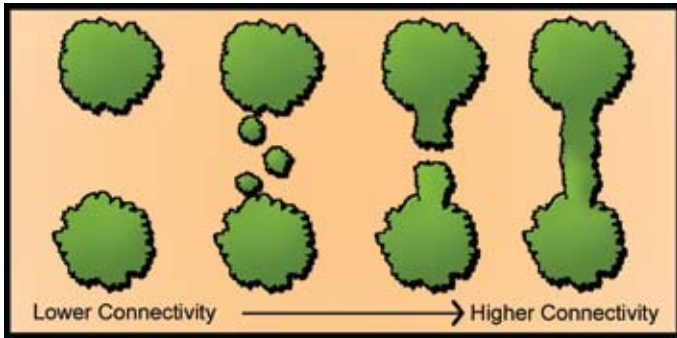


Opportunities for species to interact become greater as the distance between patches decreases. This potential interaction is dependent on species and their movement capabilities.



A less convoluted patch will have a lower proportion of edge habitat and will provide greater benefits for interior species which are often species of concern.





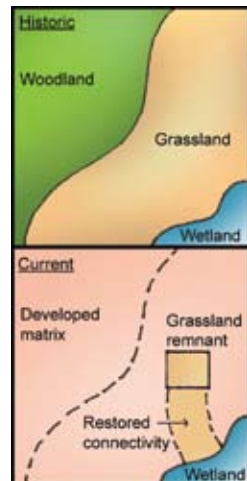
2.3 Corridors and connectivity

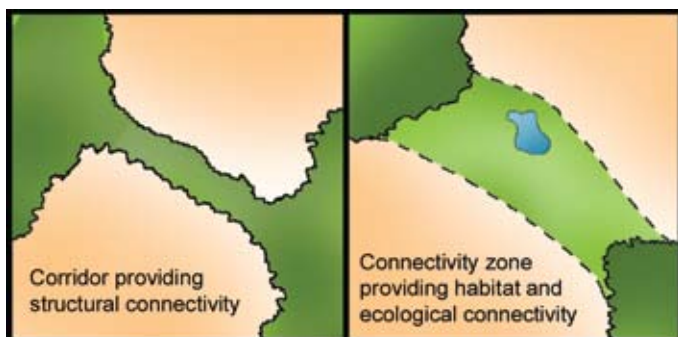
Connecting patches with corridors can benefit biodiversity by providing access to other areas of habitat, increasing gene flow and population viability, enabling recolonization of patches, and providing habitat.

Connectivity can be undesirable or unsuccessful in some cases. Corridors can be dominated by edge effects, can increase risk of parasitism and disease, and can facilitate dispersal of invasive species (see section 2.10). Corridors can be unsuccessful if they do not meet the movement or habitat requirements for the target species.

Key design considerations

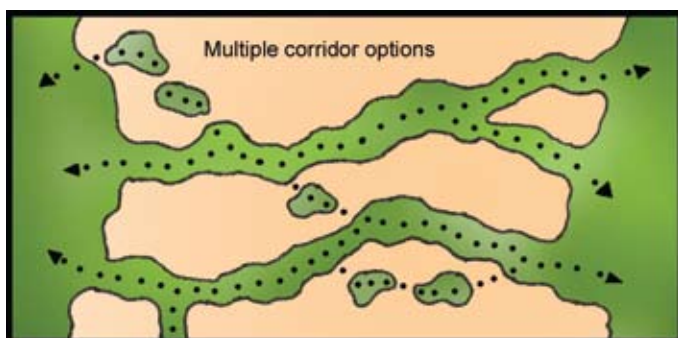
- Design corridors at several spatial and temporal scales.
- Provide quality habitat in a corridor whenever possible.
- Locate corridors along dispersal and migration routes.
- Corridors, particularly regional corridors, should not be limited to a single topographic setting.
- Similarity in vegetation between corridors and patches is beneficial.
- Restore historical connections and generally avoid linking areas not historically connected.





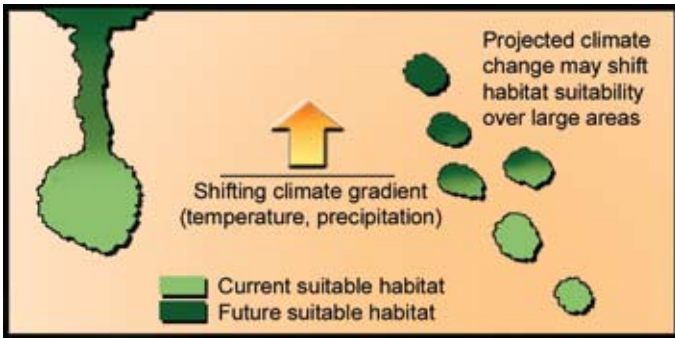
2.4 Corridors versus connectivity zones

Avoid limiting corridors to strips of a single vegetation type, rather design corridors as broad connectivity zones. Using this approach, corridors can enhance habitat connectivity by linking the different types of habitat required by a species or ecological connectivity where ecosystem processes are maintained (e.g., climate change, seed dispersal).



2.5 Corridor network

A redundant corridor network may provide multiple pathways for movement, reducing the impact if a corridor is eliminated. However, this increased connectivity could facilitate quicker dispersal of problems such as diseases, parasitism, and invasive species. A corridor network may be a useful approach to encompassing a range of habitats in a region.



2.6 Climate change and corridors

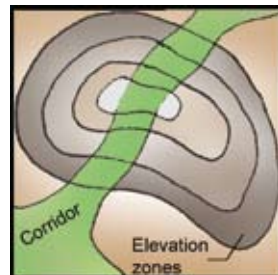
Current and projected climate change may have significant impacts on biodiversity and other resources. Corridors and buffers may potentially affect these impacts in several ways:

1. Reduce greenhouse gases (see sections 4.2, 4.7, and 4.8)
2. Allow species to migrate as climate changes
3. Protect sensitive areas from increased climatic events such as floods and storm surges along coastal areas
4. Provide habitat that offers range of microclimate refugia

Corridors may be of limited value for biodiversity if climate change occurs at a rate too fast to allow for migration and may end up just benefiting species that are highly mobile and adaptable, including invasive species.

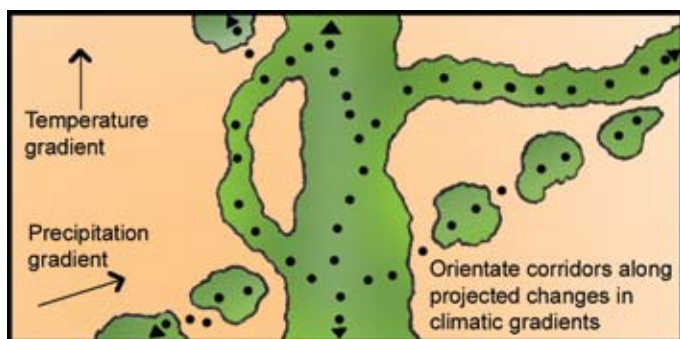
Key design considerations

- Corridors for climate change may be best suited for landscapes that are less modified by human development.
- Broad connectivity zones may be more effective than distinct and narrow corridors (see section 2.4).
- A strategy of stepping stones and corridors may offer the most opportunities for dispersal and migration (see section 2.7).
- Corridors that cross elevation zones may allow migration in mountainous landscapes.

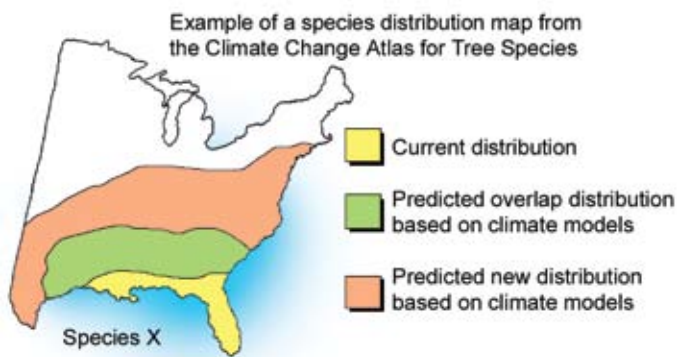


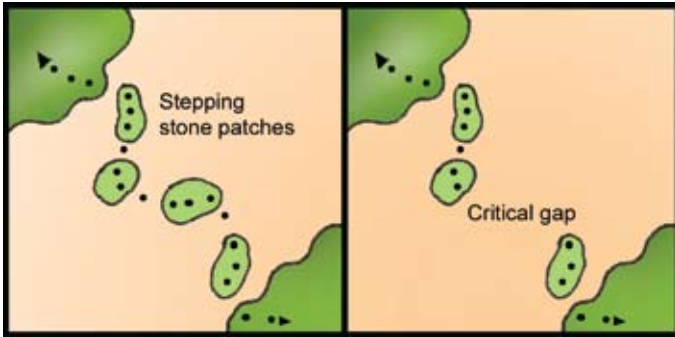
Key design considerations *(continued)*

- Locate corridors and patches to provide climate refugia at multiple spatial scales.
- Include a range of geological substrates and soils to meet different plant requirements.
- Riparian buffers may help mitigate temperature changes in streams due to climate change (see section 2.12).
- Orientate corridors along projected changes in climatic gradients.



When establishing new, long-term plantings, it may be useful to select plants that may be adapted to the changing climate. Atlases of woody plant distributions under modeled climate change can serve as a guide and may offer insight on which species will require more migration to persist. Search the Web for a climate change atlas for tree species.





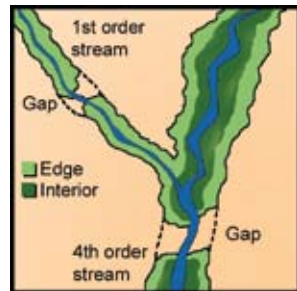
2.7 Stepping stones and gaps

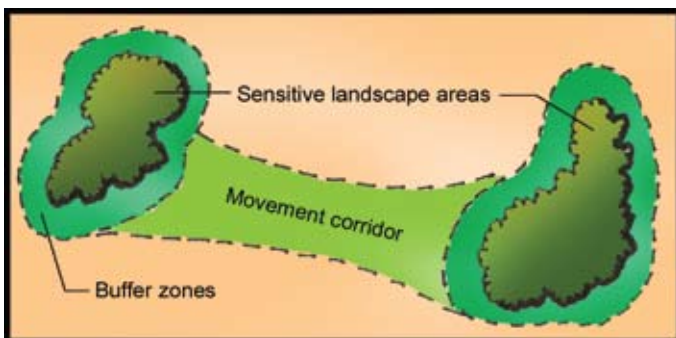
Small patches can serve as stepping stones, allowing for species movement between large patches and are important in fragmented landscapes. However, the loss of a stepping stone can often inhibit movement, increasing patch isolation.

At some point, the distance between stepping stones or a gap in a continuous corridor will exceed a threshold at which a particular species will be unwilling or incapable of crossing. These critical gaps should often be restored.

Key considerations for managing gaps

- The greater the contrast between the gap and the corridor plant community, the narrower the gap must be in order not to be a barrier.
- Smaller species will generally have smaller gap thresholds.
- Species requiring specialized habitats will have smaller gap thresholds.
- For visually-orientated species, gap thresholds may be determined by the ability to see the next stepping stone or across the gap.
- In riparian corridors, restore gaps in higher order streams first to provide the greatest benefit for biodiversity.



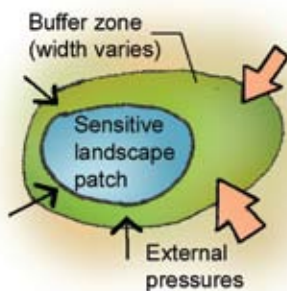


2.8 Buffers and corridors

Buffers and corridors are linked together as a conservation strategy. Buffer zones are designated areas used to protect sensitive landscape patches (e.g., wetlands, wildlife reserves) from negative external pressures. Corridors are used to connect the buffered landscape patches.

Buffer zone width should be based on the desired ecological functions, landscape context, and external pressures. Upland buffers of 250 to 1,000 feet around wetlands have been recommended for turtles and amphibians. For wildlife reserves or parks, buffer zones may need to be several miles wide.

Refer to section 2.10 for distances of edge effects. These distances can serve as a guide for creating buffer zones around habitat patches to protect them from edge effects. See section 7.2 for guidance on human activity and buffer zones.

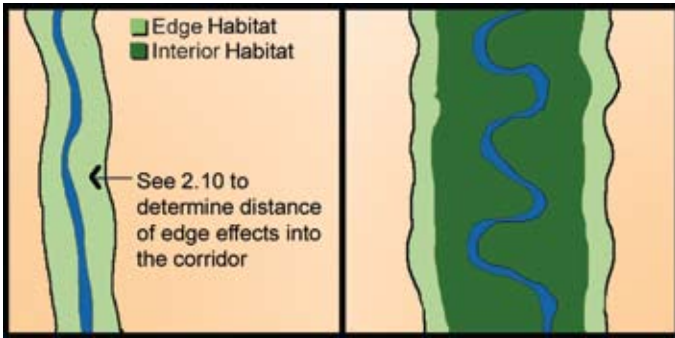


Key Considerations

Base buffer width on specific ecological functions

Modify buffer width according to landscape context and external pressures

Manage activities within buffer to benefit goals in the landscape patch



2.9 Corridor width

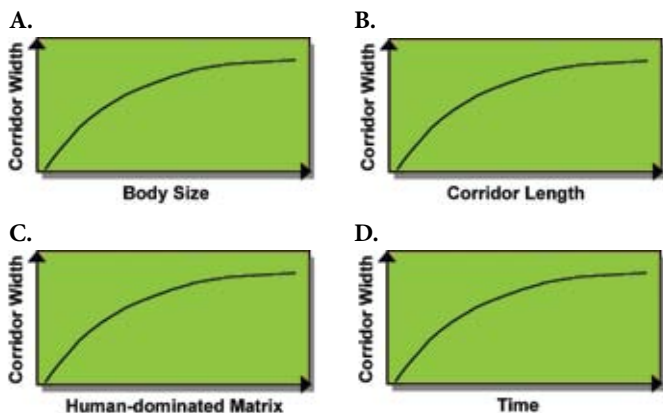
Wide corridors, both upland and riparian, provide greater habitat area with reduced edge effects, while generally promoting more opportunities for species movement. Wider riparian corridors can facilitate stream meandering, providing overall higher habitat quality and diversity.

Many studies have examined the issue of corridor width for certain species. However, many of the studies have not tested a significant range of corridor widths to adequately determine optimal corridor widths. In addition, for a given width, corridor effectiveness will vary with corridor length, habitat continuity, habitat quality, and many other factors.

With those limitations in mind, the bar graph on the next page summarizes research on species movement through corridors. The black bar denotes the suggested minimum corridor width while the gray bar indicates the upper end of recommended widths. These ranges should be refined with a biologist.

Based on this research, some general relationships on corridor width can be inferred (see line graphs).

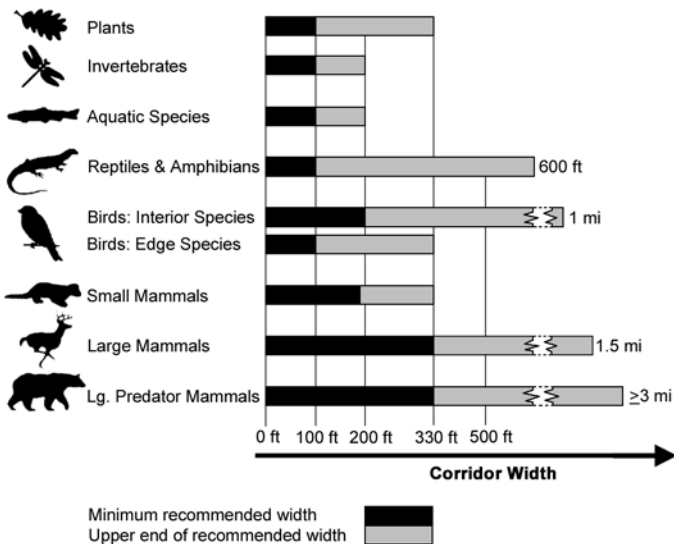
- A. The larger the species, the wider the corridor will need to be to facilitate movement and provide potential habitat.
- B. As the length of the corridor increases, so should the width. Shorter corridors are more likely to provide increased connectivity than long corridors.

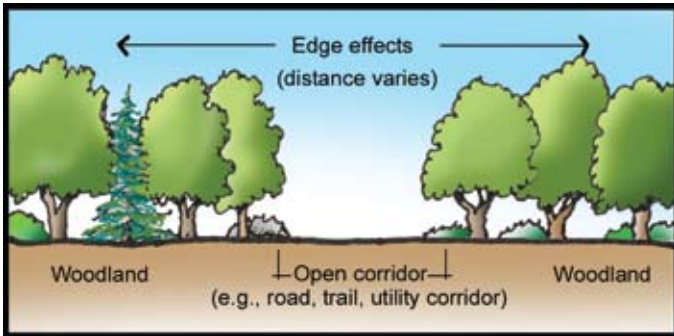


C. A corridor will generally need to be wider in landscapes that provide limited habitat or that are dominated by human use.

D. Corridors that need to function for decades or centuries should be wider. Some functions that require significant time include dispersal for slow-moving organisms, gene flow, and changes to range distribution due to climate change.

Corridor Width Summary





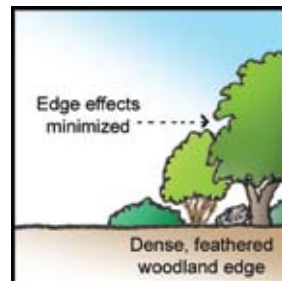
2.10 Edge effects of corridors

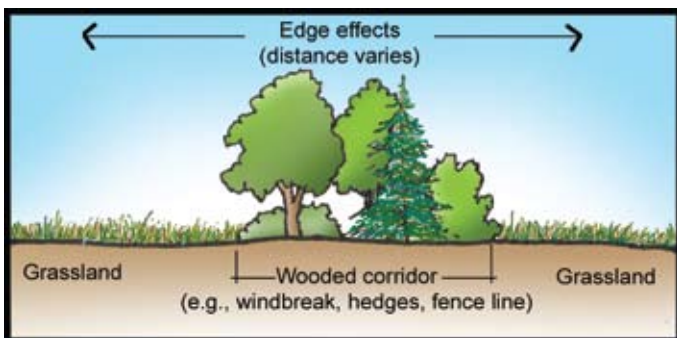
Corridors established in woodlands or grasslands can create negative edge effects that extend into the woodland or grassland. Examples include open corridors cleared for roads in woodlands and hedgerows established in grasslands.

Negative edge effects include increased risk of parasitism or disease, increased risk of predation, adverse microclimate conditions, and competition from invasive species. These factors should be considered when designing corridors.

Key considerations for reducing negative edge effects

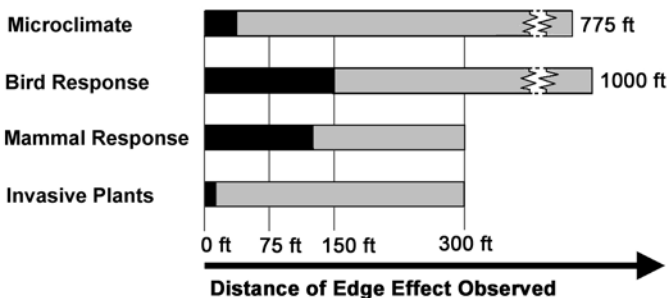
- Locate corridors along existing edges and avoid fragmenting habitat patches.
- Consolidate corridor uses to minimize fragmentation (e.g., combine road and utility corridors).
- In woodlands, create a dense, feathered edge with vegetation to reduce penetration of edge effects.
- Narrower corridors will generally have less edge effects into adjacent habitat.
- If the landscape already consists of patches dominated by edge, a corridor will probably not contribute additional negative impacts.



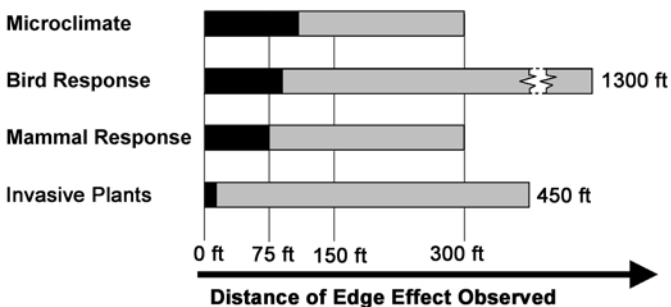




These graphs provide a summary of documented edge effects. These distances can be used for estimating the zone of impact and for designing ways to reduce these impacts.

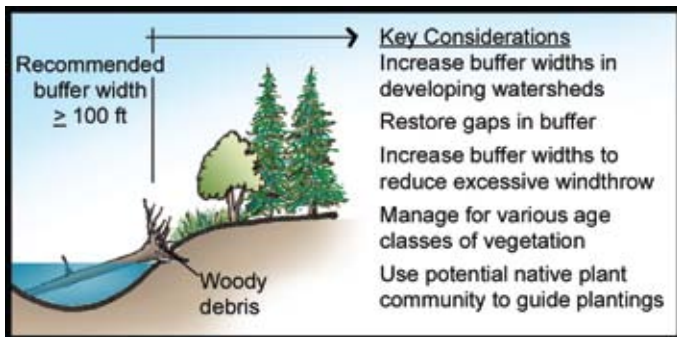
Open Corridor in Woodland



Wooded Corridor in Grassland



Minimum distance edge effect observed 
 Maximum distance edge effect observed 



2.11 Aquatic habitat and buffers

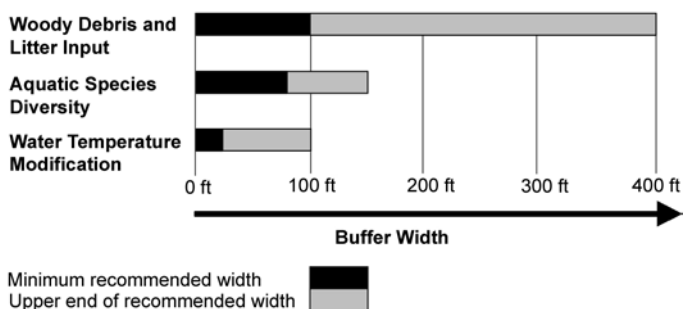
Riparian corridors or buffers influence habitat quality for aquatic species in several ways:

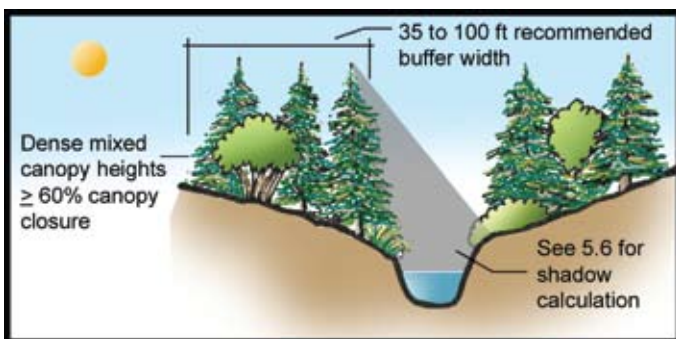
1. Provide woody debris for aquatic habitat structure
2. Maintain in-stream microclimate (see section 2.12)
3. Provide food for aquatic species
4. Protect water quality (see section 1.0)

Riparian buffers may not be able to maintain desirable aquatic habitat quality in watersheds that are highly developed. Other land use management strategies will need to be used as well.

The graph below summarizes some of the research on buffer widths for aquatic habitat functions and can serve as a starting point for design.

Buffer Width for Aquatic Habitat Functions





2.12 Stream temperature and buffers

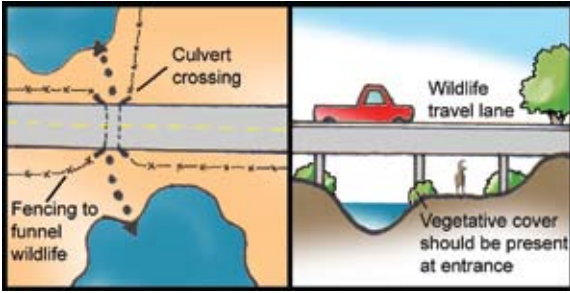
Buffers can help maintain cooler water temperatures in small streams if the vegetation provides adequate shade on the water surface. This can be beneficial for coldwater aquatic species and for water quality.

Stream shade is comprised of topographic shade provided by nearby hills, bank shade, and vegetative shade. Streams with vegetation removed usually have undesirable summer temperature increases from 5 °C to 11 °C. Aspect, channel morphology, and groundwater input may affect temperatures more than buffers.

Key design considerations

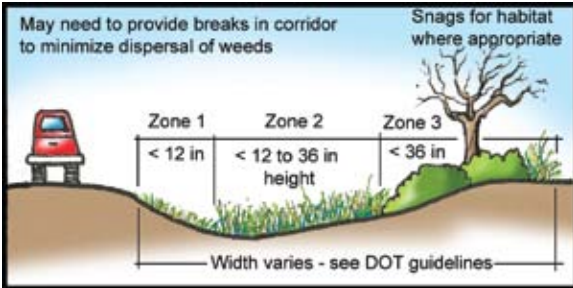
- Incorporate topography and bank shade in the design.
- Trees and shrubs provide the most shade, but unmowed or ungrazed grass buffers can provide shade on streams < 8 feet in width.
- Buffer shading effectiveness decreases as stream width increases.
- Windthrow may be common in buffers retained after timber harvest and wider buffers may be necessary.
- Buffers may need to be wider (150 to 1,000 feet) to maintain other microclimatic factors (e.g., soil temperature, humidity).





2.13 Roads and wildlife crossings

When wildlife corridors are bisected by roads, safe passage should be provided through culverts, bridges, and/or overpasses. Landscape-scale assessments can aid in locating wildlife crossings. When using culverts for crossings, include culverts of mixed-sized classes and avoid creating barriers to movement like debris grates. Design guides are available.



2.14 Roadside corridors

In areas with limited habitat, roadsides may be beneficial for some species although for others it may be detrimental. Manage vegetation height to maintain visibility to reduce potential vehicle-wildlife collisions. Use native plants and maintain plant vigor by mowing or burning every 3 to 5 years. Burn or mow in blocks to ensure some portion remains undisturbed.

**Productive
Soils**







3. Productive Soils

Objectives

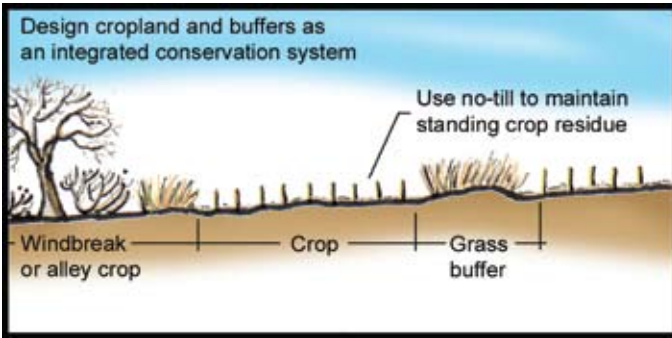
- Reduce soil erosion
- Increase soil productivity

Buffer functions

1. Reduce water runoff energy
2. Reduce wind energy
3. Stabilize soil
4. Improve soil quality
5. Remove soil pollutants

Design Guidelines for Productive Soils	Buffer Functions				
	Reduce water runoff energy	Reduce wind energy	Stabilize soil	Improve soil quality	Remove soil pollutants
3.1 Buffers and cropland management	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
3.4 Grassed waterways	✓		✓		
3.5 Phytoremediation buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Productive Soils	Buffer Functions				
	<i>Reduce water runoff energy</i>	<i>Reduce wind energy</i>	<i>Stabilize soil</i>	<i>Improve soil quality</i>	<i>Remove soil pollutants</i>
1.1 Buffers and land management	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.4 Target buffers in watersheds	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1.6 Buffer site design	✓		✓		
1.7 Variable buffer width	✓		✓		
1.8 Effective buffer area ratio	✓		✓		
1.10 Buffers for sediment	✓		✓	✓	✓
1.18 Allowances for bank erosion			✓	✓	
1.20 Vegetation for removing pollutants	✓		✓	✓	✓
1.21 Stiff-stemmed grass barriers	✓		✓		
1.22 Vegetation for bank erosion control			✓	✓	
4.4 Windbreaks and crop yields	✓	✓	✓		✓
4.5 Alley cropping	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
5.10 Waterbreaks	✓		✓		
7.4 Soil erosion and trail recreation	✓	✓	✓		

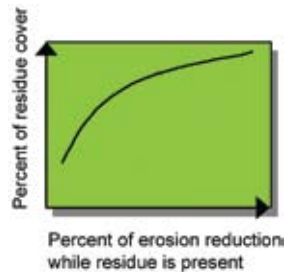



3.1 Buffers and cropland management

Buffers can not replace good cropland management. Trapping soil in buffers is ineffective in maintaining soil productivity and can become a long-term maintenance problem. The most effective strategy is combining buffers with appropriate cropland management.

Key cropland management considerations

- Establish crop rows on the contour.
- Use conservation tillage or no-till to reduce water and wind erosion. Residue should be left standing and orientated perpendicular to the prevailing wind direction.
- Maintain crop residue to reduce evaporation and increase infiltration. Standing crop residue captures drifting snow and increases soil moisture.
- Use cover crops to provide cover during fallow season.
- Use strip cropping to reduce sediment transport.
- In highly erodible situations, select a perennial crop to maintain cover year around.
- Deliver irrigation water in a manner that minimizes erosion.





**Open Wind Speed 20 mph
40 to 60% Density**

Downwind Zone of Protection

h distance from windbreak	5h	10h	15h	20h	30h
miles per hour	6	10	12	15	19
% of open wind speed	30%	50%	60%	75%	95%

3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion

Windbreaks for soil erosion control are usually 1 to 3 rows planted at right angles to prevailing winds. The area protected downwind of a windbreak is a function of the average height and density of the windbreak.

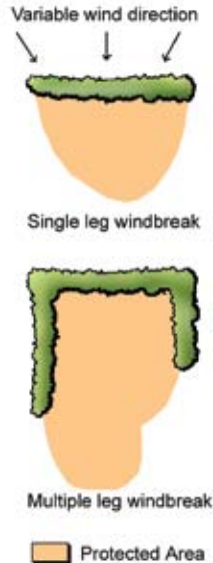
A windbreak protects an area 10 to 15 times the height of the trees. A windbreak density of 40 to 60 percent provides the greatest downwind protection for soil erosion. Choose species foliage and branching characteristics that will achieve the desired density during the critical protection periods.

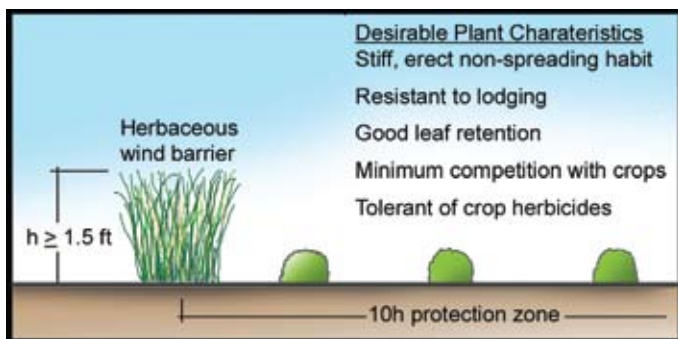
Single row windbreaks offer limited resilience because a single dead tree can leave a gap in the windbreak. Gaps result in increased wind speeds and reduced protection.

Multiple leg windbreaks provide greater protection than single leg windbreaks.

Locate access roads at the end of windbreaks. Extend windbreaks beyond the area being protected.

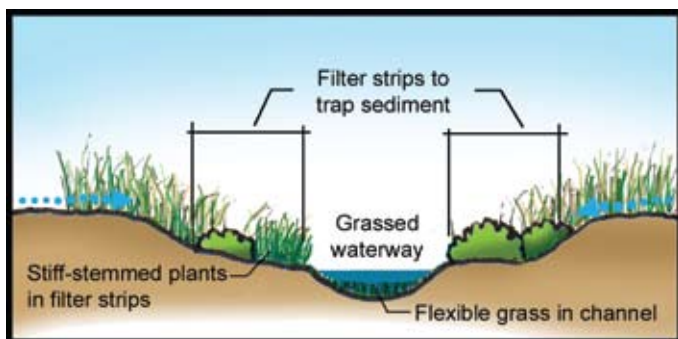
See sections 4.4, 5.7, and 5.8 for other windbreak functions.





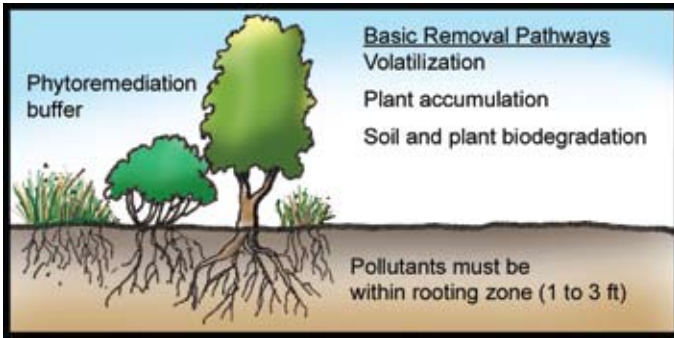
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers

Herbaceous wind barriers are tall, non-woody plants established in narrow strips to reduce soil erosion and protect crops. In general, the same design guidelines in section 3.2 apply to herbaceous-only wind barriers. Herbaceous wind barriers are suitable for situations with height restrictions, such as for use under center pivot irrigation.



3.4 Grassed waterways

A grassed waterway is a vegetated channel that carries runoff at a nonerosive velocity to a stable outlet. Grassed waterways can be enhanced by including filter strips to filter runoff and to trap sediment outside of the waterway. Vegetation in the channel should lie down to convey water while vegetation in the filter strips should be tall and stiff to avoid submergence and to filter sediment from runoff.



3.5 Phytoremediation buffers

Phytoremediation is the use of plants to clean up soil and water contaminated with metals, solvents, and other pollutants. Phytoremediation buffers can be used to treat brownfields, landfill leachate, mine waste, and other low to moderately polluted sites.

Limitations in using phytoremediation include the length of time required for remediation, pollutants at a level tolerable for the plants used, bioavailability of pollutants, and the level of cleanup required. Consult with appropriate environmental professionals to design an effective system.

Key design considerations

- Select vegetation that is fast growing, easy to maintain, and capable of transforming the pollutants to a non-toxic form.
- May need to conduct screening studies and field plot trials to determine suitable plants.
- Avoid monocultures to reduce risk to disease and pests.
- Pollutants need to be within the upper rooting zone. Plants with different rooting types and depths may be used together to treat a greater soil depth. A fibrous root system is usually the most efficient.
- Determine and mitigate potential exposure risks for wildlife.
- Harvesting vegetation and proper disposal may be necessary.







4. Economic Opportunities

Objectives

- Provide income sources
- Increase economic diversity
- Increase economic value

Buffer functions

1. Produce marketable products
2. Reduce energy consumption
3. Increase property values
4. Provide alternative energy sources
5. Provide ecosystem services

Design Guidelines for Economic Opportunities	Buffer Functions				
	Produce marketable products	Reduce energy consumption	Increase property values	Provide alternative energy sources	Provide ecosystem services
4.1 Buffers and ecosystem services	✓				✓
4.2 Carbon sequestration	✓				✓
4.3 Multi-story cropping in buffers	✓				✓
4.4 Windbreaks and crop yields	✓	✓			✓
4.5 Alley cropping	✓	✓			✓
4.6 Biofuel buffers	✓			✓	✓
4.7 Energy conservation: site		✓	✓	✓	✓
4.8 Energy conservation: landscape		✓	✓		✓
4.9 Crop pollinator habitat	✓				✓

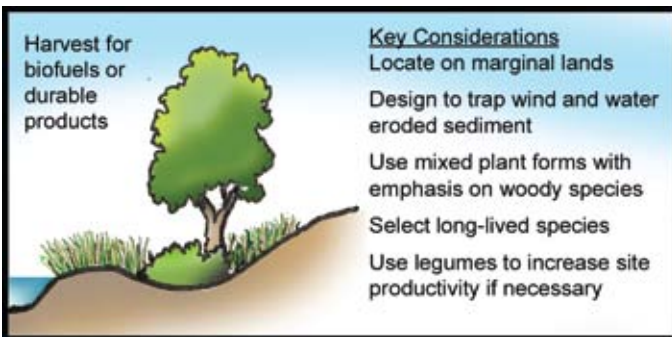
Design Guidelines for Economic Opportunities	Buffer Functions				
	Produce marketable products	Reduce energy consumption	Increase energy values	Provide alternative energy sources	Provide ecosystem services
4.10 Economic impact of trails	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
4.11 Greenways and property values			✓		✓

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Economic Opportunities	Buffer Functions				
	Produce marketable products	Reduce energy consumption	Increase energy values	Provide alternative energy sources	Provide ecosystem services
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion	✓	✓	✓		✓
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers	✓	✓	✓		✓
3.5 Phytoremediation buffers	✓	✓		✓	✓
5.1 Managing insect pests with buffers	✓				✓
5.8 Windbreaks for livestock	✓	✓	✓		✓
6.2 Windbreaks for odor control				✓	✓
6.3 Air quality buffers				✓	✓
6.4 Buffers for noise control				✓	✓
6.6 Attractive roadside corridors				✓	✓
6.7 Buffers for visual screening				✓	✓
7.5 Trail user preferences				✓	✓
7.6 Trail layout		✓	✓		✓
7.7 Trail access and usage		✓	✓		✓



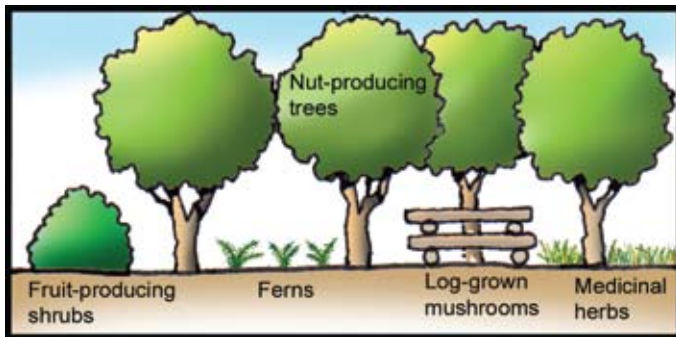
4.1 Buffers and ecosystem services

Buffers perform ecosystem services that are valuable for society and landowners. Some services have markets such as hunting and recreational leases based on habitat functions, but many services are difficult to quantify and have limited or no current markets. Some services may develop into markets (e.g., water quality, carbon credits). Above are considerations for designing buffers to maximize ecosystem services.



4.2 Carbon sequestration

Carbon sequestered in buffers may be sold in future carbon credit markets. Use trees and other woody plants to store significant carbon aboveground. The largest, more permanent sequestered carbon may be achieved if the vegetation is used for durable products. Soil carbon under buffers can increase through organic matter accumulation and sediment deposition.



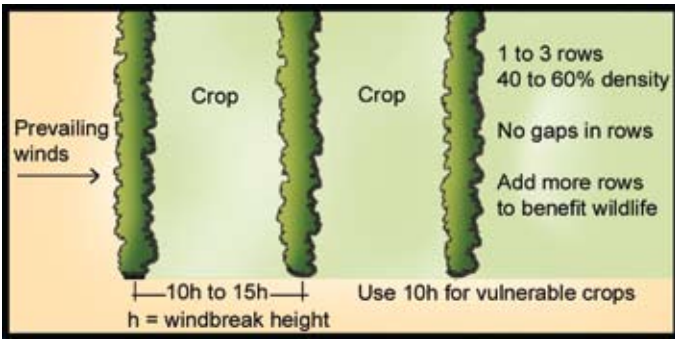
4.3 Multi-story cropping in buffers

Useful and marketable products can be grown under tree buffers (see table).

Key design considerations

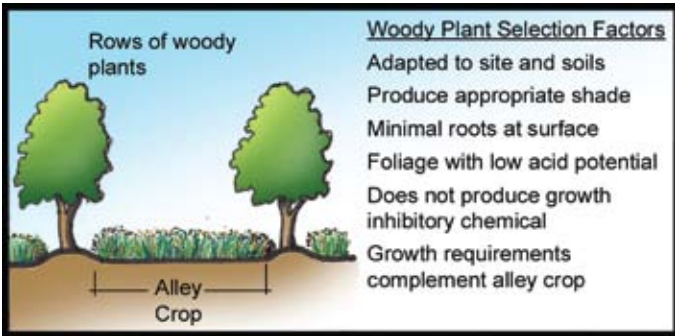
- Select plants that provide multiple benefits.
- Use plants that provide short and long-term products.
- Avoid plants that compete for same resources.
- Utilize the different canopy layers to increase options.
- Avoid plants that compromise other buffer objectives.

Potential Products to Grow in Buffers	
Canopy Layer	Plant/Product
Overstory	Nut-producing trees (e.g., pecans, hazelnut, hickory, pine nuts), Timber (e.g., oak, walnut, maple), Biofuels (e.g., poplar)
Midstory	Syrups (e.g., maple, boxelder), Bark (e.g., cedar, birch), Evergreen boughs, Other wood-derived products (e.g., cedar bedding, oils)
Shrub Layer	Decorative woody florals (e.g., curly willow, red twig dogwood, holly), Berries (e.g., wild plum, juneberry, currants)
Herbaceous Layer	Medicinal herbs (e.g., ginseng, black cohosh, bloodroot), Culinary herbs (e.g., mints, basil), Decoratives (e.g., beargrass, salal, ferns)
Root Zone	Fungi (e.g., truffles, morels)
Vertical Layer	Climbing berries (e.g., raspberry), Climbing vines (e.g., bittersweet), Log-grown mushrooms



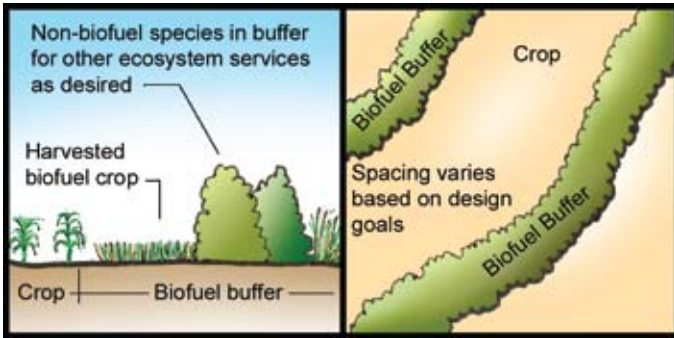
4.4 Windbreaks and crop yields

Windbreaks can increase amount and quality of crop yields by reducing erosion, improving microclimate, retaining moisture, and reducing crop damage by high winds. If prevailing winds are from two directions, windbreaks on two sides may be required. To encourage even distribution of snow across a field for soil moisture, use a density of 30 to 40 percent.



4.5 Alley cropping

Alley cropping is the cultivation of crops grown in between rows of woody plants. Key design considerations include selecting woody plants that provide marketable products, crop timing and management, crop sunlight requirements, and size of farm equipment as it affects spacing requirements. The alley crop can be changed as tree canopy closes over time.



4.6 Biofuel buffers

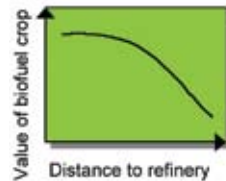
Perennial herbaceous and woody plants can be grown for producing biofuels. Biofuel crops can be used to generate power via co-firing and gasification and can be refined to yield liquid fuels like ethanol, bio-oil, and other products like biodegradable plastics and specialty chemicals.

Biofuel crops grown in buffers can augment larger block plantings of biofuels. Research suggests that it may be possible to produce enough biofuels in buffers to offset the energy required to produce crops in between the buffers.

Hybrid poplar, willows, and switchgrass are the most researched biofuel crops although other species may be suitable (see table). Guides for growing biofuel crops are available.

Key factors for locating biofuel buffers

- Highly erodible lands are often suitable.
- Other marginal lands may be suitable including flood-prone and nutrient-poor (dependent on plant species).
- Locate to achieve other goals (e.g., crop protection, water quality enhancement).
- Site should be close to a biofuel refinery to minimize transportation.



Key design considerations

- Perennials provide more benefits than annuals.
- Mixed plantings can provide benefits over monocultures (may need to separate woody and herbaceous biofuel crops).
- Consider planting and harvesting equipment in the layout.
- Select biofuel crops that fit site conditions and that are complementary to natural plant communities in the area.
- Leave some biofuel crop unharvested in a given year to provide other benefits.

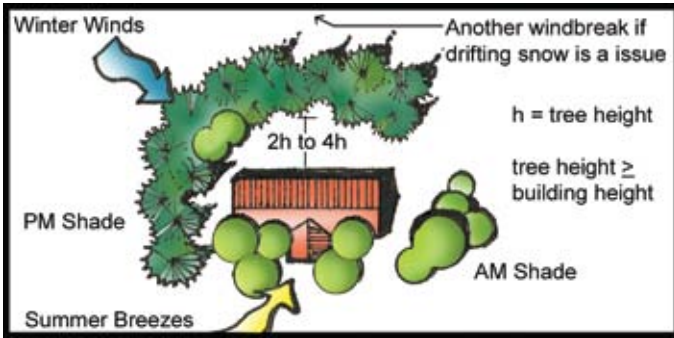
Summary of Current Information on Major Biofuel Crops			
Factor	Poplar (<i>Populus</i> spp.)	Willow (<i>Salix</i> spp.)	Switchgrass (<i>Panicum virgatum</i>)
Current yield ¹ (dry tons/acre/yr)	3.1 to 7.0	3.0 to 5.4	4.0 to 6.7
Establishment time	3 years+	3 years+	2 to 3 years+
Pesticide requirements	Low	Low	Low
Fertilizer requirements	Low to Medium	Low to Medium	Very Low
Water demand	Medium	Medium	Low
Establishment cost	Medium	Medium	Low
Plantation longevity	15 to 30 years?	20 to 30 years?	20 to 30 years?
Harvest interval	3 to 10 years	3 to 4 years	Annual
Harvest equipment	Specialized cutter and chipper	Modified forage harvester	Hay baler
Net energy conversion ²	1:8 to 1:16	1:8 to 1:16	1:4 to 1:14
Erosion rates ³ (tons/acre/yr)	0.09 to 0.9	0.09 to 0.9	0.09

Notes:

1 Variable yields under unirrigated conditions and low to moderate fertilization.

2 Calculated net energy ratios for biofuels vary greatly due to base assumptions and type of energy produced. For general comparison, corn ethanol results in a net energy ratio of 1:1.6 while soybean biodiesel has a ratio around 1:3.2.

3 For general comparison, annual crops have erosion rates ranging from 2.0 to 6.7 tons/acre/yr.



4.7 Energy conservation: site

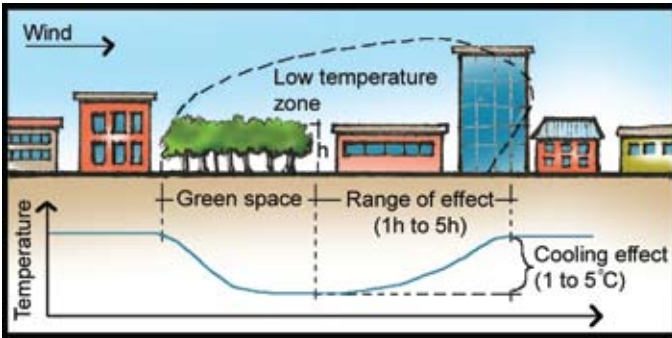
Buffers established with appropriate plants in the correct locations can yield annual energy savings of 10 to 40 percent. The key design issues are to manage for shade and wind.

Managing shade

- For cooling, maximize shade on west and east walls and roof.
- Trees planted to the southeast, south, or southwest will only shade a building in the summer if they extend out over the roof. These trees should be deciduous and pruned up to allow winter sun into windows.
- Plan for maximum shade at warmest part of year and minimum shade at coldest (see section 5.6).
- Consider the plantings final height and form, branching density, and the leaf-on and -off periods.

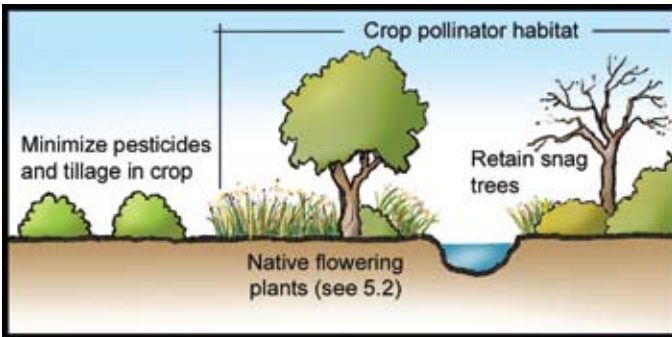
Managing wind

- For heating, locate a dense evergreen windbreak 2 to 4 tree heights upwind of the building.
- For heating, a windbreak should not be pruned up. Stagger planting rows to prevent gaps in case a tree dies.
- If drifting snow is an issue, locate another windbreak upwind of the first windbreak (see section 5.7).
- For cooling, maintain an open understory to allow for ventilation by summer breezes (which are from a different direction than winter winds—see diagram).



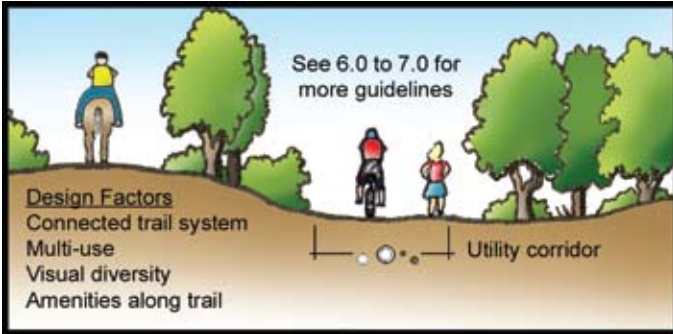
4.8 Energy conservation: landscape

Parks and other green space buffers can reduce energy consumption by lowering adjacent air temperatures. Summer cooling effects of 1 °C to 5 °C can extend 1 to 5 tree heights into the built-up area. To maximize cooling, locate buffers at frequent intervals. Each degree reduction can lower electricity demand for cooling by 2 to 4 percent.



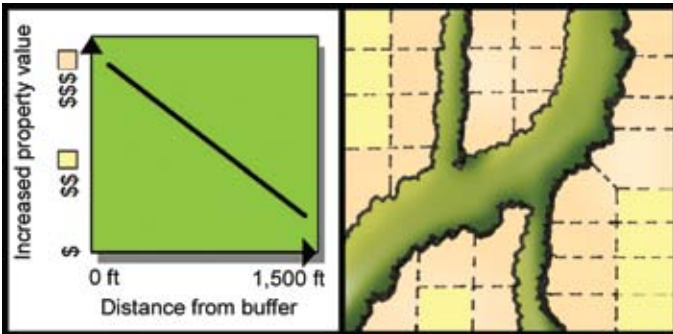
4.9 Crop pollinator habitat

Buffers can provide valuable resources for crop pollinators including shade, nesting sites, water, nectar and pollen, and protection from pesticides (see sections 5.2 to 5.3). Buffers can reduce wind and aid in foraging and pollination efficiency. Ideally, buffers should be < 1,000 feet from the crop.



4.10 Economic impact of trails

Buffers or greenways that include trails can generate economic benefits through increase in property values, tourism, and public cost reduction. Greenways can reduce public costs by serving as utility corridors and protecting high risk areas (e.g., flood prone) from development. Factors increasing trail usage contribute to economic benefits (see sections 6 and 7).



4.11 Greenways and property values

Greenways can increase property values of nearby parcels by 5 to 32 percent. Greenways with desirable visual characteristics and recreational opportunities correspond to higher property values (see sections 6 and 7). Public greenway acquisition and development may be self-financing through the increase in property values and subsequent increase in property taxes.







5. Protection and Safety

Objectives

- Protect from wind or snow*
- Increase biological pest control*
- Protect from flood waters*
- Create a safe environment*

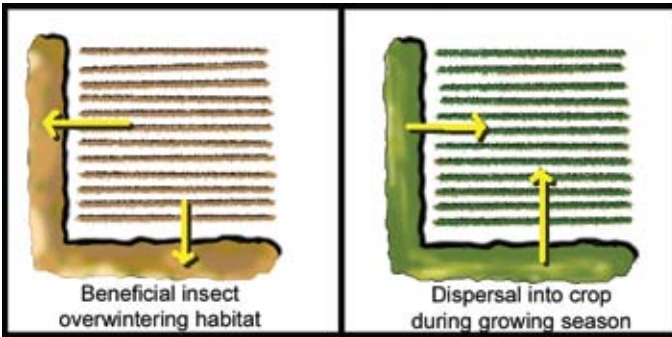
Buffer functions

1. Reduce wind energy
2. Modify microclimate
3. Enhance habitat for predators of pests
4. Reduce flood water levels and erosion
5. Reduce hazards

Design Guidelines for Protection and Safety	Buffer Functions				
	Reduce wind energy	Modify microclimate	Enhance habitat for predators of pests	Reduce flood water levels and erosion	Reduce hazards
5.1 Managing insect pests with buffers	✓	✓	✓		
5.2 Plants that attract beneficial insects		✓	✓		
5.3 Buffers and spray drift	✓	✓	✓		✓
5.4 Weed control with buffers	✓		✓		
5.5 Buffers and road intersections					✓
5.6 Managing shade		✓			✓
5.7 Managing drifting snow	✓	✓			✓
5.8 Windbreaks for livestock	✓	✓			
5.9 Flood attenuation and buffers				✓	✓

Design Guidelines for Protection and Safety	Buffer Functions				
	Reduce wind energy	Modify microclimate	Enhance habitat for predators of pests	Reduce flood, water levels and erosion	Reduce hazards
5.10 Waterbreaks				✓	✓
5.11 Wildfire defensible buffer zones	✓	✓			✓

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Protection and Safety	Buffer Functions				
	Reduce wind energy	Modify microclimate	Enhance habitat for predators of pests	Reduce flood, water levels and erosion	Reduce hazards
1.18 Allowances for bank erosion				✓	✓
2.2 Patch primer			✓	✓	
2.9 Corridor width			✓	✓	✓
2.13 Roads and wildlife crossings					✓
2.14 Roadside corridors					✓
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion	✓	✓	✓		✓
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers	✓	✓	✓		✓
4.4 Windbreaks and crop yields	✓	✓	✓		
4.5 Alley cropping	✓	✓	✓		
4.7 Energy conservation: site	✓	✓			
4.8 Energy conservation: landscape	✓	✓			
4.9 Crop pollinator habitat	✓	✓	✓		
6.2 Windbreaks for odor control	✓	✓			✓
6.3 Air quality buffers	✓	✓			✓

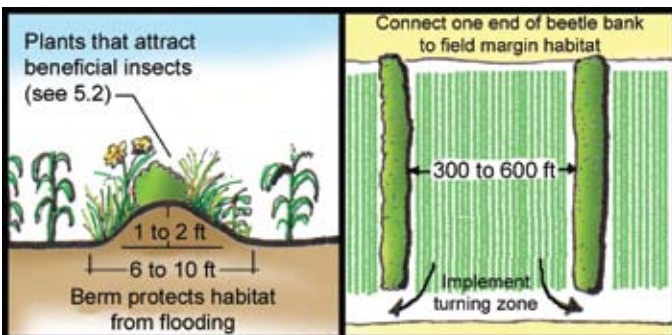


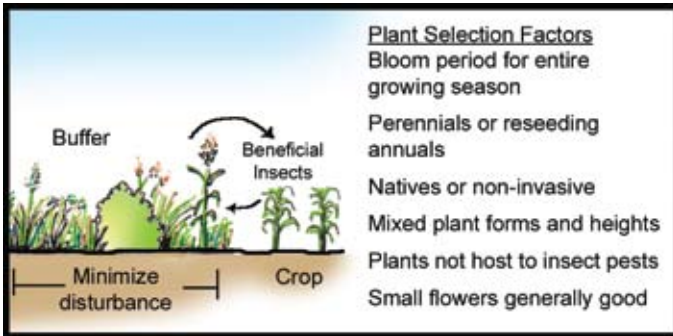
5.1 Managing insect pests with buffers

Buffers can provide habitat for beneficial insects that prey on insect pests of crops. To encourage predation, both the life cycle of the beneficial predator and pest should be understood.

Key design considerations

- Provide plant diversity and structure in the buffer.
- Protect buffer from disturbances (e.g., pesticides, tillage).
- Predation of insect pests generally increases with the percentage of buffer habitat in the area.
- Locate buffers throughout the fields and landscape to encourage dispersal of beneficial insects.
- Buffers may provide habitat for some pest insects but this can be reduced by selecting appropriate plants (see section 5.2).
- Beetle banks are long, planted berms that provide habitat for beneficial insects (see below).





5.2 Plants that attract beneficial insects

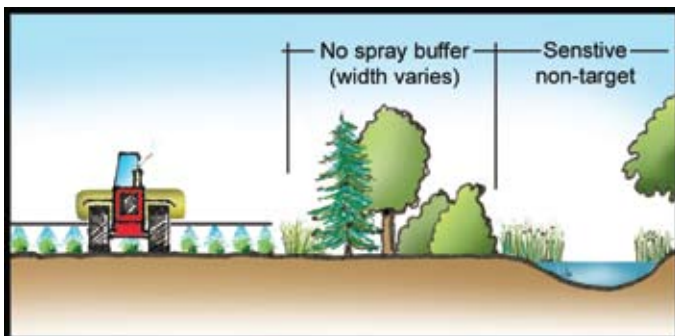
Buffers can be planted with plants to attract beneficial insects that prey on insect pests. Considerations include selecting plants that bloom sequentially throughout the growing season and avoiding plants that enhance pest abundance.

Native plants are preferred because these species attract native beneficial insects and are less likely to become agricultural weeds. The table below provides a list of beneficial insects, the pests the beneficial insects prey on, and the plants or habitats that attract the beneficial insects.

Plants that Attract Beneficial Insects		
Beneficial	Pests	Plants/Habitat
Assassin bug (Reduviidae family)	Many insects including flies and large caterpillars	Permanent plantings for shelter (e.g., windbreaks)
Bees-Butterflies (Many families)	None but important for pollination	Pea, borage, and aster families, milkweeds, butterfly bush, others
Braconid wasp (Braconidae family)	Armyworm, cabbageworm, codling moth, gypsy moth, European corn borer, aphid, caterpillars, and other insects	Nectar plants with small flowers, yarrow, sunflower, cowparsnip
Damsel bug (Nabidae family)	Aphid, thrips, leafhopper, treehopper, caterpillars	Aster family, yarrow, common boneset
Ground beetle (Carabidae family)	Slug, snail, cutworm, Colorado potato beetle, gypsy moth, caterpillars, weed seeds	Amaranth, bunch grasses, permanent plantings for shelter

Plants that Attract Beneficial Insects

Beneficial	Pests	Plants/Habitat
Hover fly (Syrphidae family)	Aphid	Carrot and aster family (coreopsis, sunflowers, goldenrod), cowparsnip, common boneset
Lacewing (Chrysopidae family)	Soft bodied insects including aphid, thrips, European corn borer, mealybug, scale, mite	Carrot and aster family (coreopsis, sunflowers, goldenrod)
Ladybug beetle (Coccinellidae family)	Aphid, spider mite, European corn borer, mealybug	Aster family, butterfly weed, native grasses, giant hyssop, cowparsnip, yarrow, black locust
Minute Pirate Bug (Anthocorid family)	Thrips, spider mite, leafhopper, corn earworm, small caterpillars, and other insects	Carrot and aster family (daisies, sunflowers, yarrow, goldenrod), blue elderberry, potentilla, giant hyssop, common boneset, and willows
Rove beetle (Staphylinidae family)	Aphid, nematode, flies	Native grasses, permanent plantings for shelter
Spider (Salticidae, Thomisidae, and other families)	Many insects	Carrot and aster family, giant hyssop
Spined soldier bug (<i>Podisus maculiventris</i>)	Armyworm, sawfly, Colorado potato beetle, Mexican bean beetle	Aster family (sunflowers, yarrow)
Tachinid fly (Tachinidae family)	Cutworm, armyworm, May beetle, gypsy moth, squash bug	Carrot and aster family, amaranth
Tiger beetle (Cicindelidae family)	Many insects	Amaranth, bunch grasses, permanent plantings for shelter
Chalcid wasps (many families including Trichogrammatidae)	Spruce budworm, cotton bollworm, tomato hornworm, corn earworm, corn borer, codling moth	Carrot and aster family (daisies, sunflowers, yarrow, goldenrod), potentilla, giant hyssop, cowparsnip, common boneset



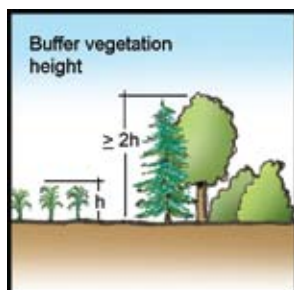
5.3 Buffers and spray drift

Buffers can help protect sensitive non-target areas from chemical spray drift. The buffer design is dependent on many variables including spray method, wind, chemical type, and the type of sensitive nontarget.

The adjacent graphs summarize recommendations for buffer widths based on spray method and the type of sensitive nontarget to be protected. Below are general design considerations.

Key design considerations

- Use vegetation with fine or needle-like leaves. Broadleaf plants capture less drift but are good for reducing wind.
- Use vegetation tolerant of the chemical being applied.
- Provide a permeable barrier (40 to 50 percent density) to allow air passage. Several rows of vegetation are better than one dense row.
- Buffer should be at least two times taller than the crop.
- Use a mixture of plant forms to ensure no gaps.
- Locate to intercept the prevailing winds and as close as possible to the spray zone.



The black bar denotes the suggested minimum recommended width while the gray bar indicates the upper end of the recommended widths based on current research. This summary should only serve as a starting point for design.

Sensitive Non-Target



Vegetation

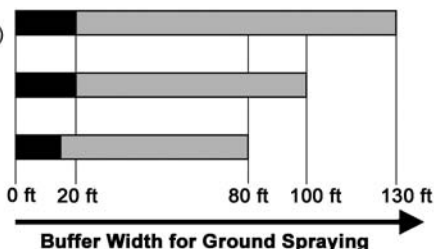
(e.g., seedlings, native veg.)

Aquatic

(e.g., wetland, fish)

Invertebrates

(e.g., bees, butterflies)



Sensitive Non-Target



Vegetation

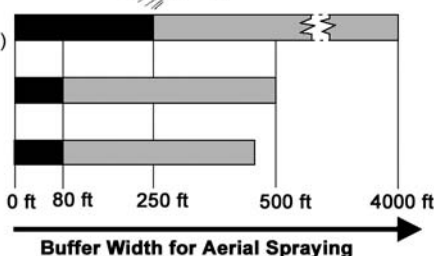
(e.g., seedlings, native veg.)

Aquatic

(e.g., wetland, fish)

Invertebrates

(e.g., bees, butterflies)



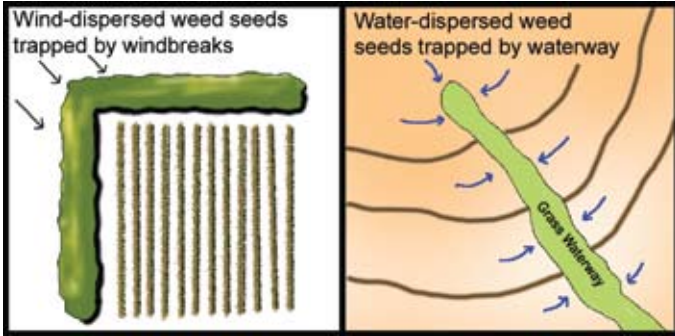
Minimum recommended width

Upper end of recommended width



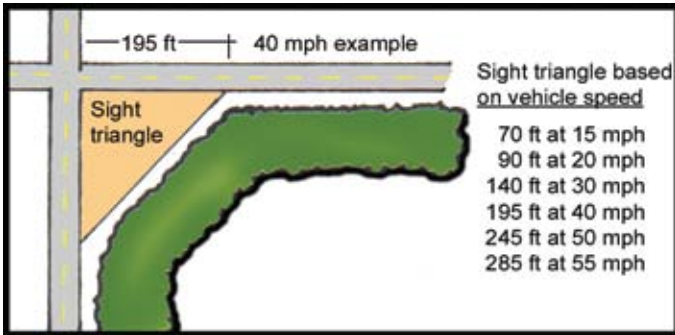
Due to the variability of chemical toxicity, these guidelines need to be used in conjunction with specific management recommendations for the particular chemical in use. Computer models are also available to help calculate spray drift potential and buffer zones.

Buffers should not be a substitute for other safety measures. Additional best management practices for chemical spraying need to be used in conjunction with buffers.



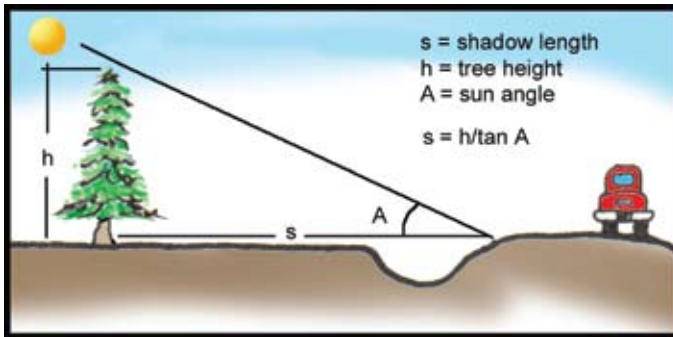
5.4 Weed control with buffers

Buffers are usually not a source of weeds and can be used for weed control. Buffers can trap water- and wind-dispersed weed seeds, reducing the area required for weed management. The concentration of weed seeds aids in seed predation by animals. Dense groundcover in a buffer can reduce weed germination.



5.5 Buffers and road intersections

At intersections not controlled by stop signs, design buffers to allow for views of oncoming traffic. The sight triangle should be based on vehicle speed. Plant height in sight triangle should be < 3 feet high. Check with agencies to see if there are regulations regarding intersection setbacks.

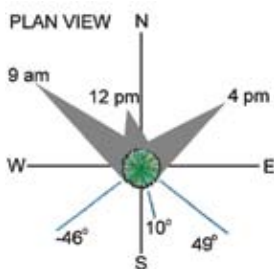


5.6 Managing shade

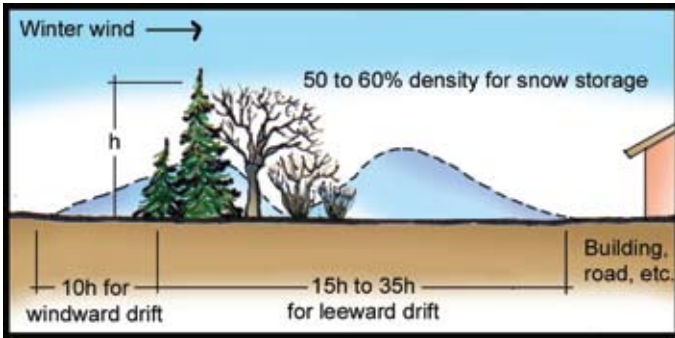
Shade cast by buffers can be a key design factor. For example, where roads are maintained to be free of snow and ice, buffers should be set back from the road to allow sunlight on the road surface. Where roads are maintained with snowpack, constant shade may be desirable to avoid ice. Buffers and their effect on drifting snow should also be considered (see section 5.7).

Use the formula $s = h / \tan A$ to calculate shadow length. See table 5.6 for an example. Sun angle calculators, available on the Web, will provide the sun angle (A) and azimuth angle for a given location based on the date and time.

Example: December 21 Sun Path Data				
Longitude 100° West - Latitude 40° North Tree Height = 35 feet				
Time	Sun Angle (A)	tan A	Sun Azimuth (East of South)	Shadow Length (feet)
9:00 AM	9°	0.1584	49°	221
12:00 PM	26°	0.4877	10°	72
4:00 PM	11°	0.1944	-46°	180

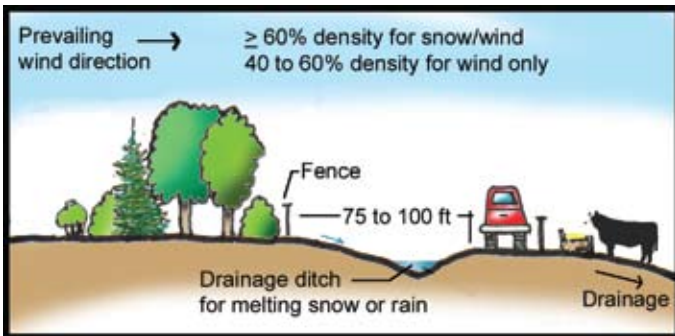


The azimuth angle is used to plot the shadow direction on the ground. Plotting the shadows throughout the day for key times during a year will be useful for designing the buffer (e.g., sections 2.12, 4.4, and 4.7).



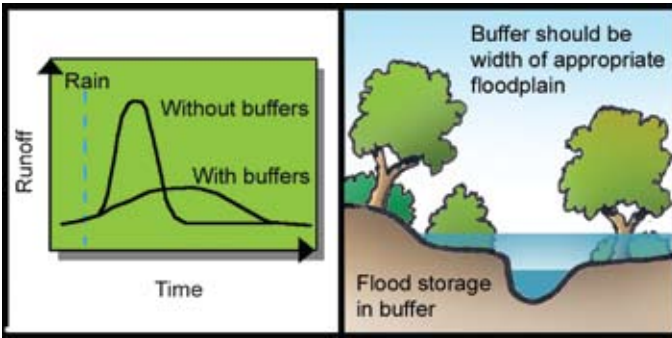
5.7 Managing drifting snow

To manage drifting snow, place a windbreak perpendicular to the prevailing winter winds. If the winter winds vary in direction, two windbreaks may be required. Extend the ends of the windbreak 50 to 100 feet beyond the area needing protection. Plant height influences snow storage capacity (i.e., doubling plant height increases snow storage by four times).



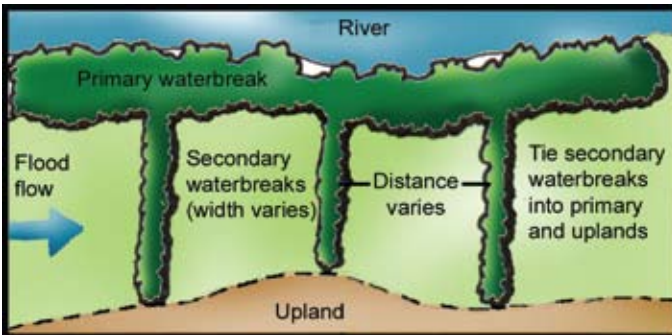
5.8 Windbreaks for livestock

Windbreaks located perpendicular to winter winds can protect livestock while allowing cooling summer winds to circulate in the feedlot or pasture. Protect windbreaks from grazing which can reduce windbreak effectiveness. Runoff from feedlot should be directed away from trees and should be treated (see section 1).



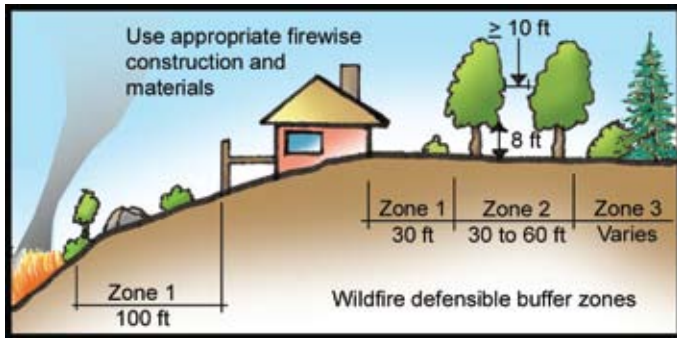
5.9 Flood attenuation and buffers

During flood events, riparian buffers and wetlands can slow runoff and absorb excess water. This reduces peak flows and can lessen downstream flooding. Downstream riparian buffers may be more effective in reducing flooding than upstream buffers. Buffer width should correspond to the width of the floodplain of concern.



5.10 Waterbreaks

A waterbreak is a system of woody buffers located to manage flooding and encourage sediment deposition. A primary waterbreak is orientated parallel to the river and secondary waterbreaks perpendicular to flood flows. Woody buffers next to levees on the channel side can protect levees from breaching and can reduce damage to levees when they do breach.



5.11 Wildfire defensible buffer zones

Buffer zones can be used to reduce fire damage to buildings and sensitive areas in landscapes prone to wildfire.

Zone 1. A minimum of 30 feet is needed for firefighters to protect a structure from wildfire. On a slope, increase the distance to 100 feet downhill of the structure. Use low growing and low flammability plants, spaced apart from each other. Remove dead material.

Zone 2. Deciduous trees and shrubs and widely spaced conifers may be used in Zone 2. Remove branches within 8 feet of the ground (but no more than 30 percent of the height of the tree) and space trees so that crowns remain at least 10 feet apart at maturity. Remove ladder fuels which are tree limbs and other materials that allow fire to burn into the tree crown.

Zone 3. Manage this zone to maintain forest stand health and other landowner objectives. Limit number of dead trees or snags but save some for wildlife (1 to 2 snags per acre).

Check with your local forester for additional guidelines.

Characteristics of low flammability plants

- Supple moist leaves and water-like, thin sap
- Little or no accumulation of dead vegetation on the plant
- Open and loose branching structure







6. Aesthetics and Visual Quality

Objectives

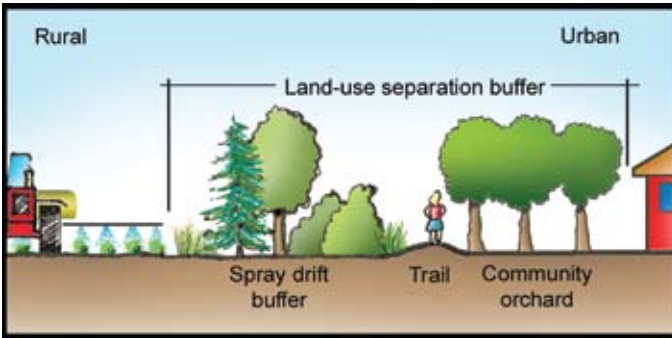
- Enhance visual quality
- Control noise levels
- Control air pollutants and odor

Buffer functions

1. Enhance visual interest
2. Screen undesirable views
3. Screen undesirable noise
4. Filter air pollutants and odors
5. Separate human activities

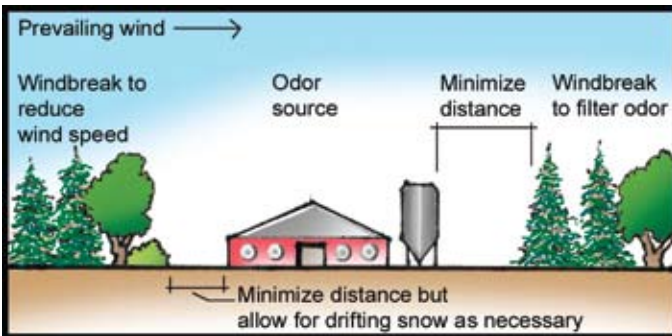
Design Guidelines for Aesthetics and Visual Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Enhance visual interest	Screen undesirable views	Screen undesirable noise	Filter air pollutants and odors	Separate human activities
6.1 Rural-urban land use buffer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
6.2 Windbreaks for odor control				✓	✓
6.3 Air quality buffers				✓	✓
6.4 Buffers for noise control			✓		✓
6.5 Developing an ecological aesthetic	✓				✓
6.6 Attractive roadside corridors	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
6.7 Buffers for visual screening		✓			✓

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Aesthetics and Visual Quality	Buffer Functions				
	Enhance visual interest	Screen views	Screen undesirable noise	Filter air pollutants and odors	Separate human activities
2.1 Matrix primer		✓			
2.3 Corridors and connectivity	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.9 Corridor width	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.13 Roads and wildlife crossings	✓				✓
2.14 Roadside corridors	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion	✓			✓	✓
3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers	✓			✓	✓
4.10 Greenways and property values	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
5.1 Managing insect pests with buffers					✓
5.3 Buffers and spray drift				✓	✓
5.4 Weed control with buffers					✓
5.7 Managing drifting snow					✓
5.8 Windbreaks for livestock			✓	✓	✓



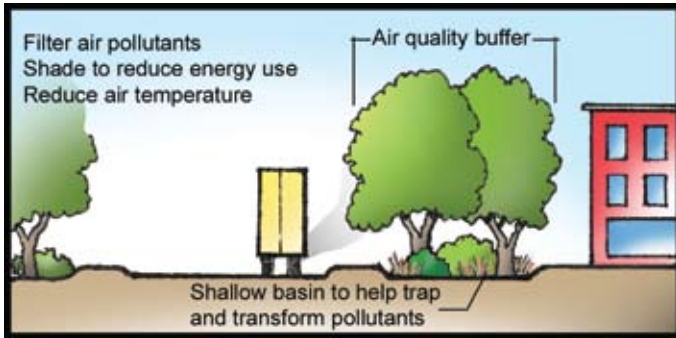
6.1 Rural-urban land use buffer

The rural-urban interface is often a zone of tension due to conflicting land uses and management. Use buffers to serve as a physical barrier between these land uses and to provide multiple benefits. Design the buffers to minimize the contentious issues (e.g., spray drift, noise, odor) while providing amenities (e.g., trails, community gardens).



6.2 Windbreaks for odor control

Windbreaks can reduce odors from livestock and sewage facilities and other odor-producing sources. Plant buffers with a mixture of tall trees and shrubs, particularly conifers, close to the odor source. Strive for 50 to 65 percent density. A windbreak system around the perimeter is often desirable. See section 6.3 for additional guidelines.



6.3 Air quality buffers

Vegetation in buffers can affect local and regional air quality in three main ways: temperature reduction, removal of air pollutants, and energy effects on buildings.

Temperature reduction. Lower air temperature due to trees and other vegetation can reduce emissions of many temperature-dependent pollutants.

Removal of air pollutants. Plants remove air pollutants by uptake via leaves and by intercepting airborne particles. Pollutants captured by vegetation are often transferred to the soil. While soils and plants will render some pollutants nontoxic, the final destination, form, and impact of the pollutants should be considered.

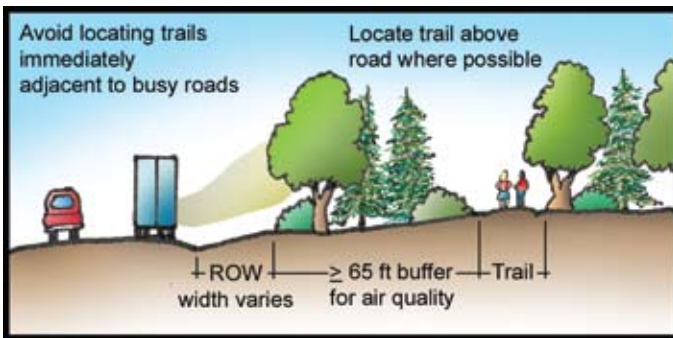
Energy effects on buildings. Trees reduce building energy use, lowering pollutant emissions from power plants.



A 65 to 600 ft wide buffer may reduce particulate pollution by 40 to 75 percent although many factors will affect pollutant removal

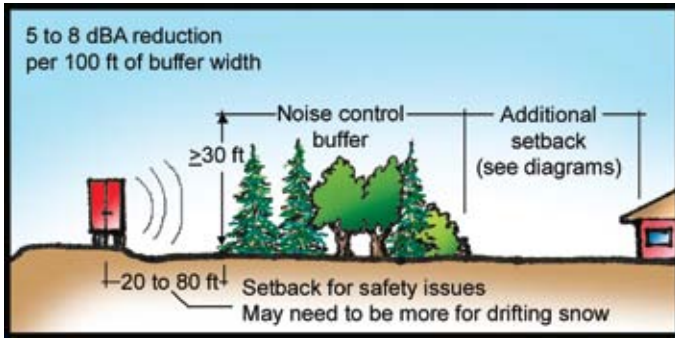
Key design considerations

- Consider meteorological, topographical, and other landscape-scale factors in locating buffers (e.g., timing of pollution, high concentration spots).
- Plant buffers around and close to air pollution sources.
- Moderately dense buffers are best for pollutant removal.
- Use trees, shrubs, and grasses for multi-level trapping.
- Plant buffers in energy conserving locations (see sections 4.7 to 4.8).



Plant selection criteria for air pollutant removal

- Evergreen trees can remove more pollutants; however, many conifer species are sensitive to common pollutants.
- Select plants with dense branching and twig structure.
- Leaves with hairy, resinous, and coarse surfaces capture more particles than smooth leaves. Smaller leaves are generally more efficient collectors than larger leaves.
- Herbaceous species may adsorb more gaseous pollutants.
- Use multiple species to minimize risks with low diversity.
- Use long-lived species that require minimal maintenance.
- Select species with pest and disease resistance.
- Select species suitable for the site (e.g., urban environments often have compacted and droughty soils).



6.4 Buffers for noise control

Buffers can reduce noise from roads and other sources to levels that allow normal outdoor activities to occur. A 100-foot wide planted buffer will reduce noise by 5 to 8 decibels (dBA). Using a barrier in the buffer such as a landform can significantly increase buffer effectiveness (10 to 15 dBA reduction per 100-foot wide buffer with 12-foot high landform).

Guidelines are provided below for roads. Use the diagrams on the adjacent page to estimate a setback distance from a typical 100-foot wide buffer to achieve an acceptable noise level.

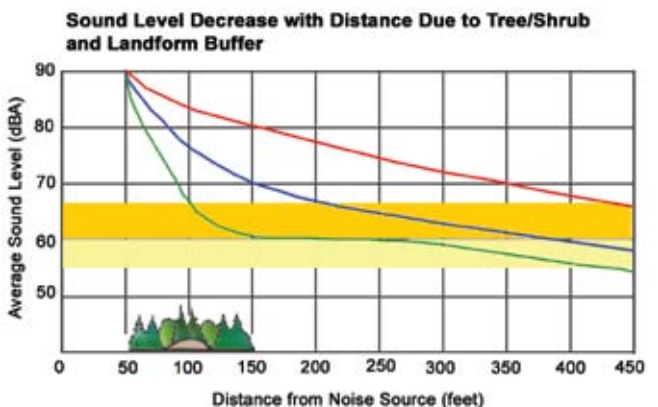
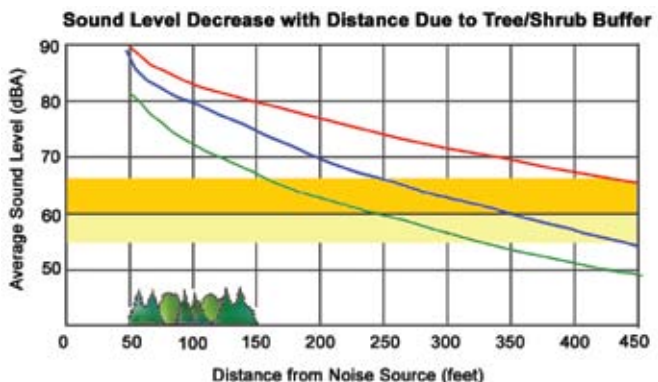
Buffer Guidelines for Noise Reduction Along Roads	
Moderate Speed Road (<40 mph) Plant a 20 to 50-foot wide buffer with the near edge of the buffer within 20 to 50 feet of the center of the nearest traffic lane	High Speed Road (≥40 mph) Plant a 65 to 100-foot wide buffer with the near edge of the buffer within 50 to 80 feet of the center of the nearest traffic lane

Key design considerations

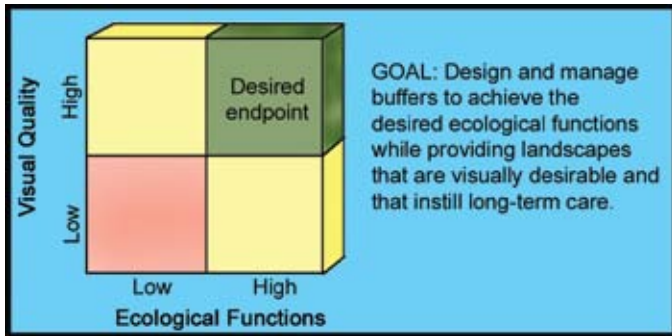
- Locate buffer close to the noise source while providing an appropriate setback for accidents and drifting snow.
- Evergreen species will offer year-round noise control.
- Create a dense buffer with trees and shrubs to prevent gaps.
- Select plants tolerant of air pollution and de-icing methods.
- Natural buffers will be less effective than planted buffers.
- Consider topography and use existing landforms as noise barriers where possible.

Estimating setback distance from noise control buffers

Example: An outdoor recreational site near a highway needs to be located to meet the desired noise levels of 60 to 65 dBA. If a 100-foot wide tree/shrub buffer is used, the site needs to be 100 to 200 feet behind the buffer. The site can be located immediately behind the buffer if a 12-foot high landform is incorporated into the buffer.



- 60 to 65 dBA acceptable noise levels for outdoor conversation
- 55 to 60 dBA acceptable noise levels for daytime residential areas



6.5 Developing an ecological aesthetic

Many people, regardless of background, prefer similar visual elements in the landscape. Some of these include:

Commonly preferred visual elements

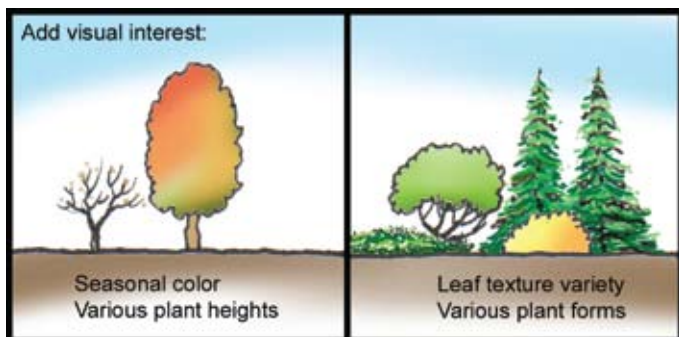
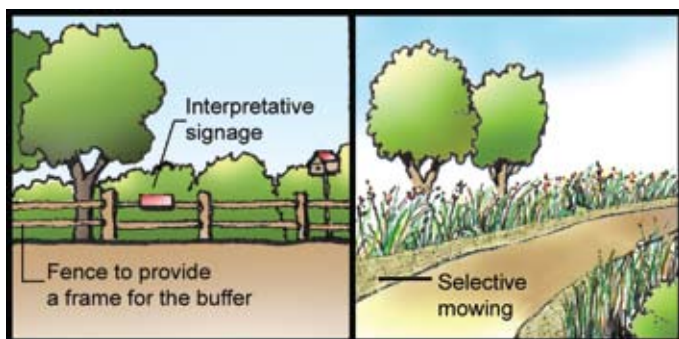
- Waterscapes (e.g., lakes, meandering streams)
- Manicured landscapes
- Savanna or park-like landscapes
- Trees in scale with surrounding features
- Absence of dead and downed wood
- Clean waterways with no or limited woody debris
- Large mature trees and trees with broad canopies
- Spaces defined by edges (e.g., pasture bordered by woods)

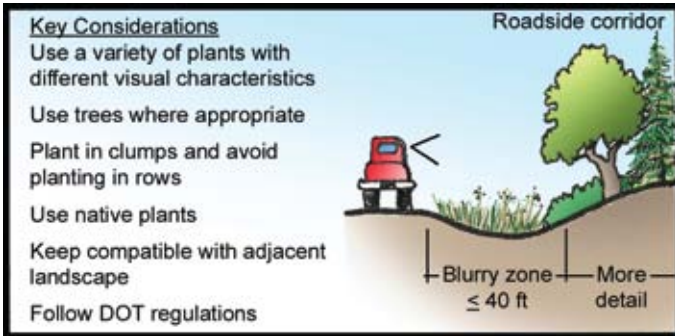
Some of these visual elements are not desirable for achieving goals such as water quality and wildlife habitat. Naturalistic landscapes providing valuable ecological functions are often viewed as untidy and undesirable, while manicured landscapes with limited ecological functions are perceived as demonstrating stewardship and are visually desirable.

The challenge is to design buffers that achieve the desired ecological functions while providing landscapes that are visually desirable and that instill long-term commitment. The next page provides strategies for addressing this challenge.

Strategies for enhancing visual preference of buffers

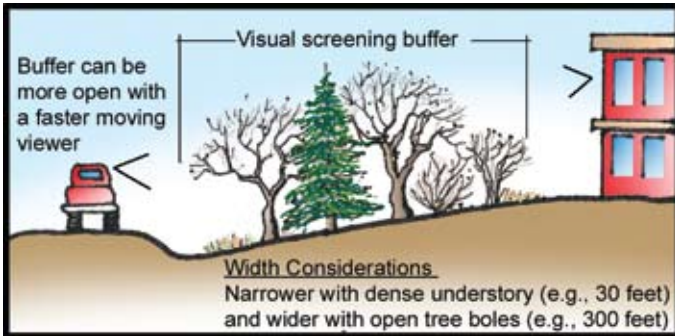
- Design the part of the buffer viewable by the public to be visually pleasing while the interior can be designed to achieve the desired ecological functions.
- Use selective mowing to indicate stewardship without greatly reducing the ecological functions.
- Provide visual frames to contain and provide order around the buffer (e.g., wooden fence).
- Use interpretative signage and education programs to increase awareness and preference.
- Enhance visual interest and diversity by increasing seasonal color and by varying plant heights, textures, and forms.
- Provide simple habitat improvements such as nesting boxes and feeders. Wildlife usually increases visual preference.
- Use bold planting patterns to indicate a designed landscape.





6.6 Attractive roadside corridors

Roadside corridors can be designed and managed to create a pleasant driving environment, save maintenance costs, and reduce driver stress. Create visual interest with plant color, texture, form, and height. At speeds over 40 miles per hour, the area that is > 40 feet from the side of the road will have more detail and will be more important visually. See sections 5.5 to 5.7.



6.7 Buffers for visual screening

Use dense and multi-layered vegetation, particularly shrubs to screen views. Deciduous plants provide 40 percent less screening than evergreens after leaf fall, so evergreens or a wider deciduous buffer may be necessary for screening year-round. Consider vegetation and viewpoint height in design.







7. Outdoor Recreation

Objectives

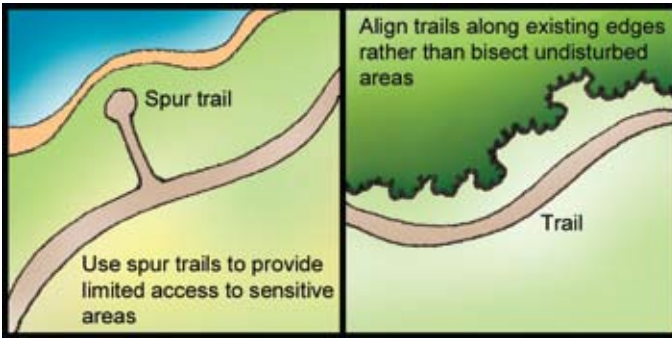
- Promote nature-based recreation
- Use buffers as recreational trails

Buffer functions

1. Increase natural area
2. Protect natural areas
3. Protect soil and plant resources
4. Provide a corridor for movement
5. Enhance recreational experience

Design Guidelines for Outdoor Recreation	Buffer Functions				
	Increase natural area	Protect natural areas	Protect soil and plant resources	Provide a corridor for movement	Enhance recreational experience
7.1 Trail design and wildlife	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7.2 Flight initiation distance buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7.3 Trails along riparian corridors	✓	✓	✓	✓	
7.4 Soil erosion and trail recreation		✓	✓		✓
7.5 Trail user preferences				✓	✓
7.6 Trail layout	✓			✓	✓
7.7 Trail access and usage				✓	✓
7.8 Greenways and public safety					✓

Additional Design Guidelines that may Benefit Outdoor Recreation	Buffer Functions				
	Increase natural area	Protect natural areas	Protect soil and plant resources	Provide a corridor for movement	Enhance recreational experience
1.18 Allowances for bank erosion		✓	✓		
1.22 Vegetation for bank erosion control		✓	✓		
2.1 Matrix primer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.3 Corridors and connectivity	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.8 Buffers and corridors	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.9 Corridor width	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.10 Edge effects of corridors		✓		✓	
2.11 Aquatic habitat and buffers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.13 Roads and wildlife crossings		✓		✓	
3.1 Buffers and cropland management			✓		
3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion	✓		✓	✓	
4.10 Economic impacts of trails				✓	✓
6.4 Buffers for noise control				✓	✓
6.5 Developing an ecological aesthetic				✓	✓
6.7 Buffers for visual screening				✓	✓

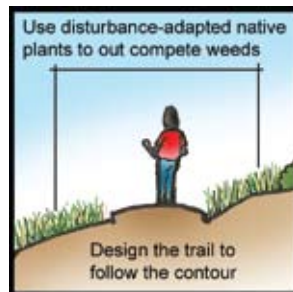


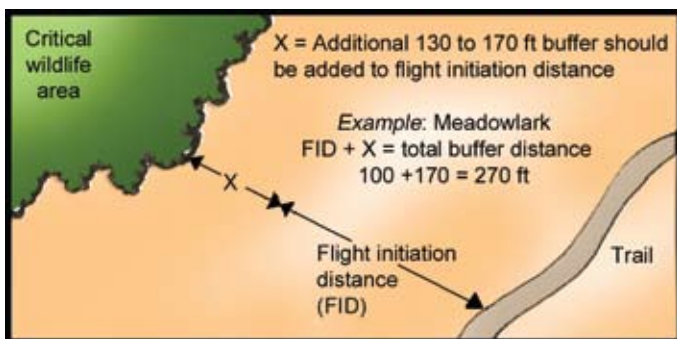
7.1 Trail design and wildlife

Trails can be designed to minimize human disturbance impacts on wildlife. Factors influencing short-term impacts include: type of species and flushing distance, type and intensity of human activity, time of year and time of day, and type of wildlife activity. Consult with wildlife experts for guidance.

Key design considerations

- Align trails along or near existing human-created or natural edges rather than bisecting undisturbed areas (see section 7.3).
- Keep a trail and its zone of influence away from specific areas of known sensitive species.
- Avoid or limit access to critical habitat patches.
- Provide diverse trail experiences so that trail users are less inclined to create trails of their own.
- Use spur trails or dead-end trails to provide access to sensitive areas because these trails have less volume.
- Generally, concentrate activity rather than disperse it.
- Keep trail construction impact as narrow as possible.
- Concentrate weed control at road and trail crossings, trailheads, and riparian areas.
- See section 7.2 for buffers based on flight initiation distance.





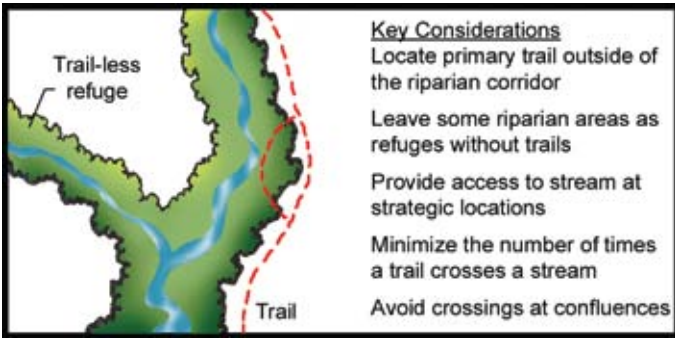
7.2 Flight initiation distance buffers

Fight initiation distance (FID) is the distance at which an animal will start to move away from an approaching threat such as a trail user. FID has been recorded for a variety of species and these distances may serve as general guidelines for establishing buffers from critical wildlife areas (see table 7.2).

These distances are based on being approached by a single person on foot. Groups of people may require wider buffers. Many other factors influence FID and a wildlife biologist should be consulted.

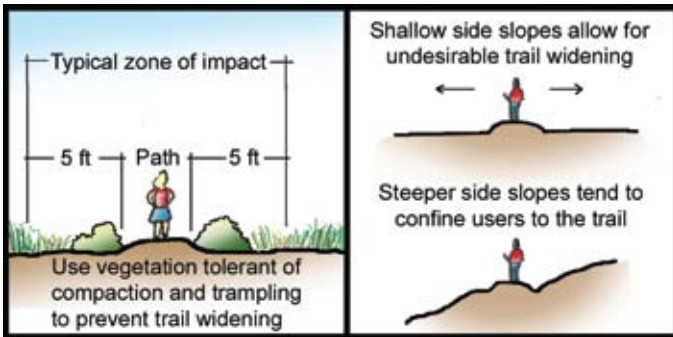
Flight Initiation Distance		Flight Initiation Distance	
Species	Flight Distance (feet)	Species	Flight Distance (feet)
Mule Deer	490 to 820	Golden Plovers	660
Pronghorn	770	Great Blue Heron	660
Elk	280 to 660	Merlin	60 to 600
Bison	330	Prairie Falcon	60 to 600
Golden Eagle	345 to 1280	Great Egret	330
Rough-legged Hawk	175 to 2900	Meadowlark	100
Bald Eagle	165 to 2900	Robin	30

Note that FID is the distance at which the animal begins to evade a threat; an additional setback should be added to the FID to create a buffer that will minimize wildlife disturbance. An additional 130 to 170 feet has been recommended as the additional buffer distance.



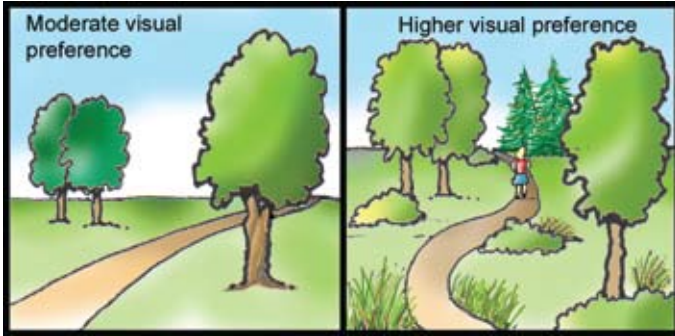
7.3 Trails along riparian corridors

Riparian corridors are critical areas for many ecological functions which can be negatively impacted by poorly designed and managed recreational trails. To minimize impacts and maintenance issues, locate the primary trail to the outside of the riparian corridor and then provide access to the riparian area at strategic points.



7.4 Soil erosion and trail recreation

Reduce soil erosion by locating trails on soils with low erodibility (e.g., coarse-textured, low organic matter, low soil moisture). Design trails to follow the contour. Use waterbars and other measures to route runoff away from trail. Bridge wet soils and avoid steep slopes. Consider using trail surface materials like mulch or crushed gravel to reduce erosion.

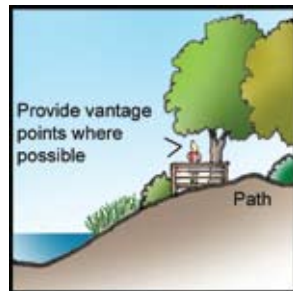


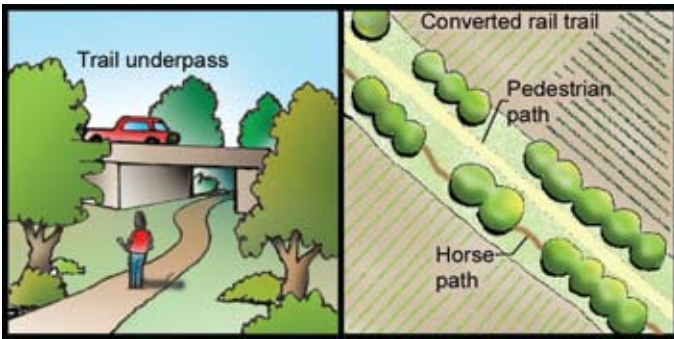
7.5 Trail user preferences

Preference studies have identified attributes that trail users find desirable in greenway trails. These attributes can be used to enhance the recreational experience and increase trail usage.

Key design considerations

- Trails passing through several types of plant communities are generally more preferred.
- Incorporate waterscapes and historical or cultural elements where possible (e.g., old stone walls, canals).
- Trails passing through open areas with few trees or distinct features are less preferred. A mixture of open and enclosed areas is desirable.
- Create a sense of mystery through a curvilinear path alignment.
- Incorporate other preferred visual elements (see section 6.5).
- Provide trails that are connected, accessible to users, and that encourage multiple uses (see sections 7.6 to 7.8).
- Design trails to reduce exposure to noise and air pollution (see sections 6.3 and 6.4).
- Create vantage points where users can view wildlife, other trail users, or interesting features.



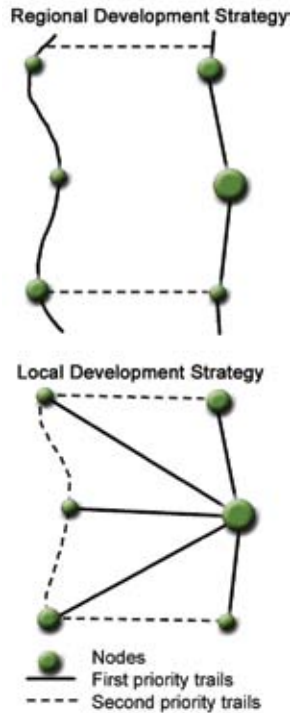


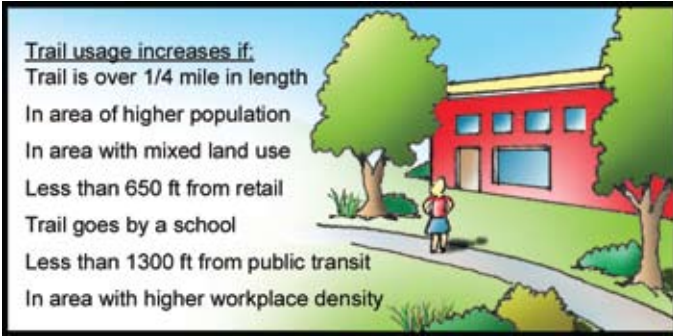
7.6 Trail layout

A connected trail systems offers a more pleasant, safe, and continuous recreational experience than unconnected trails. Design trails to provide safe passage across potential barriers such as roads (e.g., through trail bridges and underpasses). Abandoned railroad lines may be converted to trails, often serving as an important regional trail in an area.

Regional trails are often developed as the backbone of a trail system of which local trails can connect. In urbanized areas, a local development strategy for trails may be a more useful approach than a regional strategy. Local trails can more consistently meet users' everyday needs for recreation, commuting, and access to nature (see diagram).

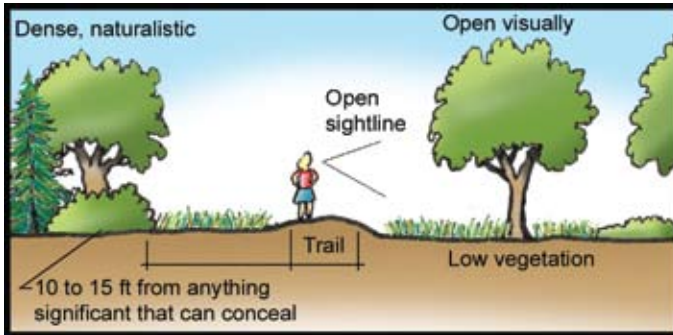
The nodes represent origin-destination points such as parks and places of work. In the regional strategy, regional trails are built first and then secondary connections are made. In the local strategy, a series of local trails are developed first to provide more options for pedestrian use.





7.7 Trail access and usage

As a general guideline for local trails, the target population should be < 5 miles from the trail and 1 mile if the group is an older population. For regional trails, people may be willing to travel 15 or more miles to use a greenway trail. Accommodate multiple modes of travel but consider separating conflicting use (e.g., biking and horseback riding).



7.8 Greenways and public safety

Greenway trails have documented low crime rates compared to other developed land uses. Vegetation can be managed to reduce the perception of fear or crime. Dense, naturalistic vegetation along one side of a trail is not perceived as unsafe as long as the other side is visually open. Provide 100 feet of both forward and rear visibility on trails where possible.



Glossary of Terms

anaerobic: without oxygen.

aquitard: an underground bed or layer of soil, rock, or clay that is too dense to allow easy passage of water.

best management practices (BMPs): structural or nonstructural methods that prevent or reduce the movement of sediment, nutrients, pesticides, and other pollutants from the land to surface or ground water.

bioavailability: the degree to which pollutants in contaminated soil are available for biodegradation.

bole: the trunk of a tree.

buffer: a linear patch. The buffer's linear shape may help the buffer perform certain functions, such as screening undesirable views and increasing habitat connectivity.

buffer area ratio: the ratio of upslope runoff-contributing area to buffer area that the runoff flows into.

carbon sequestration: the removal of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere.

c-factor: the ratio of soil loss from land under a specific crop and management system to soil loss from continuously fallow and tilled land.

concentrated flow: runoff that accumulates or converges into well-defined channels.

connectivity: the ease with which organisms and materials can travel between two points.

conservation tillage: a system of crop production in which the soil is disturbed as little as possible.

corridor: a linear patch. The corridor's linear shape may help the corridor perform certain functions, such as screening undesirable views and increasing habitat connectivity.

denitrification: bacterial reduction of nitrite to gaseous nitrogen under anaerobic conditions.

deposition: the geological process by which material is added to a landform or land mass.

dispersal: the process or result of organisms or particles spreading from one place to another.

ecosystem services: consumable and non-consumable services that an ecosystem provides to humans.

edge effects: the ecological effects that result when two or more habitat types meet at an interface. Edge can occur naturally or artificially, and artificial creation of edge can have negative impacts if it alters ecological processes.

filter strip: strip or area of vegetation used for removing sediment, organic matter, and other pollutants from runoff and wastewater.

Geographic Information System (GIS): a system of hardware and software used for storage, retrieval, mapping, and analysis of geographic data.

groundwater recharge: inflow of water to a groundwater reservoir from the surface.

hydric soil: a soil formed under conditions of saturation or flooding, where these conditions last long enough during the growing season so that anaerobic conditions develop in the upper part of the soil.

karst: an area of irregular limestone in which erosion has produced fissures, sinkholes, underground streams, and caverns.

koc value: a measure of how tightly a pesticide binds or sticks to soil particles. The larger the Koc, the more strongly the pesticide is held to soil organic matter and the less likely it will leach.

impervious cover: any hard surface material such as roof tops, asphalt, or concrete that limits infiltration and induces high runoff rates.

infiltration: the downward entry of water into the soil or other material.

leachate: a liquid that has come in contact with or been released from waste.

mass slope failure: the downslope movement of material on an unstable slope.

matrix: the background within which patches and buffers exist.

migration: the periodic passage of groups of animals from one region to another for feeding or breeding.

parasitism: a relationship between two species of organisms in which one benefits at the expense of the other, without killing it.

patch: a relatively small area that has distinctly different structure and function than the surrounding landscape.

pathogens: microorganisms that can cause disease in other organisms or in humans.

permeability: the ability of a material to allow the passage of a liquid.

phytoremediation: the use of plants to clean up soil and water contaminated with metals, solvents, and other pollutants.

porosity: a measure of the void spaces in a material.

predation: the act of capturing another organism for use as food.

refugia: locations in which species have persisted while becoming extinct elsewhere.

riparian areas: transitional areas between those characterized by terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems. Riparian areas are distinguished by gradients in bio-physical conditions, ecological processes, and biota.

sensitive non-target areas: areas adjacent to chemical spray application areas and considered off-limits to spray drift.

soil cohesion: the ability of a soil to hold itself together.

stepping stones: small patches of habitat that allow for species movement between large patches.

targeting: focusing preservation, conservation, or other management practices on specific portions of the landscape where they will have the greatest benefits.

windthrow: uprooting of trees by wind.

Bentrup, G. 2008. Conservation Buffers—Design guidelines for buffers, corridors, and greenways. Gen. Tech. Rep. SRS-109. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southern Research Station. 110 p.

Over 80 illustrated design guidelines for conservation buffers are synthesized and developed from a review of over 1,400 research publications. Each guideline describes a specific way that a vegetative buffer can be applied to protect soil, improve air and water quality, enhance fish and wildlife habitat, produce economic products, provide recreation opportunities, or beautify the landscape. These science-based guidelines are presented as easy-to-understand rules-of-thumb for facilitating the planning and designing of conservation buffers in rural and urban landscapes. The online version of the guide includes the reference publication list as well as other buffer design resources @ www.bufferguidelines.net.

Keywords: Buffer, conservation planning, conservation practice, corridor, filter strip, greenway, riparian, streamside management zone, windbreak.

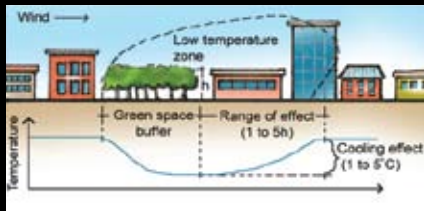


The Forest Service, United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), is dedicated to the principle of multiple use management of the Nation's forest resources for sustained yields of wood, water, forage, wildlife, and recreation.

Through forestry research, cooperation with the States and private forest owners, and management of the National Forests and National Grasslands, it strives—as directed by Congress—to provide increasingly greater service to a growing Nation.

USDA prohibits discrimination in all its programs and activities on the basis of race, color, national origin, age, disability, and where applicable, sex, marital status, familial status, parental status, religion, sexual orientation, genetic information, political beliefs, reprisal, or because all or part of an individual's income is derived from any public assistance program. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (Braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact USDA's TARGET Center at (202) 720-2600 (voice and TDD).

To file a complaint of discrimination, write to USDA, Director, Office of Civil Rights, 1400 Independence Avenue, SW, Washington, D.C. 20250-9410, or call (800) 795-3272 (voice) or (202) 720-6382 (TDD). USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.



National
Agroforestry
Center

a collaborative partnership of



Science You Can Use!

Conservation Buffers: Design Guidelines for Buffers, Corridors, and Greenways

U.S. Forest Service Southern Research Station
General Technical Report SRS-109
September 2008
Gary Bentrup

Literature Cited

1.0 Water Quality

1.1 Buffers and land management

Allan, J.D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: the influence of land use on stream ecosystems. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*. 35: 257-284.

Arheimer, B.; Torstensson, G.; Wittgren, H.B. 2004. Landscape planning to reduce coastal eutrophication: agricultural practices and constructed wetlands. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 67: 205-215.

Basnyat, P.; Teeter, L.D.; Flynn, K.M.; Lockaby, B.G. 1999. Relationships between landscape characteristics and nonpoint source pollution inputs to coastal estuaries. *Environmental Management*. 23: 539-549.

Betson, R.P.; Marius, J.S. 1969. Source areas of storm runoff. *Water Resources Research*. 5: 574-582.

Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.

Dinnes, D.L.; Karlen, D.L.; Jaynes, D.B. [and others]. 2002. Nitrogen management strategies to reduce nitrate leaching in tile-drained Midwestern soils. *Agronomy Journal*. 94: 153-171.

Dunne, T.; Moore, T.R.; Taylor, C.H. 1975. Recognition and prediction of runoff-producing zones in humid regions. *Hydrological Sciences Bulletin*. 20: 305-327.

Forman, R.T.T. 1995. *Land mosaics*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 632 p.

Gburek, W.J.; Drungil, C.C.; Srinivasan, M.S. [and others]. 2002. Variable-source-area controls on phosphorus transport: bridging the gap between research and design. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 534-543.

Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.

Houlahan, J.E.; Findlay, C.S. 2004. Estimating the 'critical' distance at which adjacent land-use degrades wetland water and sediment quality. *Landscape Ecology*. 19: 677-690.

Jørgensen, S.E.; Nielsen, S.N. 1996. Application of ecological engineering principles in agriculture. *Ecological Engineering*. 7: 373-381.

Maas, R.P. Smolen, M.D.; Dressing, S.A. 1985. Selecting critical areas for nonpoint source pollution control. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 40: 68-71.

McGregor, K.C.; Dabney, S.M.; Johnson, J.R. 1999. Runoff and soil loss from cotton plots with and without stiff-grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 42: 361-368.

Mitsch, W.J.; Day, J.W., Jr.; Gilliam, J.W. [and others]. 2001. Reducing nitrogen loading to the Gulf of Mexico from the Mississippi River Basin: strategies to counter a persistent ecological problem. *BioScience*. 51: 373-388.

Norris, V. 1993. The use of buffer zones to protect water quality: a review. *Water Resources Management*. 7: 257-272.

Nowak, P.J.; Cabot, P.E. 2004. The human dimensions of resource management programs. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 59: 128A-135A.

Omernik, J.M.; Abernathy, A.R.; Male, L.M. 1981. Stream nutrient levels and proximity of agricultural and forest land to streams: some relationships. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 36: 227-231.

Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. *Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers*. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private

Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].

Parkyn, S.M.; Davies-Colley, R.J.; Halliday, N.J. [and others]. 2003. Planted riparian buffer zones in New Zealand: do they live up to expectations? *Restoration Ecology*. 11: 436-447.

Roy, A.H.; Freeman, M.C.; Freeman, B.J. [and others]. 2006. Importance of riparian forest in urban catchments contingent on sediment and hydrologic regimes. *Environmental Management*. 37: 523-539.

Vache, K.B.; Eilers, J.M.; Santelmann, M.V. 2002. Water quality modeling of alternative agricultural scenarios in the U.S. Corn Belt. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 38: 773-787.

Verstraeten, G.; Posen, J.; Gillijns, K.; Govers, G. 2006. The use of riparian vegetative filter strips to reduce river sediment loads: an overestimated control measure? *Hydrological Processes*. 20: 4259-4267.

Walter, M.T.; Brooks, M.F.; Walter, M.F. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of soluble phosphorus loading from manure-applied fields under various spreading strategies. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 56: 329-335.

Wang, X.H.; Yin, C.Q.; Shan, B.Q. 2005. The role of diversified landscape buffer structures for water quality improvement in an agricultural watershed, North China. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 107: 381-396.

1.2 Karst landscapes

Barfield, B.J.; Blevins, R.L.; Fogle, A.W. [and others]. 1998. Water quality impacts of natural filter strips in karst areas. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 41: 371-381.

Petersen, A.; Vondracek, B. 2006. Water quality in relation to vegetative buffers around sinkholes in karst terrain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 61: 380-388.

1.3 Frozen soils

Blackburn, W.H.; Pierson, F.B.; Seyfried, M.S. 1990. Spatial and temporal influence of soil frost on infiltration and erosion of sagebrush rangelands. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 26: 991-997.

Gray, D.M.; Toth, B.; Shao, L. [and others]. 2001. Estimating areal snowmelt infiltration into frozen soils. *Hydrological Processes*. 15: 3095-3111.

Kane, D.L.; Stein, J. 1983. Water movement into seasonally frozen soils. *Water Resources Research*. 19: 1547-1557.

Nyberg, L.; Stähli, M.; Mellander, P.; Bishop, K.H. 2001. Soil frost effects on soil water and runoff dynamics along a boreal forest transect: 1. field investigations. *Hydrological Processes*. 15: 909-926.

Shanley, J.B.; Chalmers, A. 1999. The effect of frozen soil on snowmelt runoff at Sleepers River, Vermont. *Hydrological Processes* 13: 1843-1857.

Steinke, K.; Stier, J.C.; Kussow, W.R.; Thompson, A. 2007. Prairie and turf buffer strips for controlling runoff from paved surfaces. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 426-439.

Syversen, N. 2002. Effect of cold-climate buffer zone on minimising diffuse pollution from agriculture. *Water Science and Technology*. 45(9): 69-76.

Zuzel, J.F.; Allmaras, R.R.; Greenwalt, R. 1982. Runoff and soil erosion on frozen soils in northeastern Oregon. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 37: 351-354.

Zuzel, J.F.; Pikul, J.L. 1987. Infiltration into a seasonally frozen agricultural soil. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 42: 447-449.

1.4 Target buffers in watersheds

Agnew, L.J.; Lyon, S.; Marchant, P.G. [and others]. 2006. Identifying hydrologically sensitive areas: bridging the gap between science and application. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 78: 63-76.

Anbumozhi, V.; Radhakrishnan, J.; Yamagi, E. 2005. Impact of riparian buffer zones on water quality and associated management considerations. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 517-523.

Angier, J.T.; McCarty, G.W.; Rice, C.P.; Bialek, K. 2002. Influence of riparian wetland on nitrate and herbicides exported from an agricultural field. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 50: 4424-4429.

- Babcock, B.A.; Lakshminarayan, P.G.; Wu, J.J.; Zilberman, D. 1997. Targeting tools for the purchase of environmental amenities. *Land Economics*. 73: 325-339.
- Baker, M.E.; Wiley, M.J.; Seelbach, P.W. 2001. GIS-based hydrologic modeling of riparian areas: implications for stream water quality. *Journal of American Water Resources*. 37: 1615-1628.
- Bernot, M.J.; Dodds, M.K. 2005. Nitrogen retention, removal, and saturation in lotic ecosystems. *Ecosystems*. 8: 442-453.
- Burkart, M.R.; James, D.E.; Tomer, M.D. 2004. Hydrologic and terrain variables to aid strategic location of riparian buffers. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 59: 216-223.
- Dodds, W.K.; Oakes, R.M. 2006. Controls on nutrients across a prairie stream watershed: land use and riparian cover effects. *Environmental Management*. 37: 634-646.
- Dosskey, M.G.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E. [and others]. 2002. Assessment of concentrated flow through riparian buffers. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 336-343.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E. [and others]. 2003. Hydrologic routing of farm runoff and implications for riparian buffers. In: Williams, J.D.; Kolpin, D., eds. *Agricultural hydrology and water quality: Proceedings of the American Water Resources Association 2003 spring specialty conference*. Middleburg, VA. TPS-03-1. CD-ROM.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Eisenhauer, D.E.; Helmers, M.J. 2005. Establishing conservation buffers using precision information. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 60: 349-354.
- Duda, A.M.; Johnson, R.J. 1985. Cost-effective targeting of agricultural nonpoint-source pollution controls. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 40: 108-111.
- Dunne, T.; Moore, T.R.; Taylor, C.H. 1975. Recognition and prediction of runoff-producing zones in humid regions. *Hydrological Sciences Bulletin*. 20: 305-327.
- Gburek, W.J.; Drungil, C.C.; Srinivasan, M.S. [and others]. 2002. Variable-source-area controls on phosphorus transport: bridging the gap between research and design. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 534-543.
- Hayes, J.C.; Bayfield, B.J.; Barnhisel, R.I. 1984. Performance of grass filters under laboratory and field conditions. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 27: 1321-1331.
- Maas, R.P.; Smolen, M.D.; Dressing, S.A. 1985. Selecting critical areas for nonpoint source pollution control. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 40: 68-71.
- Matteo, M.; Randhir, T.; Bloniarz, D. 2006. Watershed-scale impacts of forest buffers on water quality and runoff in urbanizing environment. *Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management*. 132: 144-152.
- Mitsch, W.J.; Day, J.W., Jr.; Gilliam, J.W. [and others]. 2001. Reducing nitrogen loading to the Gulf of Mexico from the Mississippi River Basin: strategies to counter a persistent ecological problem. *BioScience*. 51: 373-388.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W.. 1993. Numerical approach to the overland flow process in vegetative filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 36: 761-770.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1999. Modeling hydrology and sediment transport in vegetative filter strips. *Journal of Hydrology*. 214: 111-129.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E. 2000. VFSMOD. Version 1.04. User's Guide. Raleigh, NC: North Carolina State University. <http://carpena.ifas.ufl.edu/vfsmo/> [Date accessed; October 17, 2007].
- Parkyn, S.M.; Davies-Colley, R.J.; Halliday, N.J. [and others]. 2003. Planted riparian buffer zones in New Zealand: do they live up to expectations? *Restoration Ecology*. 11: 436-447.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Polyakov, V.; Fares, A.; Ryder, M.H. 2005. Precision riparian buffers for the control of nonpoint source pollutant loading into surface water: a review. *Environmental Review*. 13: 129-144.
- Qui, Z. 2003. A vsa-based strategy for placing conservation buffers in agricultural watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 32: 299-311.

- Qui, Z.; Walter, M.T.; Hall, C. 2007. Managing variable source pollution in agricultural watersheds. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 115-122.
- Ribaudo, M.O. 1989. Targeting the conservation reserve program to maximize water quality benefits. *Land Economics*. 65: 320-332.
- Tollner, E.W.; Barfield, B.J.; Haan, C.T.; Kao, T.Y. 1976. Suspended sediment filtration capacity of simulated vegetation. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 19: 678-682.
- Tomer, M.D.; James, D.E. 2004. Do soil surveys and terrain analysis identify similar priority sites for conservation? *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 68: 1905-1915.
- Tomer, M.D.; James, D.E.; Isenhardt, T.M. 2003. Optimizing the placement of riparian practices in watershed using terrain analysis. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 198-206.
- Vannote, R.L.; Minshall, G.W.; Cummins, K.W. [and others]. 1980. The river continuum concept. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 37: 130-137.
- Walter, M.T.; Walter, M.F.; Brooks, E.S. [and others]. 2000. Hydrologically sensitive areas: variable source area hydrology implications for water quality risk assessment. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 277-284.
- Wigington, P.J.; Moser, T.J.; Lindeman, D.R. 2005. Stream network expansion: a riparian water quality factor. *Hydrological Processes*. 19: 1715-1721.
- Wissmar, R.C.; Beer, W.N.; Timm II, R.K. 2004. Spatially explicit estimates of erosion-risk indices and variable riparian buffer widths in watersheds. *Aquatic Sciences*. 66: 446-455.
- Xiang, W.N. 1996. GIS-based riparian buffer analysis: injecting geographic information into landscape planning. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 34: 1-10.
- Yang, W.; Weersink, A. 2004. Cost-effective targeting of riparian buffers. *Canadian Journal of Agricultural Economics*. 52: 17-34.

1.5 Arrangement near sources

- Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauser, D.E. [and others]. 2002. Assessment of concentrated flow through riparian buffers. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 336-343.
- Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.
- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Schultz, R.C.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Simpkins, W.W.; Colletti, J.P. 2004. Riparian forest buffers in Agroecosystems – lessons learned from the Bear Creek Watershed, central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 35-50.

1.6 Buffer site design

- Barfield, B.J.; Tollner, E.W.; Hayes, J.C. 1979. Filtration of sediment by simulated vegetation I. Steady-state flow with homogeneous sediment. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 540-545, 548.
- Barling, R.D.; Moore, I.D. 1994. Role of buffer strips in management of waterway pollution: a review. *Environmental Management*. 18: 543-558.
- Bharati, L.; Lee, K.-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 2002. Soil-water infiltration under crops, pasture, and established riparian buffer in Midwestern USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 56: 249-257.
- Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.

- Dosskey, M.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauser, D.E.; Franti, T.G.; Hoagland, K.D. 2002. Assessment of concentrated flow through riparian buffers. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 336-343.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D.; Brandle, J.R. 2007. Change in filter strip performance over ten years. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 21-32.
- Lowrance, R.; Sheridan, J.M. 2005. Surface runoff water quality in a managed three zone riparian buffer. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 1851-1859.
- Lowrance, R.; Todd, R.; Fail, J., Jr. [and others]. 1984. Riparian forests as nutrient filters in agricultural watersheds. *BioScience*. 34: 374-377.
- McKergow, L.A.; Prosser, I.P.; Grayson, R.B.; Heiner, D. 2004. Performance of grass and rainforest riparian buffers in the wet tropics, Far North Queensland. 2. water quality. *Australian Journal of Soil Research*. 42: 485-498.
- Muñoz -Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1993. Numerical approach to the overland flow process in vegetative filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 36: 761-770.
- Norris, V. 1993. The use of buffer zones to protect water quality: a review. *Water Resources Management*. 7: 257-272.
- Overcash, M.R.; Bingham, S.C.; Westerman, P.W. 1981. Predicting runoff pollutant reduction in buffer zones adjacent to land treatment sites. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 24: 430-435.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Qui, Z. 2003. A vsa-based strategy for placing conservation buffers in agricultural watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 32: 299-311.
- Schultz, R.C.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Simpkins, W.W.; Colletti, J.P. 2004. Riparian forest buffers in Agroecosystems – lessons learned from the Bear Creek Watershed, central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 35-50.
- Steinke, K.; Stier, J.C.; Kussow, W.R.; Thompson, A. 2007. Prairie and turf buffer strips for controlling runoff from paved surfaces. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 426-439.
- Syversen, N. 2002. Effect of cold-climage buffer zone on mininmising diffuse pollution from agriculture. *Water Science and Technology*. 45(9): 69-76.
- Verchot, L.V.; Franklin, E.C.; Gilliam, J.W. 1997. Nitrogen cycling in Piedmont vegetated filter zones. I. Surface soil processes. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 327-336.
- 1.7 Variable buffer width**
- Baker, M.E.; Weller, D.E.; Jordan, T.E. 2006. Improved methods for quantifying potential nutrient interception by riparian buffers. *Landscape Ecology*. 21: 1327-1345.
- Barfield, B.J.; Blevins, R.L.; Fogle, A.W. [and others]. 1998. Water quality impacts of natural filter strips in karst areas. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 41: 371-381.
- Barfield, B.J.; Tollner, E.W.; Hayes, J.C. 1979. Filtration of sediment by simulated vegetation I. Steady-state flow with homogeneous sediment. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 540-545, 548.
- Bren, L.J. 1998. The geometry of constant buffer-loading design method for humid watersheds. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 110: 113-125.
- Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Rhodes, R.W.; Blevins, R.L. 1995. Soil and fecal coliform trapping by grass filter strips during simulated rain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 50: 405-408.
- Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Villalba, A. [and others]. 1998. Fecal bacteria trapping by grass filter strips during simulated rain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 53: 140-145.
- Daniels, R.B.; Gilliam, J.W. 1996. Sediment and chemical load reduction by grass and riparian filters. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 60: 246-251.
- Dickey, E.C.; Vanderholm, D.H. 1981. Vegetative filter treatment of livestock feedlot runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 10: 279-284.

Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 513-519.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Eisenhauer, D.E.; Helmers, M.J. 2005. Establishing conservation buffers using precision information. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 60: 349-354.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E. [and others]. 2002. Assessment of concentrated flow through riparian buffers. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 336-343.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E. [and others]. 2003. Hydrologic routing of farm runoff and implications for riparian buffers. In: Williams, J.D.; Kolpin, D., eds. *Agricultural hydrology and water quality: Proceedings of the American Water Resources Association 2003 spring specialty conference*. Middleburg, VA. TPS-03-1. CD-ROM.

Haberstock, A.E.; Nichols, H.G.; DesMeules, M.D. [and others]. 2000. Method to identify effective riparian buffer widths for Atlantic salmon habitat protection. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 36: 1271-1286.

Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E.; Dosskey, M.G.G. [and others]. 2005. Flow pathways and sediment trapping in a field-scale vegetative filter. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 48: 955-968.

Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C.; Mickelson, S.K. 2000. Multispecies riparian buffers trap sediment and nutrients during rainfall simulations. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1200-1205.

Magette, W.L.; Brinsfield, R.B.; Palmer, R.E.; Wood, J.D. 1989. Nutrient and sediment removal by vegetated filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 663-667.

McKergow, L.A.; Prosser, I.P.; Grayson, R.B.; Heiner, D. 2004. Performance of grass and rainforest riparian buffers in the wet tropics, Far North Queensland. 2. water quality. *Australian Journal of Soil Research*. 42: 485-498.

Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1999. Modeling hydrology and sediment transport in vegetative filter strips. *Journal of Hydrology*. 214: 111-129.

Patty, L.; Réal, B.; Gril, J. 1997. The use of grassed buffer strips to remove pesticides, nitrate and soluble phosphorus compounds from runoff water. *Pesticide Science* 49: 243-251.

Schmitt, T.J.; Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D. 1999. Filter strip performance and processes for different vegetation widths and contaminants. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 1479-1489.

Tingle, C.H.; Shaw, D.R.; Boyette, M.; Murphy, G.P. 1998. Metolachlor and metribuzin losses in runoff as affected by width of vegetative filter strips. *Weed Science*. 46: 475-479.

1.8 Effective buffer area ratio

Arora, K.; Mickelson, S.K.; Baker, J.L. [and others]. 1996. Herbicide retention by vegetative buffer strips from runoff under natural rainfall. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2155-216

Barfield, B.J., E.W. Tollner, and J.C. Hayes. 1979. Filtration of sediment by simulated vegetation I. Steady-state flow with homogeneous sediment. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 540-545, 548.

Bren, L.J. 1998. The geometry of constant buffer-loading design method for humid watersheds. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 110: 113-125.

Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Rhodes, R.W.; Blevins, R.L. 1995. Soil and fecal coliform trapping by grass filter strips during simulated rain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 50: 405-408.

Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Villalba, A. [and others]. 1998. Fecal bacteria trapping by grass filter strips during simulated rain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 53: 140-145.

Daniels, R.B.; Gilliam, J.W. 1996. Sediment and chemical load reduction by grass and riparian filters. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 60: 246-251.

Dickey, E.C.; Vanderholm, D.H. 1981. Vegetative filter treatment of livestock feedlot runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 10: 279-284.

Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers* 32: 513-519.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Eisenhauer, D.E.; Helmers, M.J. 2005. Establishing conservation buffers using precision information. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 60: 349-354.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauser, D.E. [and others]. 2002. Assessment of concentrated flow through riparian buffers. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 336-343.

Helmets, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E.; Dosskey, M.G.G. [and others]. 2005. Flow pathways and sediment trapping in a field-scale vegetative filter. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 48: 955-968.

Hubbard, R.K.; Newton, G.L.; Davis, J.G. [and others]. 1998. Nitrogen assimilation by riparian buffer systems receiving swine lagoon wastewater. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 41: 1295-1304.

Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C.; Mickelson, S.K. 2000. Multispecies riparian buffers trap sediment and nutrients during rainfall simulations. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1200-1205.

Magette, W.L.; Brinsfield, R.B.; Palmer, R.E.; Wood, J.D. 1989. Nutrient and sediment removal by vegetated filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 663-667.

Mander, Ü.; Kuusemets, V.; Löhums, K.; Muring, T. 1997. Efficiency and dimensioning of riparian buffer zones in agricultural catchments. *Ecological Engineering*. 8: 299-324.

McKergow, L.A.; Prosser, I.P.; Grayson, R.B.; Heiner, D. 2004. Performance of grass and rainforest riparian buffers in the wet tropics, Far North Queensland. 2. water quality. *Australian Journal of Soil Research*. 42: 485-498.

Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1999. Modeling hydrology and sediment transport in vegetative filter strips. *Journal of Hydrology*. 214: 111-129.

Overcash, M.R.; Bingham, S.C.; Westerman, P.W. 1981. Predicting runoff pollutant reduction in buffer zones adjacent to land treatment sites. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 24: 430-435.

Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.

Syversen, N. 2002. Effect of cold-climate buffer zone on minimizing diffuse pollution from agriculture. *Water Science and Technology*. 45(9): 69-76.

1.9 Slope and soil type adjustments

Berglund, E.R.; Ahyoud, A.; Tayaa, M. 1981. Comparison of soil and infiltration properties of range and afforested sites in Northern Morocco. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 3: 295-306.

Bharati, L.; Lee, K.-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 2002. Soil-water infiltration under crops, pasture, and established riparian buffer in Midwestern USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 56: 249-257.

Dickey, E.C.; Vanderholm, D.H. 1981. Vegetative filter treatment of livestock feedlot runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 10: 279-284.

Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 513-519.

Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrad, J.H.; Lee, D. [and others]. 1988. Evaluation of vegetative filter strips as best management practices for feed lots. *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation*. 60: 1231-1238.

Dosskey, M.G.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D.; Brandle, J.R. 2007. Change in filter strip performance over ten years. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 21-32.

Elderidge, D.J.; Freudenberger, D. 2005. Ecosystem wicks: woodland trees enhance water infiltration in a fragmented agricultural landscape in eastern Australia. *Austral Ecology*. 30: 336-347.

Lado, M.; Paz, A.; Ben-Hur, M. 2004. Organic matter and aggregate size interactions in infiltration, seal formation, and soil loss. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 68: 935-942.

Mazurak, A.P.; Kriz, W.; Ramig, R.E. 1960. Rates of water entry into a Chernozem soil as affected by age of perennial grass sods. *Agronomy Journal*. 52: 35-37.

Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1993. Numerical approach to the overland flow process in vegetative filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 36: 761-770.

Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1999. Modeling hydrology and sediment transport in vegetative filter strips. *Journal of Hydrology*. 214: 111-129.

Overcash, M.R.; Bingham, S.C.; Westerman, P.W. 1981. Predicting runoff pollutant reduction in buffer zones adjacent to land treatment sites. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 24: 430-435.

Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.

Parr, J.F.; Bertrand, A.R. 1960. Water infiltration into soils. *Advances in Agronomy*. 12: 311-363.

Pietola, L.; Horn, R.; Yli-Halla, M. 2005. Effects of trampling by cattle on the hydraulic and mechanical properties of soil. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 82: 99-108.

Pluhar, J.J.; Knight, R.W.; Heitschmidt, R.K. 1987. Infiltration rates and sediment production as influenced by grazing systems in the Texas Rolling Plains. *Journal of Range Management*. 40: 240-243.

Robinson, C.A.; Ghaffarzadeh, M.; Cruse, R.M. 1996. Vegetative filter strip effects on sediment concentration in cropland runoff. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 51: 227-230.

Schultz, R.C.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Simpkins, W.W.; Colletti, J.P. 2004. Riparian forest buffers in Agroecosystems – lessons learned from the Bear Creek Watershed, central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 35-50.

Seobi, T.; Anderson, S.H.; Udawatta, R.P.; Gantzer, C.J. 2005. Influence of grass and agroforestry buffer strips on soil hydraulic properties for an Albaqualf. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 69: 893-901.

Thompson, J.R. 1968. Effect of grazing on infiltration in a western watershed. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 23: 63-65.

Tromble, J.M.; Renard, K.G.; Thatcher, A.P. 1974. Infiltration for three rangeland soil-vegetation complexes. *Journal of Range Management*. 27: 318-321.

Verchot, L.V.; Franklin, E.C.; Gilliam, J.W. 1997. Nitrogen cycling in Piedmont vegetated filter zones. I. Surface soil processes. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 327-336.

Zachmann, J.E.; Linden, D.R.; Clapp, C.E. 1987. Macroporous infiltration and redistribution as affected by earthworm, tillage, and residue. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 51: 1580-1586.

1.10 Buffers for sediment

Barfield, B.J.; Tollner, E.W.; Hayes, J.C. 1979. Filtration of sediment by simulated vegetation I. Steady-state flow with homogeneous sediment. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 540-545, 548.

Barling, R.D.; Moore, I.D. 1994. Role of buffer strips in management of waterway pollution: a review. *Environmental Management*. 18: 543-558.

Borin, M.; Vianello, M.; Morari, F.; Zanin, G. 2005. Effectiveness of buffer strips in removing pollutants in runoff from a cultivated field in north-east Italy. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 105: 101-114.

Clinton, B.D.; Vose, J.M. 2006. Variation in stream water quality in an urban headwater stream in the southern Appalachians. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 331-353.

Cooper, J.R.; Gilliam, J.W.; Daniels, R.B.; Robarge, W.P. 1987. Riparian areas as filters for agricultural sediment. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 51: 416-420.

Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Rhodes, R.W.; Blevins, R.L. 1995. Soil and fecal coliform trapping by grass filter strips during simulated rain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 50: 405-408.

Dabney, S.M.; Meyer, L.D.; Harmon, W.C. [and others]. 1995. Depositional patterns of sediment trapped by grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 38: 1719-1729.

Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.

Daniels, R.B.; Gilliam, J.W. 1996. Sediment and chemical load reduction by grass and riparian filters. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 60: 246-251.

Dillaha, T.A.; Inamdar, S.P. 1997. Buffer zones as sediment traps or sources. In: Haycock, N.E.; Burt, T.P.; Goulding, K.W.T.; Pinay, G., eds. *Buffer zones: their processes and potential in water protection*. Hartfordshire, UK: Quest Environmental. 33-42.

Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 513-519.

Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrard, J.H.; Lee, D. [and others]. 1988. Evaluation of vegetative filter strips as best management practices for feed lots. *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation*. 60: 1231-1238.

Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrard, J.H.; Lee, D. 1989. Long-term effectiveness and maintenance of vegetative filter strips. *Water Environment and Technology*. 1: 418-421.

Dosskey, M.G.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.

Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D.; Brandle, J.R. 2007. Change in filter strip performance over ten years. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 21-32.

Ghadiri, H.; Rose, C.W.; Hogarth, W.L. 2001. The influence of grass and porous barrier strips on runoff hydrology and sediment transport. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 44: 259-268.

Gilley, J.E.; Eghball, B.; Kramer, L.A.; Moorman, T.B. 2000. Narrow grass hedge effects on runoff and soil loss. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 190-196.

Gilliam, J.W. 1994. Riparian wetlands and water quality. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 23: 896-900.

Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.

Hayes, J.C.; Bayfield, B.J.; Barnhisel, R.I. 1984. Performance of grass filters under laboratory and field conditions. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 27: 1321-1331.

Jordan, T.E.; Correll, D.L.; Weller, D.E. 1993. Nutrient interception by a riparian forest receiving inputs from adjacent cropland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 22: 467-473.

Kronvang, B.; Laubel, A.; Larsen, S.E. [and others]. 2005. Buffer zones as sink for sediment and phosphorus between the field and stream: Danish field experiences. *Water Science and Technology*. 51(3-4): 55-62.

Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C.; Mickelson, S.K. 1999. Nutrient and sediment removal by switchgrass and cool-season grass filter strips in Central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 121-132.

Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C.; Mickelson, S.K. 2000. Multispecies riparian buffers trap sediment and nutrients during rainfall simulations. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 29:1200-1205.

Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 2003. Sediment and nutrient removal in an established multi-species riparian buffer. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 1-8.

Lowrance, R.R.; Altier, L.S.; Dewbold, J.D. [and others]. 1997. Water quality functions of riparian forest buffers in Chesapeake Bay watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 21: 687-712.

Lowrance, R.; Sharpe, J.K.; Sheridan, J.M. 1986. Long term sediment deposition in the riparian zone of a coastal plain watershed. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 41: 266-271.

Lowrance, R.; Sheridan, J.M. 2005. Surface runoff water quality in a managed three zone riparian buffer. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 1851-1859.

Lowrance, R.; Williams, R.G.; Inamdar, S.P. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of coastal plain conservation buffers using the riparian ecosystem management model. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1445-1456.

Magette, W.L.; Brinsfield, R.B.; Palmer, R.E.; Wood, J.D. 1989. Nutrient and sediment removal by vegetated filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 663-667.

Mander, Ü.; Kuusemets, V.; Löhms, K.; Mairing, T. 1997. Efficiency and dimensioning of riparian buffer zones in agricultural catchments. *Ecological Engineering*. 8: 299-324.

McGregor, K.C.; Dabney, S.M.; Johnson, J.R. 1999. Runoff and soil loss from cotton plots with and without stiff-grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 42: 361-368.

McKergow, L.A.; Weaver, D.M.; Prosser, I.M. [and others]. 2003. Before and after riparian management: sediment and nutrient exports from a small agricultural catchment, western Australia. *Journal of Hydrology*. 270: 253-272.

Meyer, L.D.; Dabney, S.M.; Harmon, W.C. 1995. Sediment-trapping effectiveness of stiff-grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 38: 809-815.

- Mickelson, S.K.; Baker, J.L.; Ahmed, S.I. 2003. Vegetative filter strips for reducing atrazine and sediment runoff transport. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 359-367.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1993. Numerical approach to the overland flow process in vegetative filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 36: 761-770.
- Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.
- Overcash, M.R.; Bingham, S.C.; Westerman, P.W. 1981. Predicting runoff pollutant reduction in buffer zones adjacent to land treatment sites. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 24: 430-435.
- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W.; Muñoz-Carpena, R.M. [and others]. 1994. Nutrient and sediment removal by grass and riparian buffers. In: Campbell, K.L.; Graham, W.D.; Bottcher, A.B., eds. *Environmentally sound agriculture: proceedings of the 2nd annual conference*. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 147-154.
- Pearce, R.A.; Trlica, M.J.; Leininger, W.C. [and others]. 1997. Efficiency of grass buffer strips and vegetation height on sediment filtration in laboratory rainfall simulations. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 139-144.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Raffaelle, J.B., Jr.; McGregor, K.C.; Foster, G.R.; Cullum, R.F. 1997. Effect of narrow grass strips on conservation reserve land converted to cropland. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 40: 1581-1587.
- Robinson, C.A.; Ghaffarzadeh, M.; Cruse, R.M. 1996. Vegetative filter strip effects on sediment concentration in cropland runoff. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 51: 227-230.
- Schmitt, T.J.; Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D. 1999. Filter strip performance and processes for different vegetation widths and contaminants. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 1479-1489.
- Schoonover, J.E.; Williard, K.W.J.; Zaczek, J.J. [and others]. 2006. Agricultural sediment reductions by giant cane and forest riparian buffers. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 303-315.
- Srivastava, P., Edwards, D.R.; Daniel, T.C. [and others]. 1996. Performance of vegetative filter strips with varying pollutant source and filter strip lengths. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2231-2239.
- Syversen, N. 2002. Effect of cold-climate buffer zone on minimising diffuse pollution from agriculture. *Water Science and Technology*. 45(9): 69-76.
- Syversen, N. 2005. Effect and design of buffer zones in the Nordic climate: the influence of width, amount of surface runoff, season variation and vegetation type on retention efficiency for nutrient and particle runoff. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 483-490.
- Syversen, N.; Borch, H. 2005. Retention of soil particle fractions and phosphorus in cold-climate buffer zones. *Ecological Engineering*. 25: 382-394.
- Tollner, E.W.; Barfield, B.J.; Haan, C.T.; Kao, T.Y. 1976. Suspended sediment filtration capacity of simulated vegetation. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 19: 678-682.
- Tomer, M.D.; Moorman, T.B.; Kovar, J.L. [and others]. 2007. Spatial patterns of sediment and phosphorus in a riparian buffer in western Iowa. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 329-338.
- Van Dijk, P.M.; Kwaad, F.P.J.M.; Klapwijk, M. 1996. Retention of water and sediment by grass strips. *Hydrological Processes*. 10: 1069-1080.
- Verstraeten, G.; Posen, J.; Gillijns, K.; Govers, G. 2006. The use of riparian vegetative filter strips to reduce river sediment loads: an overestimated control measure? *Hydrological Processes*. 20: 4259-4267.
- Vought, L.B.; Pinay, G.; Fuglsang, A.; Ruffinoni, C. 1995. Structure and function of buffer strips from a water quality perspective in agricultural landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 323-331.

- Wenger, S. 1999. A review of the scientific literature on riparian buffer width, extent, and vegetation. Athens, GA: University of Georgia, Institute of Ecology, Office of Public Service and Outreach. 59 p. http://www.rivercenter.uga.edu/service/tools/buffers/buffer_lit_review.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Wilson, L.G. 1967. Sediment removal from flood water by grass filtration. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 10: 35-37.
- Wissmar, R.C.; Beer, W.N.; Timm II, R.K. 2004. Spatially explicit estimates of erosion-risk indices and variable riparian buffer widths in watersheds. Aquatic Sciences. 66: 446-455.
- 1.11 Buffers for pathogens**
- Atwill, E.R.; Hou, L.; Karle, B.M. [and others]. 2002. Transport of *Cryptosporidium parvum* Oocysts through vegetated buffer strips and estimated filtration efficiency. Applied and Environmental Microbiology. 68: 5517-5527.
- Chaubey, I.; Edwards, D.R.; Daniel, T.C. [and others]. 1994. Effectiveness of vegetative filter strips in retaining surface-applied swine manure constituents. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 37: 845-850.
- Chaubey, I.; Edwards, D.R.; Daniel, T.C. [and others]. 1995. Effectiveness of vegetative filter strips in controlling losses of surface-applied poultry litter constituents. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 38: 1687-1692.
- Clinton, B.D.; Vose, J.M. 2006. Variation in stream water quality in an urban headwater stream in the southern Appalachians. Water, Air, and Soil Pollution. 169: 331-353.
- Collins, R.; Dennison, A.; Ross, C.; McLeod, M. 2004. Attenuation of effluent-derived faecal microbes in grass buffer strips. New Zealand Journal of Agricultural Research. 47: 565-574.
- Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Rhodes, R.W.; Blevins, R.L. 1995. Soil and fecal coliform trapping by grass filter strips during simulated rain. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation. 50: 405-408.
- Coyne, M.S.; Gilfillen, R.A.; Villalba, A. [and others]. 1998. Fecal bacteria trapping y grass filter strips during simulated rain. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation. 53: 140-145.
- Dickey, E.C.; Vanderholm, D.H. 1981. Vegetative filter treatment of livestock feedlot runoff. Journal of Environmental Quality. 10: 279-284.
- Doyle, R.C.; Stanton, G.C.; Wolfe, D.C. 1977. Effectiveness of forest and grass buffer filters in improving the water quality of manure-polluted runoff. ASAE Paper No. 77-2501. St. Joseph, MO: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.
- Entry, J.A.; Hubbard, R.K.; Thies, J.E.; Fuhrmann, J.J. 2000. The influence of vegetation in riparian filterstrips on coliform bacteria: I movement and survival in water. Journal of Environmental Quality. 29: 1206-1214.
- Entry, J.A.; Hubbard, R.K.; Thies, J.E.; Fuhrmann, J.J. 2000. The influence of vegetation in riparian filterstrips on coliform bacteria: survival in soils. Journal of Environmental Quality. 29: 1215-1224.
- Fajardo, J.J.; Bauder, J.W.; Cash, S.D. 2001. Managing nitrate and bacteria in runoff from livestock confinement areas with vegetative filter strips. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation. 56: 185-191.
- Hay, V.; Pittroff, W.; Tooman, E.E.; Meyer, D. 2006. Effectiveness of vegetative filter strips in attenuating nutrient and sediment runoff from irrigated pastures. The Journal of Agricultural Science. 144: 349-360.
- Koelsch, R.K.; Lorimor, J.C.; Mankin, K.R. 2006. Vegetative treatment systems for management of open lot runoff: review of literature. Applied Engineering in Agriculture. 22: 141-153.
- Lim, T.T.; Edwards, D.R.; Workman, S.R. [and others]. 1998. Vegetated filter strip removal of cattle manure constituents in runoff. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 41: 1375-1381.
- Mankins, K.R.; Barnes, P.L.; Harner, J.P. [and others]. 2006. Field evaluation of vegetative filter effectiveness and runoff quality from unstocked feedlots. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation. 61: 209-217.
- Muirhead, R.W.; Collins, R.P.; Bremer, P.J. 2006. The association of E-coli and soil particles in overland flow. Water Science and Technology. 54(3): 153-159.
- Pachepsky, Y.A.; Sadeghi, A.M.; Bradford, S.A. [and others]. 2006. Transport and fate of manure-borne pathogens: modeling perspective. Agricultural Water Management. 86: 81-92.
- Rosen, B. H.; Croft, R.; Atwill, E.R. [and others]. 2000. Waterborne pathogens in agricultural watersheds. Washington, DC: Natural Resources Conservation Service, Watershed Science Institute. 64 p. ftp://ftp-fc.sc.egov.usda.gov/WSI/pdf/Pathogens_in_Agricultural_Watersheds.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].

- Schellinger, G.R.; Clausen, J.C. 1992. Vegetative filter treatment of dairy barnyard runoff in cold regions. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 40-45.
- Srivastava, P.; Edwards, D.R.; Daniel, T.C. [and others]. 1996. Performance of vegetative filter strips with varying pollutant source and filter strip lengths. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2231-2239.
- Stout, W.L.; Pachepsky, Y.A.; Shelton, D.R. [and others]. 2005. Runoff transport of faecal coliforms and phosphorus released from manure in grass buffer conditions. *Letters in Applied Microbiology*. 41: 230-234.
- Tate, K.W.; Atwill, E.R.; Bartolome, J.W.; Nader, G. 2006. Significant *Escherichia coli* attenuation by vegetative buffers on annual grasslands. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 35: 795-805.
- Tate, K.W.; Pereira, M.D.G.C.; Atwill, E.R. 2004. Efficacy of vegetated buffer strips for retaining *Cryptosporidium parvum*. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 33: 2243-2251.
- Trask, J.R.; Kalita, P.; Kuhlenschmidt, M.S. [and others]. 2004. Overland and near-surface transport of *Cryptosporidium parvum* from vegetated and nonvegetated surfaces. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 33: 984-993.
- Tyrrel, S.F.; Quinton, J.N. 2003. Overland flow transport of pathogens from agricultural land receiving faecal wastes. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*. 94: 87S-93S.
- Vanderholm, D.H.; Dickey, E.C. 1980. Design of vegetative filters for feedlot runoff treatment in humid areas. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 23: 681-684, 687.
- Walker, S.E.; Mostaghimi, S.; Dillaha, T.A.; Woeste, F.E. 1990. Modeling animal waste management practices: impacts on bacteria levels in runoff from agricultural lands. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 33: 807-817.
- Young, R.A.; Huntrods, T.; Anderson, W. 1980. Effectiveness of vegetated buffer strips in controlling pollution from feedlot runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 9: 483-487.
- Younos, T.M.; Mendez, A.; Collins, E.R.; Ross, B.B. 1998. Effects of a dairy loafing lot-buffer strip on stream water quality. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 34: 1061-1069.

1.12 Buffers for nitrogen

- Angier, J.T.; McCarty, G.W.; Rice, C.P.; Bialek, K. 2002. Influence of riparian wetland on nitrate and herbicides exported from an agricultural field. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 50: 4424-4429.
- Ambus, P.; Lowrance, R. 1991. Comparison of denitrification in two riparian soils. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 55: 994-997.
- Ashby, J.A.; Bowden, W.B.; Murdoch, P.S. 1998. Controls on denitrification in riparian soils in headwater catchments of a hardwood forest in the Catskill Mountains, USA. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 30: 853-864.
- Barling, R.D.; Moore, I.D. 1994. Role of buffer strips in management of waterway pollution: a review. *Environmental Management*. 18: 543-558.
- Bernot, M.J.; Dodds, W.K. 2005. Nitrogen retention, removal, and saturation in lotic ecosystems. *Ecosystems*. 8: 442-453.
- Borin, M.; Bigon, E. 2002. Abatement of NO₃-N concentration in agricultural waters by narrow buffer strips. *Environmental Pollution*. 117: 165-168.
- Borin, M.; Vianello, M.; Morari, F.; Zanin, G. 2005. Effectiveness of buffer strips in removing pollutants in runoff from a cultivated field in North-East Italy. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 105: 101-114.
- Burns, D.A.; Nguyen, L. 2002. Nitrate movement and removal along a shallow groundwater flow path in a riparian wetland within a sheep-grazed pastoral catchment: results of a tracer study. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*. 36: 371-385.
- Burt, T.P.; Matchett, L.S.; Goulding, K.W.T. [and others]. 1999. Denitrification in riparian buffer zones: the role of floodplain hydrology. *Hydrological Processes*. 13: 1451-1463.
- Cey, E.E.; Rudolph, D.L.; Aravena, R.; Parkin, G. 1999. Role of riparian zone in controlling the distribution and fate of agricultural nitrogen near a small stream in southern Ontario. *Journal of Contaminant Hydrology*. 37: 45-67.
- Cirno, C.P.; McDonnell, J.J. 1997. Linking hydrologic and biogeochemical controls of nitrogen transport in near-stream zones of temperate-forested catchments: a review. *Journal of Hydrology*. 199: 88-120.

- Clausen, J.C.; Guillard, K.; Sigmund, C.M.; Martin Dors, K. 2000. Water quality changes from riparian buffer restoration in Connecticut. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1751-1761.
- Clinton, B.D.; Vose, J.M. 2006. Variation in stream water quality in an urban headwater stream in the southern Appalachians. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 331-353.
- Cole, J.T.; Baird, J.H.; Basta, N.T. [and others]. 1997. Influence of buffers on pesticide and nutrient runoff from bermudagrass turf. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 1589-1598.
- Cooper, A.B. 1990. Nitrate depletion in the riparian zone and stream channel of a small headwater catchment. *Hydrobiologia*. 202: 13-26.
- Corley, C.J.; Frasier, G.W.; Trlica, M.J. [and others]. 1999. Technical note: nitrogen and phosphorus in runoff from 2 montane riparian communities. *Journal of Range Management*. 52: 600-605.
- Correll, D.L. 2005. Principles of planning and establishment of buffer zones. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 433-439.
- Cors, M.; Tychon, B. 2007. Grassed buffer strips as nitrate diffuse pollution remediation tools: management impact on the denitrification enzyme activity. *Water Science and Technology*. 55(3): 25-30.
- Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.
- Daniels, R.B.; Gilliam, J.W. 1996. Sediment and chemical load reduction by grass and riparian filters. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 60: 246-251.
- Devito, K.J.; Fitzgerald, D.; Hill, A.R.; Aravena, R. 2000. Nitrate dynamics in relation to lithology and hydrologic flow path in a river riparian zone. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1075-1084.
- Di, H.J.; Cameron, K.C. 2002. Nitrate leaching in temperate agroecosystems: sources, factors and mitigating strategies. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*. 46: 237-256.
- Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrad, J.H.; Lee, D. [and others]. 1988. Evaluation of vegetative filter strips as best management practices for feed lots. *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation*. 60: 1231-1238.
- Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 513-519.
- Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrard, J.H.; Lee, D. 1989. Long-term effectiveness and maintenance of vegetative filter strips. *Water Environment and Technology*. 1: 418-421.
- Dosskey, M.G.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D.; Brandle, J.R. 2007. Change in filter strip performance over ten years. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 21-32.
- Fennessy, M.S.; Cronk, J.K. 1997. The effectiveness and restoration potential of riparian ecotones for the management of nonpoint source pollution, particularly nitrate. *Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology*. 27: 285-317.
- Gilliam, J.W. 1994. Riparian wetlands and water quality. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 23: 896-900.
- Gilliam, J.W.; Parsons, J.E.; Mikkelsen, R.L. 1997. Nitrogen dynamics and buffer zones. In: Haycock, N.E.; Burt, T.P.; Goulding, K.W.T.; Pinay, G., eds. *Buffer zones: their processes and potential in water protection*. Hartfordshire, UK: Quest Environmental. 54-61.
- Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.F.; Addy, K. [and others]. 2001. Landscape attributes as controls on ground water nitrate removal capacity of riparian zones. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1457-1464.
- Gold, A.J.; Jacinthe, P.A.; Groffman, P.M. [and others]. 1998. Patchiness in groundwater nitrate removal in a riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 27: 146-155.
- Groffman, P.M.; Axelrod, E.A.; Lemunyon, J.L.; Sullivan, M. 1991. Denitrification in grass and forest vegetated filter strips. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 20: 671-674.
- Groffman, P.M.; Crawford, M.K. 2003. Denitrification potential in urban riparian zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 1144-1149.
- Groffman, P.M.; Gold, A.J.; Simmons, R.C. 1992. Nitrate dynamics in riparian forests: microbial studies. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 666-671.

- Groffman, P.M.; Tiedje, J.M. 1989. Denitrification in north temperate forest soils: relationships between denitrification and environmental factors at the landscape scale. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 21: 621-626.
- Groffman, P.M.; Tiedje, J.M. 1989. Denitrification in north temperate forest soils: spatial and temporal patterns at the landscape and seasonal scales. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 21: 613-620.
- Hanson, G.C.; Groffman, P.M.; Gold, A.J. 1994. Symptoms of nitrogen saturation in a riparian wetland. *Ecological Applications*. 4: 750-756.
- Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.
- Haycock, N.E.; Pinay, G. 1993. Groundwater nitrate dynamics in grass and poplar vegetated riparian buffer strips during the winter. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 22: 273-278.
- Hefting, M.M.; Bobink, R.; de Caluwe, H. 2003. Nitrous oxide emission and denitrification in chronically nitrate-loaded riparian buffer zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 1194-1203.
- Hefting, M.M.; Clement, J-C.; Bienkowski, P. [and others]. 2005. The role of vegetation and litter in the nitrogen dynamics of riparian buffer zones in Europe. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 465-482.
- Hefting, M.M.; de Klein, J.J.M. 1998. Nitrogen removal in buffer strips along a lowland stream in the Netherlands: a pilot study. *Environmental Pollution*. 102: 5211S-526S.
- Hill, A.R.; Cardaci, M. 2004. Denitrification and organic carbon availability in riparian wetland soils and subsurface sediments. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 68: 320-325.
- Hill, A.R.; Devito, K.J.; Campagnolo, S.; Sanmugasdas, K. 2000. Subsurface denitrification in a forest riparian zone: interactions between hydrology and supplies of nitrate and organic carbon. *Biogeochemistry*. 51: 193-223.
- Hill, A.R. 1996. Nitrate removal in stream riparian zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 25: 743-755.
- Hill, A.R., Vidon, P.G.F.; Langat, J. 2004. Denitrification potential in relation to lithology in five headwater riparian zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 33: 911-919.
- Hubbard, R.K.; Lowrance, R. 1997. Assessment of forest management effects on nitrate removal by riparian buffer systems. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 40: 383-391.
- Hubbard, R.K.; Newton, G.L.; Davis, J.G. [and others]. 1998. Nitrogen assimilation by riparian buffer systems receiving swine lagoon wastewater. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 41: 1295-1304.
- Hubbard, R.K.; Sheridan, J.M. 1989. Nitrate movement to groundwater in the southeastern Coastal plain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 44: 20-27.
- Hunter, H.; Fellows, C.; Rassam, D. [and others]. 2006. Managing riparian lands to improve water quality: optimising nitrate removal via denitrification. Indooroopilly, Queensland, Australia : Cooperative Research Centre for Coastal Zone, Estuary and Waterway Management. 31 p. http://www.coastal.crc.org.au/pdf/TechnicalReports/57-riparian_guidelines.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Jacobs, T.C.; Gilliam, J.W. 1985. Riparian losses of nitrate from agricultural drainage waters. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 14: 472-478.
- Jordan, T.E.; Correll, D.L.; Weller, D.E. 1993. Nutrient interception by a riparian forest receiving inputs from adjacent cropland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 22: 467-473.
- Kellogg, D.Q.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M. [and others]. 2005. In situ ground water denitrification in stratified, permeable soils underlying riparian wetlands. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 524-533.
- Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 2003. Sediment and nutrient removal in an established multi-species riparian buffer. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 1-8.
- Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C.; Mickelson, S.K. 2000. Multispecies riparian buffers trap sediment and nutrients during rainfall simulations. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1200-1205.
- Lowrance, R. 1992. Groundwater nitrate and denitrification in a coastal plain riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 401-405.
- Lowrance, R.R.; Altier, L.S.; Dewbold, J.D. [and others]. 1997. Water quality functions of riparian forest buffers in Chesapeake Bay watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 21: 687-712.

- Lowrance, R.; Hubbard, R.K.; Williams, R.G. 2000. Effects of a managed three zone riparian buffer system on shallow groundwater quality in the southeastern Coastal Plain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 212-220.
- Lowrance, R.; Sheridan, J.M. 2005. Surface runoff water quality in a managed three zone riparian buffer. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 1851-1859.
- Lowrance, R.R.; Todd, R.L.; Asmussen, L.E. 1984. Nutrient cycling in an agricultural watershed: I. phreatic movement. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 13: 22-27.
- Lowrance, R.; Vellidis, G.; Hubbard, R.K. 1995. Denitrification in a restored riparian forest wetland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 24: 808-815.
- Lowrance, R.; Williams, R.G.; Inamdar, S.P. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of coastal plain conservation buffers using the riparian ecosystem management model. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1445-1456.
- Lynch, J.A.; Corbett, E.S.; Mussallem, K. 1985. Best management practices for controlling nonpoint-source pollution on forested watersheds. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 40: 164-167.
- Magette, W.L.; Brinsfield, R.B.; Palmer, R.E.; Wood, J.D. 1989. Nutrient and sediment removal by vegetated filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 663-667.
- Martin, T.I.; Kaushik, N.K.; Trevors, J.T.; Whiteley, H.R. 1999. Review: denitrification in temperate climate riparian zones. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 111: 171-186.
- Matheson, F.E.; Nguyen, M.L.; Cooper, A.B. [and others]. 2002. Fate of ¹⁵N-nitrate in unplanted, planted and harvested riparian wetland soil microcosms. *Ecological Engineering*. 19: 249-264.
- Mayer, P.M.; Reynolds, S.K., Jr.; McCutchen, M.D.; Canfield, T.J. 2006. Riparian buffer width, vegetative cover, and nitrogen removal effectiveness: a review of current science and regulations. EPA/600/R-05/118. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. <http://www.epa.gov/nrmrl/pubs/600R05118/600R05118.pdf> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- McKergow, L.A.; Weaver, D.M.; Prosser, I.P. [and others]. 2003. Before and after riparian management: sediment and nutrient exports from a small agricultural catchment, western Australia. *Journal of Hydrology*. 270: 253-272.
- Mehnert, E.; Hwang, H-H.; Johnson, T.M. [and others]. 2007. Denitrification in the shallow ground water of a tile-drained, agricultural watershed. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 80-90.
- Mihara, M. 2006. The effect of natural weed buffers on soil and nitrogen losses in Japan. *Catena*. 65: 265-271.
- Muscutt, A.D.; Harris, G.L.; Bailey, S.W.; Davies, D.B. 1993. Buffer zones to improve water quality: a review of their potential use in UK agriculture. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 43: 59-77.
- Nelson, W.M.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, R.M. 1995. Spatial and temporal variation in groundwater nitrate removal in a riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 24: 691-699.
- Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.
- Overcash, M.R.; Bingham, S.C.; Westerman, P.W. 1981. Predicting runoff pollutant reduction in buffer zones adjacent to land treatment sites. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 24: 430-435.
- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Parkyn, S.M.; Davies-Colley, R.J.; Halliday, N.J. [and others]. 2003. Planted riparian buffer zones in New Zealand: do they live up to expectations? *Restoration Ecology*. 11: 436-447.
- Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W.; Muñoz-Carpena, R.M. [and others]. 1994. Nutrient and sediment removal by grass and riparian buffers. In: Campbell, K.L.; Graham, W.D.; Bottcher, A.B., eds. *Environmentally sound agriculture: proceedings of the 2nd annual conference*. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 147-154.
- Paterson, K.G.; Schnoor, J.L. 1993. Vegetative alteration of nitrate fate in unsaturated zone. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*. 119: 986-993.
- Peterjohn, W.T.; Correll, D.L. 1984. Nutrient dynamics in an agricultural watershed: observations on the role a riparian forest. *Ecology*. 65: 1466-1475.

- Pinay, G.; Clement, J.C.; Naiman, R.J. 2002. Basic principles and ecological consequences of changing water regimes on nitrogen cycling in fluvial systems. *Environmental Management*. 30: 481-491.
- Pinay, G.; Roques, L.; Fabre, A. 1993. Spatial and temporal patterns of denitrification in a riparian forest. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 30: 581-591.
- Pinay, G.; Ruffinoni, C.; Fabre, A. 1995. Nitrogen cycling in two riparian forest soils under different geomorphic conditions. *Biogeochemistry*. 30: 9-29.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Rassam, D.W.; Fellows, C.S.; DeHayr, R. [and others]. 2006. The hydrology of riparian buffer zones: two case studies in an ephemeral and a perennial stream. *Journal of Hydrology*. 325: 308-324.
- Rosenblatt, A.E.; Gold, A.J.; Stolt, M.H. [and others]. 2001. Identifying riparian sinks for watershed nitrate using soil surveys. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 30: 1596-1604.
- Ryszkowski, L.; Kedziora, A. 2007. Modification of water flows and nitrogen fluxes by shelterbelts. *Ecological Engineering*. 29: 388-400.
- Schenk, M.K. 1996. Regulation of nitrogen uptake on the whole plant level. *Plant and Soil*. 181: 131-137.
- Schipper, L.A.; Cooper, A.B.; Harfoot, C.G.; Dyck, W.J. 1993. Regulators of denitrification in an organic riparian soil. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 25: 925-933.
- Schmitt, T.J.; Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D. 1999. Filter strip performance and processes for different vegetation widths and contaminants. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 1479-1489.
- Schnabel, R.R.; Cornish, L.F.; Stout, W.L.; Shaffer, J.A. 1996. Denitrification in a grassed and a wooded, valley and ridge, riparian ecotone. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 25: 1230-1235.
- Schoonover, J.E.; Williard, K.W.J.; Zaczek, J.J. [and others]. 2005. Nutrient attenuation in agricultural surface runoff by riparian buffer zones in southern Illinois, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 64: 169-180.
- Schultz, R.C.; Colletti, J.P.; Isenhardt, T.M. [and others]. 1995. Design and placement of a multi-species riparian buffer strip system. *Agroforestry Systems*. 29: 201-226.
- Schwer, C.B.; Clausen, J.C. 1989. Vegetative filter treatment of dairy milkhouse wastewater. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 18: 446-451.
- Seitzinger, S.P. 1994. Linkages between organic matter mineralization and denitrification in eight riparian wetlands. *Biogeochemistry*. 25: 19-39.
- Simmons, R.C.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M. 1992. Nitrate dynamics in riparian forests: groundwater studies. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 659-665.
- Snyder, N.J.; Mostaghimi, S.; Berry, D.F. [and others]. 1998. Impact of riparian forest buffers on agricultural nonpoint source pollution. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 34: 385-395.
- Spruill, T.B. 2004. Effectiveness of riparian buffers in controlling ground-water discharge of nitrate to streams in selected hydrogeologic settings of the North Carolina Coastal Plain. *Water Science and Technology*. 49(3): 63-70.
- Srivastava, P.; Edwards, D.R.; Daniel, T.C. [and others]. 1996. Performance of vegetative filter strips with varying pollutant source and filter strip lengths. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2231-2239.
- Syversen, N. 2005. Effect and design of buffer zones in the Nordic climate: the influence of width, amount of surface runoff, season variation and vegetation type on retention efficiency for nutrient and particle runoff. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 483-490.
- Vellidis, G.; Lowrance, R.; Gay, P.; Hubbard, R.K. 2003. Nutrient transport in a restored riparian wetland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 711-726.
- Verchot, L.V.; Franklin, E.c.; Gilliam, J.W. 1997. Nitrogen cycling in Piedmont vegetated filter zones. I. Surface soil processes. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 327-336.
- Vidon, P.G.F.; Hill, A.R. 2004. Landscape controls on nitrate removal in stream riparian zones. *Water Resources Research* 40: W03201, doi:10.1029/2003WR002473.

Vidon, P.G.F.; Hill, A.R. 2004. Landscape controls on the hydrology of stream riparian zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 292: 210-228.

Vidon, P.G.F.; Hill, A.R. 2006. A landscape-based approach to estimate riparian hydrological and nitrate removal functions. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 42: 1099-1112.

Vought, L.B.; Pinay, G.; Fuglsang, A.; Ruffinoni, C. 1995. Structure and function of buffer strips from a water quality perspective in agricultural landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 323-331.

Wenger, S. 1999. A review of the scientific literature on riparian buffer width, extent, and vegetation. Athens, GA: University of Georgia, Institute of Ecology, Office of Public Service and Outreach. 59 p.
http://www.rivercenter.uga.edu/service/tools/buffers/buffer_lit_review.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].

Young, E.O.; Briggs, R.D. 2005. Shallow ground water nitrate-N and ammonium-N in cropland and riparian buffers. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 109: 297-309.

Young, E.O.; Briggs, R.D. 2007. Nitrogen dynamics among cropland and riparian buffers: soil-landscape influences. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 801-814.

Young, R.A.; Huntrods, T.; Anderson, W. 1980. Effectiveness of vegetated buffer strips in controlling pollution from feedlot runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 9: 483-487.

Zak, D.R.; Grigal, D.F. 1991. Nitrogen mineralization, nitrification denitrification in upland and wetland ecosystems. *Oecologia*. 88: 189-196.

1.13 Buffers for phosphorus

Abu-Zreig, M.R.; Rudra, P.; Whiteclay, H.R. [and others]. 2003. Phosphorus removal in vegetated filter strips. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 613-619.

Barling, R.D.; Moore, I.D. 1994. Role of buffer strips in management of waterway pollution: a review. *Environmental Management*. 18: 543-558.

Borin, M.; Vianello, M.; Morari, F.; Zanin, G. 2005. Effectiveness of buffer strips in removing pollutants in runoff from a cultivated field in North-East Italy. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 105: 101-114.

Clinton, B.D.; Vose, J.M. 2006. Variation in stream water quality in an urban headwater stream in the southern Appalachians. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 331-353.

Cole, J.T.; Baird, J.H.; Basta, N.T. [and others]. 1997. Influence of buffers on pesticide and nutrient runoff from bermudagrass turf. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 1589-1598.

Cooper, J.R.; Gilliam, J.W. 1987. Phosphorus redistribution from cultivated fields into riparian areas. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 51: 1600-1604.

Corley, C.J.; Frasier, G.W.; Trlica, M.J. [and others]. 1999. Technical note: nitrogen and phosphorus in runoff from 2 montane riparian communities. *Journal of Range Management*. 52: 600-605.

Correll, D.L.; Jordan, T.E.; Weller, D.E. 1999. Effects of precipitation and air temperature on phosphorus fluxes from Rhode River watersheds. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 144-154.

Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.

Daniels, R.B.; Gilliam, J.W. 1996. Sediment and chemical load reduction by grass and riparian filters. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 60: 246-251.

Devito, K.J.; Creed, I.F.; Rothwell, R.L.; Prepas, E.E. 2000. Landscape controls on phosphorus loading to boreal lakes: implications for the potential impacts of forest harvesting. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 57: 1977-1984.

Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 513-519.

Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrad, J.H.; Lee, D. [and others]. 1988. Evaluation of vegetative filter strips as best management practices for feed lots. *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation*. 60: 1231-1238.

Dorioz, J.M.; Wang, D.; Poulenard, J.; Trévisan, D. 2006. The effect of grass buffer strips on phosphorus dynamics – a critical review and synthesis as a basis for application in agricultural landscapes in France. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 117: 4-21.

Dosskey, M.G.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.

Dosskey, M.G.G., Hoagland, K.D.; Brandle, J.R. 2007. Change in filter strip performance over ten years. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 21-32.

Eghball, B.; Gilley, J.E.; Kramer, L.A.; Moorman, T.B. 2000. Narrow grass hedge effects on phosphorus and nitrogen in runoff following manure and fertilizer application. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 172-176.

Fennessy, M.S.; Cronk, J.K. 1997. The effectiveness and restoration potential of riparian ecotones for the management of nonpoint source pollution, particularly nitrate. *Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology*. 27: 285-317.

Gburek, W.J.; Drungil, C.C.; Srinivasan, M.S. [and others]. 2002. Variable-source-area controls on phosphorus transport: bridging the gap between research and design. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 534-543.

Gburek, W.J.; Sharpley, A.N. 1998. Hydraulic controls on phosphorus loss from upland agricultural watersheds. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 27: 267-277.

Gentry, L.E.; David, M.B.; Royer, T.V. [and others]. 2007. Phosphorus transport pathways to streams in tile-drained agricultural watersheds. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 408-415.

Gilliam, J.W. 1994. Riparian wetlands and water quality. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 23: 896-900.

Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.

Heathwaite, A.L.; Griffiths, P.; Parkinson, R.J. 1998. Nitrogen and phosphorus in runoff from grassland with buffer strips following application of fertilizers and manures. *Soil Use and Management*. 14: 142-148.

Heathwaite, A.L.; Sharpley, A.; Gburek, W. 2000. A conceptual approach for integrating phosphorus and nitrogen management at watershed scales. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 158-166.

Jordan, T.E.; Correll, D.L.; Weller, D.E. 1993. Nutrient interception by a riparian forest receiving inputs from adjacent cropland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 22: 467-473.

Kelly, J.M.; Kovar, K.L.; Sokolowsky, R.; Moorman, T.B. 2007. Phosphorus uptake during four years by different vegetative cover types in a riparian buffer. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*. 78: 239-251.

Klatt, J.G.; Mallarino, A.P.; Downing, J.A. [and others]. 2003. Soil phosphorus management practices and their relationship to phosphorus delivery in the Iowa Clear Lake agricultural watershed. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 2140-2149.

Kronvang, B.; Bechmann, M.; Lundekvam, H. [and others]. 2005. Phosphorus losses from agricultural areas in river basins: effects and uncertainties of targeted mitigation measures. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 2149-2144.

Kronvang, B.; Laubel, A.; Larsen, S.E. [and others]. 2005. Buffer zones as sink for sediment and phosphorus between the field and stream: Danish field experiences. *Water Science and Technology*. 51(3-4): 55-62.

Lee, D.; Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrard, J.H. 1989. Modeling phosphorus transport in grass filter strips. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*. 115: 409-427.

Lee, K-H.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C.; Mickelson, S.K. 2000. Multispecies riparian buffers trap sediment and nutrients during rainfall simulations. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1200-1205.

Logan, T.J. 1982. Mechanisms for release of sediment-bound phosphate to water and the effects of agricultural land management on fluvial transport of particulate and dissolved phosphate. *Hydrobiologia*. 92: 519-530.

Lowrance, R.R.; Altier, L.S.; Dewbold, J.D. [and others]. 1997. Water quality functions of riparian forest buffers in Chesapeake Bay watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 21: 687-712.

Lowrance, R.; Sheridan, J.M. 2005. Surface runoff water quality in a managed three zone riparian buffer. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 1851-1859.

Lowrance, R.; Williams, R.G.; Inamdar, S.P. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of coastal plain conservation buffers using the riparian ecosystem management model. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1445-1456.

Magette, W.L.; Brinsfield, R.B.; Palmer, R.E.; Wood, J.D. 1989. Nutrient and sediment removal by vegetated filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 663-667.

- Mander, Ü.; Kuusemets, V.; Löhums, K.; Muring, T. 1997. Efficiency and dimensioning of riparian buffer zones in agricultural catchments. *Ecological Engineering*. 8: 299-324.
- McDowell, R.W.; Biggs, B.J.F.; Sharpley, A.N.; Nguyen, L. 2004. Connecting phosphorus loss from agricultural landscapes to surface water quality. *Chemistry and Ecology*. 20: 1-40.
- McKergow, L.A.; Weaver, D.M.; Prosser, I.P. [and others]. 2003. Before and after riparian management: sediment and nutrient exports from a small agricultural catchment, western Australia. *Journal of Hydrology*. 270: 253-272.
- Meyer, J.L.; Likens, G.E. 1979. Transport and transformation of phosphorus in a forest stream ecosystem. *Ecology*. 60: 1255-1269.
- Muscutt, A.D.; Harris, G.L.; Bailey, S.W.; Davies, D.B. 1993. Buffer zones to improve water quality: a review of their potential use in UK agriculture. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 435: 59-77.
- Nowak, J.M.; Hunt, P.G.; Stone, K.C. [and others]. 2002. Riparian zone impact on phosphorus movement to a Coastal Plain black water stream. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 57: 127-133.
- Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.
- Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W.; Muñoz-Carpena, R.M. [and others]. 1994. Nutrient and sediment removal by grass and riparian buffers. In: Campbell, K.L.; Graham, W.D.; Bottcher, A.B., eds. *Environmentally sound agriculture: proceedings of the 2nd annual conference*. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 147-154.
- Patty, L.; Réal, B.; Gril, J. 1997. The use of grassed buffer strips to remove pesticides, nitrate and soluble phosphorus compounds from runoff water. *Pesticide Science*. 49: 243-251.
- Peterjohn, W.T.; Correll, D.L. 1984. Nutrient dynamics in an agricultural watershed: observations on the role a riparian forest. *Ecology*. 65: 1466-1475.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Reed, T.; Carpenter, S.R. 2002. Comparisons of P-yield, riparian buffer strips, and land cover in six agricultural watersheds. *Ecosystems*. 5: 568-577.
- Schellinger, G.R.; Clausen, J.C. 1992. Vegetative filter treatment of dairy barnyard runoff in cold regions. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 40-45.
- Schwer, C.B.; Clausen, J.C. 1989. Vegetative filter treatment of dairy milkhouse wastewater. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 18: 446-451.
- Sharpley, A. 1995. Identifying sites vulnerable to phosphorus loss in agricultural runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 24: 947-951.
- Sharpley, A.N.; McDowell, R.W.; Kleinman, P.J.A. 2001. Phosphorus loss from land to water: integrating agricultural and environmental management. *Plant and Soil*. 237: 287-307.
- Sharpley, A.N.; Smith, S.J.; Jones, O.R. [and others]. 1992. The transport of bioavailable phosphorus in agricultural runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 30-35.
- Snyder, N.J.; Mostaghimi, S.; Berry, D.F. [and others]. 1998. Impact of riparian forest buffers on agricultural nonpoint source pollution. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 34: 385-395.
- Srivastava, P.; Edwards, D.R.; Daniel, T.C. [and others]. 1996. Performance of vegetative filter strips with varying pollutant source and filter strip lengths. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2231-2239.
- Stout, W.L.; Pachepsky, Y.A.; Shelton, D.R. [and others]. 2005. Runoff transport of faecal coliforms and phosphorus released from manure in grass buffer conditions. *Letters in Applied Microbiology*. 41: 230-234.
- Svendsen, L.M.; Kronvang, B. 1993. Retention of nitrogen and phosphorus in a Danish lowland river system: implications for the export from the watershed. *Hydrobiologia*. 251: 123-135.
- Syversen, N. 2002. Effect of cold-climate buffer zone on minimizing diffuse pollution from agriculture. *Water Science and Technology*. 45(9): 69-76.

Syversen, N. 2005. Effect and design of buffer zones in the Nordic climate: the influence of width, amount of surface runoff, season variation and vegetation type on retention efficiency for nutrient and particle runoff. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 483-490.

Syversen, N.; Borch, H. 2005. Retention of soil particle fractions and phosphorus in cold-climate buffer zones. *Ecological Engineering*. 25: 382-394.

Tomer, M.D.; Moorman, T.B.; Kovar, J.L. [and others]. 2007. Spatial patterns of sediment and phosphorus in a riparian buffer in western Iowa. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 329-338.

Uusi-Kämppe, J. 2005. Phosphorus purification in buffer zones in cold climates. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 491-502.

Uusi-Kämppe, J.; Braskerud, B.; Jansson, H. [and others]. 2000. Buffer zones and constructed wetlands as filters for agricultural phosphorus. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 151-158.

Uusi-Kämppe, J.; Turtola, E.; Hartikainen, H.; Ylärinta, T. 1997. The interactions of buffer zones and phosphorus. In: Haycock, N.E.; Burt, T.P.; Goulding, K.W.T.; Pinay, G., eds. *Buffer zones: their processes and potential in water protection*. Hartfordshire, UK: Quest Environmental. 43-53.

Vellidis, G.; Lowrance, R.; Gay, P.; Hubbard, R.K. 2003. Nutrient transport in a restored riparian wetland. *Journal Environmental Quality*. 32: 711-726.

Vought, L.B.; Pinay, G.; Fuglsang, A.; Ruffinoni, C. 1995. Structure and function of buffer strips from a water quality perspective in agricultural landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 323-331.

Wenger, S. 1999. A review of the scientific literature on riparian buffer width, extent, and vegetation. Athens, GA: University of Georgia, Institute of Ecology, Office of Public Service and Outreach. 59 p.
http://www.rivercenter.uga.edu/service/tools/buffers/buffer_lit_review.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].

Withers, P.J.A.; Jarvis, S.C. 1998. Mitigation options for diffuse phosphorus loss to water. *Soil Use and Management*. 14: 186-192.

Young, R.A.; Huntrods, T.; Anderson, W. 1980. Effectiveness of vegetated buffer strips in controlling pollution from feedlot runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 9: 483-487.

1.14 Buffers for pesticides

Angier, J.T.; McCarty, G.W.; Rice, C.P.; Bialek, K. 2002. Influence of riparian wetland on nitrate and herbicides exported from an agricultural field. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 50: 4424-4429.

Arora, K.; Mickelson, S.K.; Baker, J.L. [and others]. 1996. Herbicide retention by vegetative buffer strips from runoff under natural rainfall. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2155-2162.

Arora, K.; Mickelson, S.K.; Baker, J.L. 2003. Effectiveness of vegetated buffer strips in reducing pesticide transport in simulated runoff. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 46: 635-644.

Asmussen, L.E.; White, A.W., Jr.; Hauser, W.E.; Sheridan, J.M. 1977. Reduction of 2, 4-D load in surface runoff down a grassed waterway. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 6: 159-162.

Baker, J.L.; Mickelson, S.K. 1994. Application technology and best management practices for minimizing herbicide runoff. *Weed Technology*. 8: 862-869.

Barfield, B.J.; Blevins, R.L.; Fogle, A.W. [and others]. 1998. Water quality impacts of natural filter strips in karst areas. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 41: 371-381.

Benoit, P.; Barriuso, E.; Vidon, P.; Réal, B. 1999. Isoproturon sorption and degradation in a soil from grassed buffer strip. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 121-129.

Blanche, S.B.; Shaw, D.R.; Massey, J.H. [and others]. 2003. Fluometuron adsorption to vegetative filter strip components. *Weed Science*. 51: 125-129.

Boyd, P.M.; Baker, J.L.; Mickelson, S.K.; Ahmed, S.I. 2003. Pesticide transport with surface runoff and subsurface drainage through a vegetative filter strip. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 46: 675-684.

Branham, B.; Milnert, E.; Rieke, P. 1995. Potential groundwater contamination from pesticides and fertilizers used on golf courses. *USGA Green Section Record*. 33: 33-37.

Cole, J.T.; Baird, J.H.; Basta, N.T. [and others]. 1997. Influence of buffers on pesticide and nutrient runoff from bermudagrass turf. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 26: 1589-1598.

- Delphin, J.E.; Chapot, J.Y. 2001. Leaching of atrazine and deethylatrazine under a vegetative filter strip. *Agronomie*. 21: 461-470.
- Flury, M. 1996. Experimental evidence of transport of pesticides through field soils – a review. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 25: 25-45.
- Karthikeyan, R.; Davis, L.C.; Erickson, L.E. [and others]. 2004. Potential for plant-based remediation of pesticide-contaminated soil and water using nontarget plants such as trees, shrubs, and grasses. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*. 23: 91-101.
- Kloppel, H.; Kordel, W.; Stein, B. 1997. Herbicide transport by surface runoff and herbicide retention in a filter strip – rainfall and runoff simulation studies. *Chemosphere*. 35: 129-141.
- Krutz, L.J.; Gentry, T.J.; Senseman, S.A. [and others]. 2006. Mineralisation of atrazine, metolachlor and their respective metabolites in vegetated filter strip and cultivated soil. *Pest Management Science*. 62: 505-514.
- Krutz, L.J.; Senseman, S.A.; Dozier, M.C. [and others]. 2003. Infiltration and adsorption of dissolved atrazine and atrazine metabolites in buffalograss filter strips. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 2319-2324.
- Krutz, L.J.; Senseman, S.A.; McInnes, K.J. [and others]. 2003. Adsorption and desorption of atrazine, desethylatrazine, deisopropylatrazine, and hydroxyatrazine in vegetated filter strip and cultivated soil. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 51: 7379-7384.
- Krutz, L.J.; Senseman, S.A.; McInnes, K.J. [and others]. 2004. Adsorption and desorption of metolachlor and metolachlor metabolites in vegetated filter strip and cultivated soil. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 33: 939-945.
- Krutz, L.J.; Senseman, S.A.; Zablotowicz, R.M.; Matocha, M.A. 2005. Reducing herbicide runoff from agricultural fields with vegetative filter strips: a review. *Weed Science*. 53: 353-367.
- Lacas, J.G.; Voltz, M.; Gouy, V. [and others]. 2005. Using grassed strips to limit pesticide transfer to surface water: a review. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*. 25: 253-266.
- Lin, C.H.; Lerch, R.N.; Garrett, H.E.; George, M.F. 2004. Incorporating forage grasses in riparian buffers for bioremediation of atrazine, isoxaflutole and nitrate in Missouri. *Agroforestry Systems*. 63: 91-99.
- Lin, C.Y.; Chou, W.C.; Lin, W.T. 2002. Modeling the width and placement of riparian vegetated buffers strips: a case study on the Chi-Jia-Wang stream, Taiwan. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 66: 269-280.
- Lowrance, R.; Vellidis, G.; Wauchope, R.D. [and others]. 1997. Herbicide transport in a managed riparian forest buffer system. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 40: 1047-1057.
- Madrigal, I.; Benoit, P.; Barriuso, E. [and others]. 2007. Pesticide degradation in vegetative buffer strips: grassed and tree barriers: case of isoproturon. *Agrociencia*. 41: 205-217.
- Mersie, W.; Seybold, C.A.; McNamee, C.; Huang, J. 1999. Effectiveness of switchgrass filter strips in removing dissolved atrazine and metolachlor from runoff. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 816-821.
- Mersie, W.; Seybold, C.A.; McNamee, C.; Lawson, M.A. 2003. Abating edosulfan from runoff using vegetative filter strips: the importance of plant species and flow rate. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 97: 215-223.
- Mickelson, S.K.; Baker, J.L.; Ahmed, S.I. 2003. Vegetative filter strips for reducing atrazine and sediment runoff transport. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 359-367.
- Misra, A.K.; Baker, J.L.; Mickelson, S.K.; Shang, H. 1996. Contributing area and concentration effects on herbicide removal by vegetative buffer strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 2105-2111.
- Neary, D.G.; Bush, P.B.; Michael, J.L. 1993. Fate dissipation and environmental effects of pesticides in southern forests: a review of a decade of research progress. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*. 12: 411-428.
- Patty, L.; Réal, B.; Gril, J. 1997. The use of grassed buffer strips to remove pesticides, nitrate and soluble phosphorus compounds from runoff water. *Pesticide Science*. 49: 243-251.
- Popov, V.H.; Cornish, P.S.; Sun, H. 2006. Vegetated biofilters: the relative importance of infiltration and adsorption in reducing loads of water-soluble herbicides in agricultural runoff. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 114: 351-359.
- Rankins, A., Jr.; Shaw, D.R.; Boyette, M. 2001. Perennial grass filter strips for reducing herbicide losses in runoff. *Weed Science* 49:647-651.
- Rankins, A., Jr.; Shaw, D.R.; Douglas, J. 2005. Response of perennial grasses potentially used as filter strips to selected postemergence herbicides. *Weed Technology*. 19: 73-77.

- Rankins, A., Jr.; Shaw, D.R.; Kingery, W.L. 2002. Comparison of fluometuron sorption to soil from a filter strip and cropped field. *Weed Science*. 50: 820-823.
- Rao, P.S.; Hornsby, G.; Jessup, R.E. 1985. Indices for ranking the potential for pesticide contamination of groundwater. *Proceedings of the Soil and Crop Science Society of Florida*. 44: 1-8.
- Reichenberger, S.; Bach, M.; Skitschak, A.; Frede, H. 2007. Mitigation strategies to reduce pesticide inputs into ground- and surface water and their effectiveness; a review. *Science of the Total Environment*. 384: 1-35.
- Reungsang, A.; Moorman, T.B.; Kanwar, R.S. 2001. Transport and fate of atrazine in midwestern riparian buffer strips. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1681-1692.
- Schmitt, T.J.; Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D. 1999. Filter strip performance and processes for different vegetation, widths, and contaminants. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 1479-1489.
- Seybold, C.; Mersie, W.; Delire, D. 2001. Removal and degradation of atrazine and metolachlor by vegetative filter strips on clay loam soil. *Communications in Soil Science and Plant Analysis*. 32: 723-737.
- Staddon, W.J.; Locke, M.A.; Zablotowicz, R.M. 2001. Microbiological characteristics of a vegetative buffer strip soil and degradation and sorption of metolachlor. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 65: 1136-1142.
- Syversen, N. 2005. Cold-climate vegetative buffer zones as pesticide-filters for surface runoff. *Water Science and Technology*. 51(3-4): 63-71.
- Syversen, N.; Bechmann, M. 2004. Vegetative buffer zones as pesticide filters for simulated surface runoff. *Ecological Engineering*. 22: 175-184.
- Tingle, C.H.; Shaw, D.R.; Boyette, M.; Murphy, G.P. 1998. Metolachlor and metribuzin losses in runoff as affected by width of vegetative filter strips. *Weed Science*. 46: 475-479.
- Vellidis, G.; Lowrance, R.; Gay, P.; Wauchope, R.D. 2002. Herbicide transport in a restored riparian forest buffer systems. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 45: 89-97.
- Webster, E.P.; Shaw, D.R. 1996. Impact of vegetative filter strips on herbicide loss in runoff from soybean (*Glycine max*). *Weed Science*. 44: 662-671.
- Wu, J.; Mersie, W.; Atalay, A.; Seybold, C.A. 2003. Copper retention from runoff by switchgrass and tall fescue filter strips. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 67-72.
- 1.15 Buffers for shallow groundwater**
- Addy, K.L.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M.; Jacinthe, P.A. 1999. Ground water nitrate removal in subsoil of forested and mowed riparian buffer zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 28: 962-970.
- Angier, J.T.; McCarty, G.W.; Rice, C.P.; Bialek, K. 2002. Influence of riparian wetland on nitrate and herbicides exported from an agricultural field. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 50: 4424-4429.
- Ashby, J.A.; Bowden, W.B.; Murdoch, P.S. 1998. Controls on denitrification in riparian soils in headwater catchments of a hardwood forest in the Catskill Mountains, USA. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 30: 853-864.
- Baker, M.E.; Wiley, M.J.; Seelbach, P.W. 2001. GIS-based hydrologic modeling of riparian areas: implications for stream water quality. *Journal of American Water Resources*. 37: 1615-1628.
- Blackwell, M.S.A.; Hogan, D.V.; Maltby, E. 1999. The use of conventionally and alternatively located buffer zones for the removal of nitrate from diffuse agricultural runoff. *Water Science and Technology*. 39(12): 157-164.
- Bohlke, J.K.; Denver, J.M. 1995. Combined use of groundwater dating, chemical, and isotopic analyses to resolve the history and fate of nitrate contamination in two agricultural watersheds, Atlantic coastal plain, Maryland. *Water Resources Research*. 31: 2319-2340.
- Borin, M.; Bigon, E.; Zanin, G.; Fava, L. 2004. Performance of narrow buffer strip in abating agricultural pollutants in the shallow subsurface water flux. *Environmental Pollution*. 131: 313-321.
- Bosch, D.D.; Hubbard, R.K.; West, L.T.; Lowrance, R.R. 1994. Subsurface flow patterns in a riparian buffer system. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 37: 1783-1790.
- Bosch, D.D.; Sheridan, J.M.; Lowrance, R.R. 1996. Hydraulic gradients and flow rates of a shallow coastal plan aquifer in a forested riparian buffer. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 865-871.

- Bradley, P.M.; Fernandez, M., Jr.; Chapelle, F.H. 1992. Carbon limitation of denitrification rates in an anaerobic groundwater system. *Environmental Science and Technology*. 26: 2377-2381.
- Brettar, I.; Höfle, M.G. 2002. Close correlation between the nitrate elimination rate by denitrification and the organic matter content in hardwood forest soils of the Upper Rhine floodplain (France). *Wetlands*. 22: 214-224.
- Burns, D.A.; Nguyen, L. 2002. Nitrate movement and removal along a shallow groundwater flow path in a riparian wetland within a sheep-grazed pastoral catchment: results of a tracer study. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*. 36: 371-385.
- Cirno, C.P.; McDonnell, J.J. 1997. Linking hydrologic and biogeochemical controls of nitrogen transport in near-stream zones of temperate-forested catchments: a review. *Journal of Hydrology*. 199: 88-120.
- Clausen, J.C.; Guillard, K.; Sigmund, C.M.; Martin Dors, K. 2000. Water quality changes from riparian buffer restoration in Connecticut. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 29: 1751-1761.
- Cooper, A.B. 1990. Nitrate depletion in the riparian zone and stream channel of a small headwater catchment. *Hydrobiologia*. 202: 13-26.
- Correll, D.J. 2005. Principles of planning and establishment of buffer zones. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 433-439.
- Davis, J.H.; Griffith, S.M.; Horwath, W.R. [and others]. 2007. Mitigation of shallow groundwater nitrate in a poorly drained riparian area and adjacent cropland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 628-637.
- Dhondt, K.; Boeckx, P.; van Cleemput, O. [and others]. 2002. Seasonal groundwater nitrate dynamics in a riparian buffer zone. *Agronomie*. 22: 747-753.
- Dosskey, M.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.
- Dukes, M.D.; Evans, R.O.; Gilliam, J.W.; Kunickis, S.H. 2002. Effect of riparian buffer width and vegetation type on shallow groundwater quality in the Middle Coastal Plain of North Carolina. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 45: 327-336.
- Fennessy, M.S.; Cronk, J.K. 1997. The effectiveness and restoration potential of riparian ecotones for the management of nonpoint source pollution, particularly nitrate. *Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology*. 27: 285-317.
- Gold, A.J.; DeRagon, W.R.; Sullivan, W.M.; Lemunyon, J.L. 1990. Nitrate-nitrogen losses to groundwater from rural and suburban land uses. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 45: 305-310.
- Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M.; Addy, K. [and others]. 2001. Landscape attributes as controls on groundwater nitrate removal capacity of riparian zones. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1457-1464.
- Gold, A.J.; Jacinthe, P.A.; Groffman, P.M. [and others]. 1998. Patchiness in groundwater nitrate removal in a riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 27: 146-155.
- Groffman, P.M.; Crawford, M.K. 2003. Denitrification potential in urban riparian zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 1144-1149.
- Groffman, P.M.; Gold, A.J.; Simmons, R.C. 1992. Nitrate dynamics in riparian forests: microbial studies. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 666-671.
- Groffman, P.M.; Howard, G.; Gold, A.J.; Nelson, W.M. 1996. Microbial nitrate processing shallow groundwater in a riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 25: 1309-1316.
- Hanson, G.C.; Groffman, P.M.; Gold, A.J. 1994. Symptoms of nitrogen saturation in a riparian wetland. *Ecological Applications*. 4: 750-756.
- Hanson, G.C.; Groffman, P.M.; Gold, A.J. 1994. Denitrification in riparian wetlands receiving high and low groundwater nitrate inputs. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 23: 917-922.
- Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.
- Haycock, N.E.; Pinay, G. 1993. Groundwater nitrate dynamics in grass and poplar vegetated riparian buffer strips during the winter. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 22: 273-278.
- Hill, A.R. 1990. Ground water flow paths in relation to nitrogen chemistry in the near-stream zone. *Hydrobiologia*. 206: 39-52.

- Hill, A.R.; Vidon, P.G.F.; Langat, J. 2004. Denitrification potential in relation to lithology in five headwater riparian zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 33: 911-919.
- Hubbard, R.K.; Lowrance, R.R. 1996. Solute transport and filtering through a riparian forest. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 39: 477-488.
- Hunter, H.; Fellows, C.; Rassam, D. [and others]. 2006. Managing riparian lands to improve water quality: optimising nitrate removal via denitrification. Indooroopilly, Queensland, Australia : Cooperative Research Centre for Coastal Zone, Estuary and Waterway Management. 31 p. http://www.coastal.crc.org.au/pdf/TechnicalReports/57-riparian_guidelines.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Jacinte, P.A.; Groffman, P.M.; Gold, A.J. 2003. Dissolved organic carbon dynamics in a riparian aquifer: effects of hydrology and nitrate enrichment. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 1365-1374.
- Jacobs, T.C.; Gilliam, J.W. 1985. Riparian losses of nitrate from agricultural drainage waters. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 14: 472-478.
- Jordan, T.E.; Correll, D.L.; Weller, D.E. 1993. Nutrient interception by a riparian forest receiving inputs from adjacent cropland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 22: 467-473.
- Kellogg, D.Q.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M. [and others]. 2005. In situ ground water denitrification in stratified, permeable soils underlying riparian wetlands. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 524-533.
- Kuusements, V.; Mander, Ü.; Lõhmus, K.; Ivask, M. 2001. Nitrogen and phosphorus variation in shallow groundwater and assimilation in plants in complex riparian buffer zones. *Water Science and Technology*. 44(11-12): 615-622.
- Lowrance, R. 1992. Groundwater nitrate and denitrification in a coastal plain riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 401-405.
- Lowrance, R.R.; Altier, L.S.; Dewbold, J.D. [and others]. 1997. Water quality functions of riparian forest buffers in Chesapeake Bay watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 21: 687-712.
- Lowrance, R.; Hubbard, R.K.; Williams, R.G. 2000. Effects of a managed three zone riparian buffer system on shallow groundwater quality in the southeastern Coastal Plain. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 212-220.
- Lowrance, R.; Sheridan, J.M. 2005. Surface runoff water quality in a managed three zone riparian buffer. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 1851-1859.
- Lowrance, R.R.; Todd, R.L.; Asmussen, L.E. 1984. Nutrient cycling in an agricultural watershed: I. phreatic movement. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 13: 22-27.
- Lowrance, R.; Vellidis, G.; Hubbard, R.K. 1995. Denitrification in a restored riparian forest wetland. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 24: 808-815.
- Lowrance, R.; Williams, R.G.; Inamdar, S.P. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of coastal plain conservation buffers using the riparian ecosystem management model. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1445-1456.
- Magner, J.A.; Payne, G.A.; Steffen, L.J. 2004. Drainage effects on stream nitrate-n and hydrology in south-central Minnesota (USA). *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*. 91: 183-198.
- Martin, T.I.; Kaushik, N.K.; Trevors, J.T.; Whiteley, H.R. 1999. Review: denitrification in temperate climate riparian zones. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 111: 171-186.
- Mayer, P.M.; Reynolds, S.K., Jr.; McCutchen, M.D.; Canfield, T.J. 2006. Riparian buffer width, vegetative cover, and nitrogen removal effectiveness: a review of current science and regulations. EPA/600/R-05/118. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. <http://www.epa.gov/nrmrl/pubs/600R05118/600R05118.pdf> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Mehnert, E.; Hwang, H-H.; Johnson, T.M. [and others]. 2007. Denitrification in the shallow ground water of a tile-drained, agricultural watershed. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 80-90.
- Muscutt, A.D.; Harris, G.L.; Bailey, S.W.; Davies, D.B. 1993. Buffer zones to improve water quality: a review of their potential use in UK agriculture. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 43: 59-77.
- Nelson, W.M.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, R.M. 1995. Spatial and temporal variation in groundwater nitrate removal in a riparian forest. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 24: 691-699.
- Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.

- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Peterjohn, W.T.; Correll, D.L. 1984. Nutrient dynamics in an agricultural watershed: observations on the role a riparian forest. *Ecology*. 65: 1466-1475.
- Petersen, R.C.; Petersen, L.B.; Lacoursiere, J. 1992. A building-block model for stream restoration. In: Boon, P.J.; Calow, P.; Petts, G.E., eds. *River conservation and management*. London: Wiley. 293-309.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Nonpoint source pollution control effectiveness of riparian forests along a Coastal Plain river. *Journal of Hydrology*. 110: 221-237.
- Puckett, L.J. 2004. Hydrogeologic controls on the transport and fate of nitrate in ground water beneath riparian buffer zones: results from thirteen studies across the United States. *Water Science and Technology*. 49(3): 47-53.
- Rassam, D.W.; Fellows, C.S.; DeHayr, R. [and others]. 2006. The hydrology of riparian buffer zones: two case studies in an ephemeral and a perennial stream. *Journal of Hydrology*. 325: 308-324.
- Rosenblatt, A.E.; Gold, A.J.; Stolt, M.H. [and others]. 2001. Identifying riparian sinks for watershed nitrate using soil surveys. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 30: 1596-1604.
- Rotkin-Ellman, M.; Addy, K.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M. 2004. Tree species, root decomposition and subsurface denitrification potential in riparian wetlands. *Plant and Soil*. 263: 355-344.
- Ryszkowski, L.; Kedziora, A. 2007. Modification of water flows and nitrogen fluxes by shelterbelts. *Ecological Engineering*. 29: 388-400.
- Schilling, K.E.; Li, Z.; Zhang, Y.K. 2006. Groundwater-surface water interaction in the riparian zone of an incised channel, Walnut Creek, Iowa. *Journal of Hydrology*. 327: 140-150.
- Schilling, K.E.; Zhang, Y.K.; Drobney, P. 2004. Water table fluctuations near an incised stream, Walnut Creek, Iowa. *Journal of Hydrology*. 286: 236-248.
- Schnabel, R.R.; Cornish, L.F.; Stout, W.L.; Shaffer, J.A. 1996. Denitrification in a grassed and a wooded, valley and ridge, riparian ecotone. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 25:1230-1235.
- Simmons, R.C.; Gold, A.J.; Groffman, P.M. 1992. Nitrate dynamics in riparian forests: groundwater studies. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 21: 659-665.
- Simpkins, W.W.; Wineland, T.R.; Andress, R.J. [and others]. 2002. Hydrogeological constraints on riparian buffers for reduction of diffuse pollution: examples from the Bear Creek watershed in Iowa, USA. *Water Science and Technology*. 45(9): 61-68.
- Spruill, T.B. 2004. Effectiveness of riparian buffers in controlling ground-water discharge of nitrate to streams in selected hydrogeologic settings of the North Carolina Coastal Plain. *Water Science and Technology*. 49(3): 63-70.
- Stainton, R.T.; Stone, M. 2003. Nitrate transport in shallow groundwater at the stream-riparian interface in an urbanizing catchment. *Journal of Environmental Planning and Management*. 46: 475-498.
- Tomer, M.D.; Meek, D.W.; Jaynes, D.B.; Hatfield, J.L. 2003. Evaluation of nitrate nitrogen fluxes from a tile-drained watershed in central Iowa. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 642-653
- Tufekcioglu, A.; Raich, J.W.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 1999. Fine root dynamics, coarse root biomass, root distribution, and soil respiration in a Multispecies riparian buffer in Central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 163-174.
- Vidon, P.G.F.; Hill, A.R. 2004. Landscape controls on the hydrology of stream riparian zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 292: 210-228.
- Vidon, P.G.F.; Hill, A.R. 2004. Landscape controls on nitrate removal in stream riparian zones. *Water Resources Research*. 40: W03201, doi:10.1029/2003WR002473.
- Weller, D.E.; Jordan, T.E.; Correll, D.L. 1998. Heuristic models for material discharge from landscapes with riparian buffers. *Ecological Applications*. 8: 1156-1169.
- Wigington, P.J., Jr.; Griffith, S.M.; Field, J.A. [and others]. 2003. Nitrate removal effectiveness of a riparian buffer along a small agricultural stream in western Oregon. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 162-170.

Young, E.O.; Briggs, R.D. 2005. Shallow ground water nitrate-N and ammonium-N in cropland and riparian buffers. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 109: 297-309.

Zak, D.R.; Grigal, D.F. 1991. Nitrogen mineralization, nitrification denitrification in upland and wetland ecosystems. *Oecologia*. 88: 189-196.

1.16 Urban runoff and roadsides

Bäckström, M.; Viklander, M.; Malmqvist, P.A. 2006. Transport of stormwater pollutants through a roadside grassed swale. *Urban Water Journal*. 3: 55-67.

Ball, J.E.; Jenks, R.; Aubourg, D. 1998. An assessment of the availability of pollutant constituents on road surfaces. *The Science of the Total Environment*. 209: 243-254.

Bannerman, R.T.; Owens, D.W.; Dodds, R.B.; Hornewer, N.J. 1993. Sources of pollutants in Wisconsin stormwater. *Water Science and Technology*. 28(3-5): 241-259.

Barrett, M.; Lantin, A.; Austrheim-Smith, S. 2004. Stormwater pollutant removal in roadside vegetated buffer strips. *Transportation Research Record*. 1890: 129-140.

Barrett, M.E.; Walsh, P.M.; Malina, J.F., Jr.; Charbeneau, R.J. 1998. Performance of vegetative controls for treating highway runoff. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*. 124: 1121-1128.

Booth, D.B.; Hartey, D.; Jackson, R. 2002. Forest cover, impervious-surface area, and the mitigation of stormwater impacts. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 38: 835-845.

Clar, M.L.; Barfield, B.J.; O'Connor, T.P. 2004. Stormwater best management practice design guide volume 2 vegetative biofilters. EPA/600/R-04/121A. Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. <http://www.epa.gov/nrmrl/pubs/600r04121/600r04121asect2.pdf> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].

Claytor, R.A.; Schueler, T.R. 1996. Design of stormwater filtering systems. Ellicott City, MD: Center for Watershed Protection. http://www.mckenziequality.org/documents/stormwater_filtration_system_design.pdf [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].

Clinton, B.D.; Vose, J.M. 2006. Variation in stream water quality in an urban headwater stream in the southern Appalachians. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 331-353.

Cooper, C.M.; Moore, M.T.; Bennett, E.R. [and others]. 2004. Innovative uses of vegetated drainage ditches for reducing agricultural runoff. *Water Science and Technology* 49(3):117-123.

Deletic, A. 1998. The first flush load of urban surface runoff. *Water Research*. 32: 2462-2470.

Deletic, A.; Fletcher, T.D. 2006. Performance of grass filters used for stormwater treatment – a field and modeling study. *Journal of Hydrology*. 317: 261-275.

Forman, R.T.T.; Alexander, L.E. 1998. Roads and their major ecological effects. *Annual Review of Ecological Systems*. 29: 207-231.

Good, J.C. 1993. Roof runoff as a diffuse source of metals and aquatic toxicity in storm water. *Water Science and Technology*. 28(3-5): 317-321.

Grass, C.M.; Angle, J.S.; Welterlen, M.S. 1990. Nutrient and sediment losses from turfgrass. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 19: 663-668.

Groffman, P.M.; Crawford, M.K. 2003. Denitrification potential in urban riparian zones. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 1144-1149.

Han, J.; Wu, J.S.; Allan, C. 2005. Suspended sediment removal by vegetative filter strip treating highway runoff. *Journal of Environmental Science and Health*. 40: 1637-1649.

Hatt, B.E.; Fletcher, T.D.; Walsh, C.J.; Taylor, S.L. 2004. The influence of urban density and drainage infrastructure on the concentrations and loads of pollutants in the small streams. *Environmental Management*. 34: 112-124.

Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.

Hipp, B.; Alexander, S.; Knowles, T. 1993. Use of resource-efficient plants to reduce nitrogen, phosphorus, and pesticide runoff in residential and commercial landscapes. *Water Science and Technology*. 28(3-5): 205-213.

- Hoffman, E.J.; Latimer, J.S.; Hunt, C.D. [and others]. 1985. Stormwater runoff from highways. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 25: 349-364.
- Isabelle, P.S.; Fooks, L.J.; Keddy, P.A.; Wilson, S.D. 1987. Effects of roadside snowmelt on wetland vegetation: an experimental study. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 25: 57-60.
- Jensen, M.B. 2004. Hydrological conditions for contaminant leaching through highway swales. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 158: 169-180.
- Latimer, J.S.; Hoffman, E.J.; Hoffman, G. [and others]. 1990. Sources of petroleum hydrocarbons in urban runoff. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 52: 1-21.
- Mackenzie, M.J.; Hunter, J.V. 1979. Sources and fates of aromatic compounds in urban stormwater runoff. *Environmental Science and Technology*. 13: 179-183.
- Matteo, M.; Randhir, T.; Bloniarz, D. 2006. Watershed-scale impacts of forest buffers on water quality and runoff in urbanizing environment. *Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management*. 132: 144-152.
- MPCA. 2000. Protecting water quality in urban areas. St. Paul, MN: Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA). <http://www.pca.state.mn.us/water/pubs/sw-bmpmanual.html> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- Moorhead, D.L.; Davis, W.S.; Wolf, C.F. 1998. Coliform densities in urban waters of West Texas. *Journal of Environmental Health*. 60: 14-18.
- Muthukrishnan, S.; Madge, B.; Selvakumar, A. [and others]. 2004. The use of best management practices in urban watersheds. EPA/600/R-04/184. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 271 p. <http://www.epa.gov/nrmrl/pubs/600r04184/600r04184.pdf> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- Oberts, G.L. 1986. Pollutants associated with sand and salt applied to roads in Minnesota. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 22: 479-483.
- Roy, A.H.; Freeman, M.C.; Freeman, B.J.; [and others]. 2006. Importance of riparian forest in urban catchments contingent on sediment and hydrologic regimes. *Environmental Management*. 37: 523-539.
- Sansalone, J.; Koran, J.; Smithson, J.; Buchberger, G. 1998. Physical characteristics of urban roadway solids transported during rain events. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*. 127: 427-440.
- Steinke, K.; Stier, J.C.; Kussow, W.R.; Thompson, A. 2007. Prairie and turf buffer strips for controlling runoff from paved surfaces. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 36: 426-439.
- Whipple, W., Jr.; Hunter, J.V. 1977. Nonpoint sources and planning for water pollution control. *Journal of the Water Pollution Control Federation*. 49: 15-23.
- Wu, J.; Mersie, W.; Atalay, A.; Seybold, C.A. 2003. Copper retention from runoff by switchgrass and tall fescue filter strips. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 58: 67-72.
- Yu, S.L.; Stanford, R.L. 2004. VDOT Manual of Practice for Planning Stormwater Management. Federal Highway Administration, FHWA/VTRC 05-CR5. Charlottesville, VA: Virginia Transportation Research Council. 135 p. http://www.virginiadot.org/vtrc/main/online_reports/pdf/05-cr5.pdf [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- 1.17 Buffers and grazing**
- Bellows, B.C. 2003. Managed grazing in riparian areas. Fayetteville, AR: National Center for Appropriate Technology, Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas. 28 p. <http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/PDF/managedgraze.pdf> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- Belsky, A.J.; Martzke, A. Uselman, S. 1999. Survey of livestock influences on stream and riparian ecosystems in the western United States. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 54: 419-431.
- Byers, H.L.; Cabrera, M.L.; Matthews, M.K. [and others]. 2005. Phosphorus, sediment, and *Escherichia coli* loads in unfenced streams of the Georgia Piedmont, USA. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 2293-2300.
- Chapman, E.W.; Ribic, C.A. 2002. The impact of buffer strips and stream-side grazing on small mammals in southwestern Wisconsin. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 88: 49-59.
- Clark, E.A. 1998. Landscape variables affecting livestock impacts on water quality in the humid temperate zone. *Canadian Journal of Plant Sciences*. 78: 181-190.
- Clary, W.P.; Webster, B.F. 1990. Riparian grazing guidelines for the Intermountain Region. *Rangelands*. 12: 209-211.

- Clary, W.P.; Webster, B.F. 1989. Managing grazing of riparian areas in the Intermountain Region. General Technical Report INT-263. Ogden, UT: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station. 11 p. <http://www.treesearch.fs.fed.us/pubs/24605> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- Fleischner, T.L. 1994. Ecological costs of livestock grazing in western United States. *Conservation Biology*. 8: 629-644.
- Gary, H.L.; Johnson, S.R.; Ponce, S.L. 1983. Cattle grazing impact on surface water quality in a Colorado Front Range stream. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 38: 124-128.
- Gifford, G.F.; Hawkins, R.H. 1978. Hydrologic impact of grazing on infiltration: a critical review. *Water Resources Research*. 14: 305-313.
- Godwin, D.C.; Miner, J.R. 1996. The potential of off-stream livestock watering to reduce water quality impacts. *Bioresource Technology*. 58: 285-290.
- Kauffman, J.B.; Krueger, W.C. 1984. Livestock impacts on riparian ecosystems and streamside management implications....a review. *Journal of Range Management*. 37: 430-437.
- Kauffman, J.B.; Krueger, W.C.; Vavra, M. 1983. Impacts of cattle on streambanks in north-eastern Oregon. *Journal of Range Management*. 36: 683-691.
- Kauffman, J.B.; Thorpe, A.S.; Brookshire, E.N.J. 2004. Livestock exclusion and belowground ecosystems responses in riparian meadows of eastern Oregon. *Ecological Applications*. 14: 1671-1679.
- McEldowney, R.R.; Flenniken, M.; Fraiser, G.W. [and others]. 2002. Sediment movement and filtration in a riparian meadow following cattle use. *Journal of Range Management*. 55: 367-373.
- Meehan, W.R.; Platts, W.S. 1978. Livestock grazing and the aquatic environment. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 33: 274-278.
- Orr, H.K. 1960. Soil porosity and bulk density on grazed and protected Kentucky bluegrass range in the Black Hills. *Journal of Range Management*. 13: 80-86.
- Owens, L.B.; Edwards, W.M.; Van Keuren, R.W. 1989. Sediment and nutrient losses from an unimproved, all-year grazed watershed. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 18: 232-238.
- Owens, L.B.; Edwards, W.M.; Van Keuren, R.W. 1996. Sediment losses from a pastured watershed before and after fencing. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 51: 90-94.
- Paine, L.K.; Ribic, C.A. 2002. Comparison of riparian plant communities under four land management systems in southwestern Wisconsin. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 92: 93-105.
- Pietola, L.; Horn, R.; Yli-Halla, M. 2005. Effects of trampling by cattle on the hydraulic and mechanical properties of soil. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 82: 99-108.
- Platts, W.S.; Wagstaff, F.J. 1984. Fencing to control livestock grazing on riparian habitats along streams: is it a viable alternative? *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 4: 266-272.
- Pluhar, J.J.; Knight, R.W.; Heitschmidt, R.K. 1987. Infiltration rates and sediment production as influenced by grazing systems in the Texas Rolling Plains. *Journal of Range Management*. 40: 240-243.
- Schepers, J.S.; Francis, D.D. 1982. Chemical water quality of runoff from grazing land in Nebraska: influence of grazing livestock. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 11: 351-354.
- Schulz, T.T.; Lenger, W.W. 1990. Differences in riparian vegetation structure between grazed areas and exclosures. *Journal of Range Management*. 43: 295-299.
- Scrimgeour, G.J.; Kendall, S. 2002. Consequences of livestock grazing on water quality and benthic algal biomass in a Canadian natural grassland plateau. *Environmental Management*. 29: 824-844.
- Smith, C.M. 1989. Riparian pasture retirement effects on sediment, phosphorus, and nitrogen in channelised surface runoff from pastures. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*. 23: 139-146.
- Sovell, L.A.; Vondracek, B.; Frost, J.A.; Mumford, K.G. 2000. Impacts of rotational grazing and riparian buffers on physiochemical and biological characteristics of southeastern Minnesota, USA, streams. *Environmental Management*. 26: 629-641.
- Thompson, J.R. 1968. Effect of grazing on infiltration in a western watershed. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 23: 63-65.

Tiedemann, A.R.; Higgins, D.A.; Quigley, T.M. [and others]. 1987. Responses of fecal coliform in streamwater to four grazing strategies. *Journal of Range Management*. 40: 322-329.

Trimble, S.W. 1994. Erosional effects of cattle on streambanks in Tennessee, U.S.A. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. 19: 451-464.

Trimble, S.W.; Mendel, A.C. 1995. The cow as a geomorphic agent – a critical review. *Geomorphology*. 13: 233-253.

Tromble, J.M.; Renard, K.G.; Thatcher, A.P. 1974. Infiltration for three rangeland soil-vegetation complexes. *Journal of Range Management*. 27: 318-321.

Wheeler, M.A.; Trlica, M.J.; Frasier, G.W.; Reeder, J.D. 2002. Seasonal grazing affects soil properties of a montane riparian community. *Journal of Range Management*. 55: 49-56.

1.18 Allowances for bank erosion

Abernethy, B.; Rutherford, I.D. 1999. Guidelines for stabilising streambanks with riparian vegetation. Technical Report 99/10. Melbourne, Australia: Cooperative Research Centre for Catchment Hydrology. 37 p.
<http://www.catchment.crc.org.au/pdfs/technical199910.pdf> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].

Abernethy, B.; Rutherford, I.D. 2000. Stabilising stream banks with riparian vegetation. *Journal of the Australian Association of Natural Resource Management*. 3(2): 2-9.

Beeson, C.E.; Doyle, P.F. 1995. Comparison of bank erosion at vegetated and non-vegetated channel bends. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 31: 983-990.

Burckhardt, J.C.; Todd, B.L. 1998. Riparian forest effect on lateral stream channel migration in the glacial till plains. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 34: 179-184.

Harmel, R.D.; Haan, C.T.; Dutnell, R. 1999. Bank erosion and riparian vegetation influences: Upper Illinois River, Oklahoma. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 42: 1321-1329.

Micheli, E.R.; Kirchner, J.W.; Larsen, W.W. 2004. Quantifying the effect of riparian forest versus agricultural vegetation on river meander migration rates, Central Sacramento, California, USA. *River Research and Applications*. 20: 537-548.

Pizzuto, J.E.; Meckelnburg, T.S. 1989. Evaluation of a linear bank erosion equation. *Water Resources Research*. 25: 1005-1013.

Smith, D.G. 1976. Effect of vegetation on lateral migration of anastomosed channels of a glacier meltwater river. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. 87: 857-860.

Wynn, T.; Mostaghimi, S. 2006. The effects of vegetation and soil type on streambank erosion, southwestern Virginia, USA. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 42: 69-82.

Zaimes, G.N.; Schultz, R.C.; Isenhardt, T.M. 2004. Stream bank erosion adjacent to riparian forest buffers, row-crop fields, and continuously grazed pastures along Bear Creek in central Iowa. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 59: 19-27.

1.19 Buffer width design tool for surface runoff

Abu-Zreig, M.R.; Rudra, P.; Whiteclay, H.R. 2001. Validation of a vegetated filter strip model (VSFMOD). *Hydrological Processes*. 15: 729-742.

Barfield, B.J.; Tollner, E.W.; Hayes, J.C. 1979. Filtration of sediment by simulated vegetation. I Steady-state flow with homogeneous sediment. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 540-545, 548.

Castelle, A.J.; Johnson, A.W.; Conolly, C. 1994. Wetland and stream buffer requirements – a review. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 23: 878-882.

Dittrich, T.M.; Geohring, L.D.; Walter, M.T.; Steenhuis, T.S. 2003. Revisiting buffer strip design standards for removing dissolved and particulate phosphorus. In: Saleh, A., ed. Total maximum daily loads (TMDL) environmental regulations – II. Publication Number 701o1503. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 527-534.

Flanagan, D.C.; Foster, G.R.; Neibling, W.H.; Burt, J.P. 1989. Simplified equations for filter strip design. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 2001-2007.

Hayes, J.C.; Bayfield, B.J.; Barnhisel, R.I. 1979. Filtration of sediment by simulated vegetation II. Unsteady flow with non-homogeneous sediment. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 1063-1067.

Hayes, J.C.; Bayfield, B.J.; Barnhisel, R.I. 1984. Performance of grass filters under laboratory and field conditions. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 27: 1321-1331.

- Hayes, J.C.; Dillaha, T.A. 1992. Vegetative filter strips: I. Site suitability and design. Paper No. 92-2102. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.
- Hayes, J.C.; Hairston, J.E. 1983. Modeling long-term effectiveness of vegetative filters as on-site sediment controls. Paper No. 83-2081. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.
- Helmers, M.J.; Eisenhauer, D.E.; Dosskey, M.G.G.; Franti, T.G. 2002. Modeling vegetative filter performance with VSFMOD. Paper No. MC02-308. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.
- Larson, W.E.; Lindstrom, M.J.; Schumacher, T.E. 1997. The role of severe storms in soil erosion: a problem needing consideration. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 52: 90-95.
- Lowrance, R.R.; Altier, L.S.; Dewbold, J.D. [and others]. 1997. Water quality functions of riparian forest buffers in Chesapeake Bay watersheds. *Environmental Management*. 21: 687-712.
- McKague, K.J.; Cao, Y.Z.; Stephenson, D.E. 1996. The CREAMS model for evaluating the effectiveness of buffer strips in reducing sediment loads to wetlands. In: Mulamootil, G.; Warner, B.G.; McBean, E.A., eds. *Wetlands: environmental gradients, boundaries, and buffers*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC, Lewis Publishers. 252-261.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E. 2000. VFSMOD. Version 1.04. User's Guide. Raleigh, NC: North Carolina State University. <http://carpena.ifas.ufl.edu/vfsmo/> [Date accessed; October 17, 2007].
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E. 2004. A design procedure for vegetative filter strips using VSFMOD-W. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 47: 1933-1941.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1993. Numerical approach to the overland flow process in vegetative filter strips. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 36: 761-770.
- Muñoz-Carpena, R.J.; Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W. 1999. Modeling hydrology and sediment transport in vegetative filter strips. *Journal of Hydrology*. 214: 111-129.
- Neitsch, S.L.; Arnold, J.G.; Kiniry, J.R. [and others]. 2002. Soil and water assessment tool: theoretical documentation. Version 2000. Report TR-191. College Station, TX: Texas Water Resources Institute. 506 p. <http://www.brc.tamus.edu/swat/doc.html> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- Nieswand, G.H.; Hordon, R.M.; Shelton, T.B. [and others]. 1990. Buffer strips to protect water supply reservoirs: a model and recommendations. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 26: 959-966.
- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Evaluation of the factors determining the effectiveness of water quality buffer zones. *Journal of Hydrology*. 107: 133-145.
- Phillips, J.D. 1989. Nonpoint source pollution control effectiveness of riparian forests along a Coastal Plain river. *Journal of Hydrology*. 110: 221-237.
- Schultz, R.C.; Colletti, J.P.; Isenhardt, T.M. [and others]. 1995. Design and placement of a multi-species riparian buffer strip system. *Agroforestry Systems* 29:201-226.
- Stettler, D. 1994. Vegetative filter strip design: draft. Portland, OR: USDA Soil Conservation Service, Western National Technical Center.
- Suwandono, L.; Parsons, J.E.; Muñoz-Carpena, R. 1999. Design guide for vegetative filter strips using VSFMOD. Paper No. 99-2147. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.
- Tollner, E.W.; Barfield, B.J.; Haan, C.T.; Kao, T.Y. 1976. Suspended sediment filtration capacity of simulated vegetation. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 19: 678-682.

Tollner, E.W.; Barfield, B.J.; Vachirakornwatana, C.; Haan, C.T. 1977. Sediment deposition patterns in simulated grass filters. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 20: 940-944.

Trimble, G.R., Jr.; Sartz, R.S. 1957. How far from a stream should a logging road be located? *Journal of Forestry*. 55: 339-341.

USDA. 1997. National handbook of conservation practices. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service. Available at <http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/standards/nhcp.html> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].

Welsch, D.J. 1991. Riparian forest buffers: function and design for protection and enhancement of water resources. NA-PR-07-91. Broomall, PA: U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Area State and Private Forestry. <http://www.treesearch.fs.fed.us/pubs/10955> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].

Wenger, S. 1999. A review of the scientific literature on riparian buffer width, extent, and vegetation. Athens, GA: University of Georgia, Institute of Ecology, Office of Public Service and Outreach. 59 p. http://www.rivercenter.uga.edu/service/tools/buffers/buffer_lit_review.pdf [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].

Williams, R.D.; Nicks, A.D. 1988. Using CREAMS to simulate filter strip effectiveness in erosion control. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 43: 108-112.

Williams, R.D.; Nicks, A.D. 1993. Modelling approach to evaluate best management practices. *Water Science and Technology*. 28(3-5): 675-678.

Wong, S.L.; McCuen, R.H. 1982. The design of vegetative buffer strips for runoff and sediment control. Appendix J. In: McCuen, R.H., ed. *Stormwater management in coastal areas*. College Park, MD: University of Maryland, Department of Civil Engineering.

Xiang, W.N. 1996. GIS-based riparian buffer analysis: injecting geographic information into landscape planning. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 34: 1-10.

1.20 Vegetation for removing pollutants from runoff

Corre, M.D.; Schnabel, R.R.; Shaffer, J.A. 1999. Evaluation of soil organic carbon under forests, cool-season and warm-season grasses in Northeastern US. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 31: 1531-1539.

Dieleman, J. A.; Mortensen, D.A.; Buhler, D.D. [and others]. 2000. Identifying associations among site properties and weed species abundance. I. Multivariate analysis. *Weed Science*. 48: 567-575.

Fennessy, M.S.; Cronk, J.K. 1997. The effectiveness and restoration potential of riparian ecotones for the management of nonpoint source pollution, particularly nitrate. *Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology*. 27: 285-317.

Kelly, J.M.; Kovar, J.L.; Sokolowsky, R.; Moorman, T.B. 2007. Phosphorus uptake during four years by different vegetative cover types in a riparian buffer. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*. 78: 239-251.

Lowrance, R.; Williams, R.G.; Inamdar, S.P. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of coastal plain conservation buffers using the riparian ecosystem management model. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1445-1456.

Lyons, J.; Trimble, S.W.; Paine, L.K. 2000. Grass versus trees: managing riparian areas to benefit streams of central North America. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 36: 919-930.

Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.

Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W.; Muñoz-Carpena, R.M. [and others]. 1994. Nutrient and sediment removal by grass and riparian buffers. In: Campbell, K.L.; Graham, W.D.; Bottcher, A.B., eds. *Environmentally sound agriculture: proceedings of the 2nd annual conference*. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 147-154.

Paterson, K.G.; Schnoor, J.L. 1993. Vegetative alteration of nitrate fate in unsaturated zone. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*. 119: 986-993.

Pinay, G.; Clement, J.C.; Naiman, R.J. 2002. Basic principles and ecological consequences of changing water regimes on nitrogen cycling in fluvial systems. *Environmental Management*. 30: 481-491.

Rejmanek, M.; Richardson, D.M. 1996. What attributes make some plant species more invasive? *Ecology*. 77: 1655-1661.

Schippers, P.; Joenje, W. 2002. Modeling the effect of fertilizer, mowing, disturbance and width on biodiversity of plant communities of field boundaries. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 93: 351-365.

Schnabel, R.R.; Cornish, L.F.; Stout, W.L.; Shaffer, J.A. 1996. Denitrification in a grassed and a wooded, valley and ridge, riparian ecotone. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 25: 1230-1235.

Schoonover, J.E.; Williard, K.W.J.; Zaczek, J.J. [and others]. 2006. Agricultural sediment reductions by giant cane and forest riparian buffers. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 303-315.

Schultz, R.C.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Simpkins, W.W.; Colletti, J.P. 2004. Riparian forest buffers in Agroecosystems – lessons learned from the Bear Creek Watershed, central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 35-50.

Snyder, N.J.; Mostaghimi, S.; Berry, D.F. [and others]. 1998. Impact of riparian forest buffers on agricultural nonpoint source pollution. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 34: 385-395.

Stohlgren, T.J.; Binkley, D.; Chong, G.W. [and others]. 1999. Exotic plant species invade hot spots of native plant diversity. *Ecological Monographs*. 69: 25-46.

Svejcar, T. 2003. Applying ecological principles to wildland weed management. *Weed Science*. 51: 266–270.

Syversen, N. 2005. Effect and design of buffer zones in the Nordic climate: the influence of width, amount of surface runoff, season variation and vegetation type on retention efficiency for nutrient and particle runoff. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 483-490.

Tomer, M.D.; Moorman, T.B.; Kovar, J.L. [and others]. 2007. Spatial patterns of sediment and phosphorus in a riparian buffer in western Iowa. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 329-338.

Tufekcioglu, A.; Raich, J.W.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 1999. Fine root dynamics, coarse root biomass, root distribution, and soil respiration in a Multispecies riparian buffer in Central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 163-174.

1.21 Stiff-stemmed grass barriers

Blanco-Canqui, H.; Gantzer, C.J.; Anderson, S.H. [and others]. 2004. Grass barrier and vegetative filter strip effectiveness in reducing runoff, sediment, nitrogen, and phosphorus loss. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 68: 1670-1678.

Blanco-Canqui, H.; Gantzer, C.J.; Anderson, S.H.; Alberts, E.E. 2004. Grass barriers for reduced concentrated flow induced soil and nutrient loss. *Soil Society of America Journal*. 68: 1963-1972.

Blanco-Canqui, H.; Gantzer, C.J.; Anderson, S.H. 2006. Performance of grass barriers and filter strips under interrill and concentrated flow. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 35: 1969-1974.

Dabney, S.M.; Liu, Z.; Lane, M. [and others]. 1999. Landscape benching from tillage erosion between grass hedges. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 51: 219-234.

Dabney, S.M.; Meyer, L.D.; Harmon, W.C. [and others]. 1995. Depositional patterns of sediment trapped by grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 38:1719-1729.

Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.

Dabney, S.M.; Shields, F.D., Jr.; Temple, D.M.; Langendoen, E.J. 2004. Erosion processes in gullies modified by establishing grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 47: 1561-1571.

Dewald, C.L.; Henry, J.; Bruckerhoff, S. [and others]. 1996. Guidelines for establishing warm season grass hedges for erosion control. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 51: 16-20.

Dillaha, T.A.; Reneau, R.B.; Mostaghimi, S.; Lee, D. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 32: 513-519.

Eghball, B.; Gilley, J.E.; Kramer, L.A.; Moorman, T.B. 2000. Narrow grass hedge effects on phosphorus and nitrogen in runoff following manure and fertilizer application. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 172-176.

Gilley, J.E.; Eghball, B.; Kramer, L.A.; Moorman, T.B. 2000. Narrow grass hedge effects on runoff and soil loss. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 190-196.

Hayes, J.C.; Barfield, B.J.; Barnhisel, R.I. 1984. Performance of grass filters under laboratory and field conditions. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 27: 1321-1331.

Jin, C.X.; Dabney, S.M.; Römkens, M.J.M. 2002. Trapped mulch increases sediment removal by vegetative filter strips: a flume study. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 45: 929-939.

McGregor, K.C.; Dabney, S.M.; Johnson, J.R. 1999. Runoff and soil loss from cotton plots with and without stiff-grass hedges. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 42: 361-368.

Meyer, L.D.; Dabney, S.M.; Harmon, W.C. 1995. Sediment-trapping effectiveness of stiff-grass hedges. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 38: 809-815.

Owino, J.O.; Owido, S.F.O.; Chemelil, M.C. 2006. Nutrients in runoff from a clay loam soil protected by narrow grass strips. Soil and Tillage Research. 88: 116-122.

Rachman, A.; Anderson, S.H.; Gantzer, C.J.; Alberts, E.E. 2004. Influence of stiff-stemmed grass hedge systems on infiltration. Soil Science Society of America Journal. 68: 1386-1393.

Rachman, A.; Anderson, S.H.; Gantzer, C.J.; Thompson, A.L. 2004. Influence of stiff-stemmed grass hedge systems on infiltration. Soil Science Society of America Journal. 68: 2000-2006.

Sharma, K.D.; Joshi, N.L.; Singh, H.P. [and others]. 1999. Study on the performance of contour vegetative barriers in an arid region using numerical models. Agricultural Water Management. 41: 41-56.

Thapa, B.B.; Cassel, D.K.; Garrity, D.P. 1999. Ridge tillage and contour natural grass barrier strips reduce tillage erosion. Soil and Tillage Research. 51: 341-356.

USDA. 1999. Vegetative barriers for erosion control. Kingsville, TX: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, Kika de la Garza Plant Materials Center. 20 p. <http://www.plant-materials.nrcs.usda.gov/pubs/stpmcbr1452.pdf>. [Date accessed September 27, 2007].

1.22 Vegetation for bank erosion control

Abernethy, B.; Rutherford, I.D. 1998. Where along a river's length will vegetation most effectively stabilize stream banks? Geomorphology. 23: 55-75.

Abernethy, B.; Rutherford, I.D. 2000. The effect of riparian tree roots on the mass-stability of riverbanks. Earth Surface Process and Landforms. 25: 921-937.

Abernethy, B.; Rutherford, I.D. 2000. Does the weight of riparian trees destabilize riverbanks. Regulated Rivers: Research and Management. 16: 565-576.

Abernethy, B.; Rutherford, I.D. 2001. The distribution and strength of riparian tree roots in relation to riverbank reinforcement. Hydrological Processes. 15: 63-79.

Allmendinger, N.E.; Pizzuto, J.E.; Potter, N., Jr. [and others]. 2005. The influence of riparian vegetation on stream width, eastern Pennsylvania, USA. Geological Society of America Bulletin. 117: 229-243.

Dunaway, D.; Swanson, S.R.; Wendel, J.; Clary, W. 1994. The effects of herbaceous plant communities and soil textures on particle erosion of alluvial streambanks. Geomorphology. 9: 47-56.

Easson, G.; Yarbrough, L.D. 2002. The effects of riparian vegetation on bank stability. Environmental and Engineering Geoscience. 8: 247-260.

Geyer, W.A.; Neppi, T.; Brooks, K.; Carlisle, J. 2000. Woody vegetation protects streambank stability during the 1993 flood in central Kansas. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation. 55: 483-488.

Gray, D.H.; Leiser, A.T. 1982. Biotechnical slope protection. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Co. 271 p.

Hathaway, R.L.; Penny, D. 1975. Root strength in some *Populus* and *Salix* clones. New Zealand Journal of Botany. 13: 333-344.

Kleinfelder, D.; Swanson, S.; Norris, G.; Clary, W. 1992. Unconfined compressive strength of some streambank soils with herbaceous roots. Soil Science Society of America Journal. 56: 1920-1925.

Lyons, J.; Trimble, S.W.; Paine, L.K. 2000. Grass versus trees: managing riparian areas to benefit streams of central North America. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. 36: 919-930.

Micheli, E.R.; Kirchner, J.W. 2002. Effects of wet meadow riparian vegetation on streambank erosion. 2. Measurements of vegetated bank strength and consequences for failure mechanics. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms. 27: 687-697.

Montgomery, D.R. 1997. What's best on the banks? Nature. 388: 328-329.

Murgatroyd, A.L.; Ternan, J.L. 1983. The impact of afforestation on streambank erosion and channel form. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms. 8: 357-369.

Pollen, N. 2007. Temporal and spatial variability in root reinforcement of streambanks: accounting for soil shear strength and moisture. Catena. 69: 197-205.

Pollen, N.; Simon, A.; Collison, A. 2004. Advances in assessing the mechanical and hydrologic effects of riparian vegetation on streambank stability. In: Bennett, S.J.; Simon, A., eds. Riparian vegetation and fluvial geomorphology: water science and application 8. Washington, DC: American Geophysical Union. 125-139.

Riestenberg, M.M.; Sovonick-Dunford, S. 1983. The role of woody vegetation in stabilizing slopes in the Cincinnati area, Ohio. Geological Society of America Bulletin. 94: 506-518.

Simon, A.; Pollen, N.; Langendoen, E. 2006. Influence of two woody riparian species on critical conditions for streambank stability: Upper Truckee River, CA. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. 42: 99-113.

Simon, A.; Collison, A. 2002. Quantifying the mechanical and hydrologic effects of riparian vegetation on streambank stability. Earth Surface Process and Landforms. 27: 527-546.

Smith, D.G. 1976. Effect of vegetation on lateral migration of anastomosed channels of a glacier meltwater river. Geological Society of America Bulletin. 87: 857-860.

Steinblums, I.J.; Froehlich, H.A.; Lyons, J.K. 1984. Designing stable buffer strips for stream protection. Journal of Forestry. 82: 49-52.

Stott, T. 1997. A comparison of stream bank erosion processes on forested and moorland streams in the Balquhider catchments, central Scotland. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 22:383-399.

Toledo, Z.; Kauffman, J.B. 2001. Root biomass in relation to channel morphology of headwater streams. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. 37: 1653-1663.

Trimble, S.W. 1997. Stream channel erosion and changes resulting from riparian forests. Geology. 25: 467-469.

Trimble, S.W. 2004. Effects of riparian vegetation on stream channel stability and sediment budgets. In: Bennett, S.J.; Simon, A., eds. Riparian vegetation and fluvial geomorphology: Water Science and Application 8. A comparison of stream bank erosion processes on forested and moorland streams in the Balquhider catchments, central Scotland. American Geophysical Union. 153-169.

Waldron, L.J.; Dakessian, S. 1982. Effect of grass, legume, and tree roots on soil shearing resistance. Soil Science Society American Journal. 46: 894-899.

Wynn, T.; Mostaghimi, S. 2006. The effects of vegetation and soil type on streambank erosion, southwestern Virginia, USA. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. 42: 69-82.

Wynn, T.; Mostaghimi, S. 2003. Riparian vegetation effects on freeze-thaw cycling and desiccation of stream bank soils. Paper No. 032129. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.

Wynn, T.M.; Mostaghimi, S.; Burger, J.H. [and others]. 2004. Variation in root density along stream banks. Journal of Environmental Quality. 33: 2030-2039.

1.23 [In-stream pollution removal](#)

Bernhardt, E.S.; Hall, R.O.; Likens, G.E. 2002. Whole-system estimates of nitrification and nitrate uptake in streams of the Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest. Ecosystems. 5: 419-430.

Bernhardt, E.S.; Likens, G.E.; Busco, D.C.; Driscoll, C.T. 2003. In-stream uptake dampens effects of major forest disturbance on watershed nitrogen export. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences. 100: 10304-10308.

Bernhardt, E.S.; Likens, G.E.; Hall, R.O. [and others]. 2005. Can't see the forest for the stream? – In-stream processing and terrestrial nitrogen exports. BioSciences. 55: 219-230.

Bohlke, J.K.; Denver, J.M. 1995. Combined use of groundwater dating, chemical, and isotopic analyses to resolve the history and fate of nitrate contamination in two agricultural watersheds, Atlantic coastal plain, Maryland. Water Resources Research. 31: 2319-2340.

Cooke, J.G.; White, R.E. 1987. Spatial distribution of denitrifying activity in a stream draining an agricultural catchment. Freshwater Biology. 18: 509-519.

Cooper, A.B. 1990. Nitrate depletion in the riparian zone and stream channel of a small headwater catchment. Hydrobiologia. 202: 13-26.

Dosskey, M.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. Environmental Management 28:577-598.

Dudley, S.J.; Fischenich, J.C.; Abt, S.R. 1998. Effect of wood debris entrapment on flow resistance. Journal of American Water Resources Association. 34: 1189-1197.

- Duff, J.H.; Triska, F.J. 1990. Denitrification in sediments from the hyporheic zone adjacent to a small forested stream. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 47: 1140-1147.
- Groffman, P.M.; Dorsey, A.M.; Mayer, P.M. 2005. N processing within geomorphic structures in urban streams. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society*. 24: 613-625.
- Gurtz, M.M.; Marzolf, G.R.; Killingbeck, K.T. [and others]. 1988. Hydrologic and riparian influences on the import and storage of coarse particulate organic matter in a prairie stream. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 45: 655-665.
- Hill, A.R. 1983. Denitrification: its importance in a river draining an intensively cropped watershed. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 10: 47-62.
- Hill, A.R. 1997. The potential role of in-stream and hyporheic environments as buffer zones. In: Haycock, N.E.; Burt, T.P.; Goulding, K.W.T.; Pinay, G., eds. *Buffer zones: their processes and potential in water protection*. Hartfordshire, UK: Quest Environmental. 115-127.
- Jansson, M.; Leonardson, L.; Fejes, J. 1994. Denitrification and nitrogen retention in a farmland stream in southern Sweden. *Ambio*. 23: 326-331.
- Martin, L.A.; Mulholland, P.J.; Webster, J.R.; Valett, H.M. 2001. Denitrification potential in sediments of headwater streams in the southern Appalachian Mountains, USA. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society*. 20: 505-519.
- Meyer, J.L.; Likens, G.E. 1979. Transport and transformation of phosphorus in a forest stream ecosystem. *Ecology*. 60: 1255-1269.
- O'Brien, J.M.; Williard, K.W.J. 2006. Potential denitrification rates in an agricultural stream in southern Illinois. *Journal of Freshwater Ecology*. 21: 157-162.
- Peterson, B.J.; Wollheim, W.M.; Mulholland, P.J. [and others]. 2001. Control of nitrogen export from watersheds by headwater streams. *Science*. 292: 86-90.
- Royer, T.V.; Tank, J.L.; David, M.B. 2004. Transport and fate of nitrate in headwater agricultural streams in Illinois. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 33: 1296-1304.
- Sweeney, B.W.; Bott, T.L.; Jackson, J.K. [and others]. 2004. Riparian deforestation, stream narrowing, and loss of stream ecosystem services. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science*. 101: 14132-14137.
- Triska, F.J.; Duff, J.H.; Avanzino, R.J. 1993. The role of water exchange between a stream channel and its hyporheic zone in nitrogen cycling at the terrestrial-aquatic interface. *Hydrobiologia*. 251: 167-184.

1.24 Species selection

- Corre, M.D.; Schnabel, R.R.; Shaffer, J.A. 1999. Evaluation of soil organic carbon under forests, cool-season and warm-season grasses in Northeastern US. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 31: 1531-1539.
- Fennessy, M.S.; Cronk, J.K. 1997. The effectiveness and restoration potential of riparian ecotones for the management of nonpoint source pollution, particularly nitrate. *Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology*. 27: 285-317.
- Kelly, J.M.; Kovar, J.L.; Sokolowsky, R.; Moorman, T.B. 2007. Phosphorus uptake during four years by different vegetative cover types in a riparian buffer. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*. 78: 239-251.
- Lowrance, R.; Williams, R.G.; Inamdar, S.P. [and others]. 2001. Evaluation of coastal plain conservation buffers using the riparian ecosystem management model. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 37: 1445-1456.
- Lyons, J.; Trimble, S.W.; Paine, L.K. 2000. Grass versus trees: managing riparian areas to benefit streams of central North America. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 36: 919-930.
- Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.
- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].
- Parsons, J.E.; Gilliam, J.W.; Muñoz-Carpena, R.M. [and others]. 1994. Nutrient and sediment removal by grass and riparian buffers. In: Campbell, K.L.; Graham, W.D.; Bottcher, A.B., eds. *Environmentally sound agriculture: proceedings of the 2nd annual conference*. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers. 147-154.

- Paterson, K.G.; Schnoor, J.L. 1993. Vegetative alteration of nitrate fate in unsaturated zone. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*. 119: 986-993.
- Pinay, G.; Clement, J.C.; Naiman, R.J. 2002. Basic principles and ecological consequences of changing water regimes on nitrogen cycling in fluvial systems. *Environmental Management*. 30: 481-491.
- Rejmanek, M.; Richardson, D.M. 1996. What attributes make some plant species more invasive? *Ecology*. 77: 1655-1661.
- Schippers, P.; Joenje, W. 2002. Modeling the effect of fertilizer, mowing, disturbance and width on biodiversity of plant communities of field boundaries. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 93: 351-365.
- Schnabel, R.R.; Cornish, L.F.; Stout, W.L.; Shaffer, J.A. 1996. Denitrification in a grassed and a wooded, valley and ridge, riparian ecotone. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 25: 1230-1235.
- Schoonover, J.E.; Williard, K.W.J.; Zaczek, J.J. [and others]. 2006. Agricultural sediment reductions by giant cane and forest riparian buffers. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 169: 303-315.
- Schultz, R.C.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Simpkins, W.W.; Colletti, J.P. 2004. Riparian forest buffers in Agroecosystems – lessons learned from the Bear Creek Watershed, central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 35-50.
- Snyder, N.J.; Mostaghimi, S.; Berry, D.F. [and others]. 1998. Impact of riparian forest buffers on agricultural nonpoint source pollution. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 34: 385-395.
- Stohlgren, T.J.; Binkley, D.; Chong, G.W. [and others]. 1999. Exotic plant species invade hot spots of native plant diversity. *Ecological Monographs* 69:25-46.
- Svejcar, T. 2003. Applying ecological principles to wildland weed management. *Weed Science*. 51: 266–270.
- Syversen, N. 2005. Effect and design of buffer zones in the Nordic climate: the influence of width, amount of surface runoff, season variation and vegetation type on retention efficiency for nutrient and particle runoff. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 483-490.

1.25 Sediment removal

- Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.
- Dillaha, T.A.; Inamdar, S.P. 1997. Buffer zones as sediment traps or sources. In: Haycock, N.E.; Burt, T.P.; Goulding, K.W.T.; Pinay, G., eds. *Buffer zones: their processes and potential in water protection*. Hartfordshire, UK: Quest Environmental. 33-42.
- Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrard, J.H.; Lee, D. 1989. Long-term effectiveness and maintenance of vegetative filter strips. *Water Environment and Technology*. 1: 418-421.
- Dillaha, T.A.; Sherrard, J.H.; Lee, D. 1986. Long-term effectiveness and maintenance of vegetative filter strips. VPI-VWRRRC-Bull. 153. Blacksburg, VA: Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University. 31 p.
<http://www.vwrrc.vt.edu/publications/Bulletin%20153.pdf> [Date accessed: October 18, 2007].
- Palone, R.S.; Todd, A.H. 1997. Chesapeake Bay riparian handbook: a guide for establishing and maintaining riparian forest buffers. NA-TP-02-97. Randor, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern State and Private Forestry. <http://www.chesapeakebay.net/pubs/subcommittee/nsc/forest/handbook.htm> [Date accessed: October 17, 2007].

1.26 Harvesting for nutrient removal

- Bedard-Haughn, A.; Tate, K.W.; van Kessel, C. 2005. Quantifying the impact of regular cutting on vegetative buffer efficacy for nitrogen-15 sequestration. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 34: 1651-1664.
- Di, H.J.; Cameron, K.C. 2002. Nitrate leaching in temperate Agroecosystems: sources, factors, and mitigating strategies. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*. 64: 237-256.
- Dosskey, M.G. 2001. Toward quantifying water pollution abatement in response to installing buffers on crop land. *Environmental Management*. 28: 577-598.
- Haycock, N.E.; Muscutt, A.D. 1995. Landscape management strategies for the control of diffuse pollution. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 313-321.
- Hefting, M.M.; Clement, J.C.; Bienkowski, P. [and others]. 2005. The role of vegetation and litter in the nitrogen dynamics of riparian buffer zones in Europe. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 465-482.

- Kelly, J.M.; Kovar, J.L.; Sokolowsky, R.; Moorman, T.B. 2007. Phosphorus uptake during four years by different vegetative cover types in a riparian buffer. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*. 78: 239-251.
- Mander, Ü.; Kuusemets, V.; Ivask, M. 1995. Nutrient dynamics of riparian ecotones: a case study from the the Porijõgi River catchment, Estonia. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 333-348.
- Mander, Ü.; Kuusemets, V.; Lõhums, K.; Muring, T. 1997. Efficiency and dimensioning of riparian buffer zones in agricultural catchments. *Ecological Engineering*. 8: 299-324.
- Matheson, F.E.; Nguyen, M.L.; Cooper, A.B. [and others]. 2002. Fate of ¹⁵N-nitrate in unplanted, planted and harvested riparian wetland soil microcosms. *Ecological Engineering*. 19: 249-264.
- Reynolds, J.H.; Walker, C.L.; Kirchner, M.J. 2000. Nitrogen removal in switchgrass biomass under two harvest systems. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 19: 281-286.
- Schenk, M.K. 1996. Regulation of nitrogen uptake on the whole plant level. *Plant and Soil*. 181: 131-137.
- Sheridan, J.M.; Lowrance, R.; Bosch, D.D. 1999. Management effects on runoff and sediment transport in riparian forest buffers. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 42: 55-64.
- Vought, L.B.; Pinay, G.; Fuglsang, A.; Ruffinoni, C. 1995. Structure and function of buffer strips from a water quality perspective in agricultural landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 31: 323-331.

1.27 Plant succession

- Dieleman, J.A.; Mortensen, D.A.; Buhler, D.D. [and others]. 2000. Identifying associations among site properties and weed species abundance. I. Multivariate analysis. *Weed Science*. 48: 567-575.
- Dosskey, M.G.G.; Hoagland, K.D.; Brandle, J.R. 2007. Change in filter strip performance over ten years. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 62: 21-32.
- Leishman, M.R.; Hughes, M.T.; Gore, D.B. 2004. Soil phosphorus enhancement below stormwater outlets in urban bushland: spatial and temporal changes and the relationship of invasive plants. *Australian Journal of Soil Research*. 42: 197-202.
- Rejmanek, M.; Richardson, D.M. 1996. What attributes make some plant species more invasive? *Ecology*. 77: 1655-1661.
- Stohlgren, T.J.; Binkley, D.; Chong, G.W. [and others]. 1999. Exotic plant species invade hot spots of native plant diversity. *Ecological Monographs*. 69: 25-46.

1.28 Vegetation and traffic

- Alakukku, L. 1996. Persistence of soil compaction due to high axle load traffic. II. Long-term effects on the properties of fine-textured and organic soils. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 37: 223-238.
- Bakken, L.R.; Børresen, T.; Njøs, A. 1987. Effect of soil compaction by tractor traffic on soil structure, denitrification, and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*). *Journal of Soil Science*. 38: 541-552.
- Hamza, M.A.; W.K. Anderson. 2005. Soil compaction in cropping systems: a review of the nature, causes, and possible solutions. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 82: 121-145.
- Kozłowski, T.T. 1999. Soil compaction and growth of woody plants. *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research*. 14: 596-619.
- Lehvävirta, S. 1999. Structural elements as barriers against wear in urban woodlands. *Urban Ecosystems*. 3: 45-56.

2.0 Biodiversity

2.1 Matrix primer

- Andren, H. 1994. Effects of habitat fragmentation on birds and mammals in landscapes with different proportions of suitable habitat: a review. *Oikos*. 71: 355-366.
- As, S. 1999. Invasion of matrix species in small habitat patches. *Conservation Ecology*. 3(1): 1. <http://www.consecol.org/vol3/iss1/art1> [Date accessed: July 18, 2007].
- Baudry, J.; Burel, F.; Aviron, S. [and others]. 2003. Temporal variability of connectivity in agricultural landscapes: do farming activities help? *Landscape Ecology*. 18: 303-314.

- Baum, K.A.; Haynes, K.J.; Dilleuth, F.P.; Cronin, J.T. 2004. The matrix enhances the effectiveness of corridors and stepping stones. *Ecology*. 85: 2671-2676.
- Bender, D.J.; Fahrig, L. 2005 Matrix structure obscures the relationship between interpatch movement and patch size and isolation. *Ecology*. 86: 1023-1033.
- Bennett, A.F. 1999. Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.
- Benton, T.G.; Vickery, J.A.; Wilson, J.D. 2003. Farmland biodiversity: is habitat heterogeneity the key? *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*. 18: 182-188.
- Best, L.B.; Freemark, K.E.; Dinsmore, J.J.; Camp, M. 1995. A review and synthesis of habitat use by breeding birds in agricultural landscapes. *American Midland Naturalist*. 134: 1-29.
- Bolger, D.T.; Alberts, A.C.; Sauvajot, R.M. [and others]. 1997. Response of rodents to habitat fragmentation in coastal southern California. *Ecological Applications*. 7: 552-563.
- Brothers, T.S.; Spingarn, A. 1990. Forest fragmentation and alien plant invasion of central Indiana old-growth forests. *Conservation Biology*. 6: 91-100.
- Collinge, S.K. 1996. Ecological consequences of habitat fragmentation: implications for landscape architecture and planning. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 36: 59-77.
- Collinge, S.K. 1998. Spatial arrangement of habitat patches and corridors: clues from ecological field studies. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 42: 157-168.
- Coppedge, B.R.; Engle, D.M.; Masters, R.E.; Gregory, M.S. 2001. Avian response to landscape change in fragmented southern Great Plains grasslands. *Ecological Applications*. 11: 47-59.
- Dickman, C.R.; Doncaster, C.P. 1987. The ecology of small mammals in urban habitats. I. Populations in a patchy environment. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 56: 629-640.
- Donald, P.F.; Evans, A.D. 2006. Habitat connectivity and matrix restoration: the wider implications of agri-environment schemes. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 43: 209-218.
- Forman, R.T.T. 1995. Some general principles of landscape and regional ecology. *Landscape Ecology*. 10: 133-142.
- Freemark, K.E.; Boutin, C.; Keddy, C.J. 2002. Importance of farmland habitats for conservation plant species. *Conservation Biology*. 16: 399-412.
- Freemark, K.E.; Merriam, H.G. 1986. Importance of area and habitat heterogeneity to bird assemblages in temperate forest fragments. *Biological Conservation*. 36: 115-141.
- Galli, A.E.; Leck, C.F.; Forman, R.T.T. 1976. Avian distribution patterns in forest islands of different size in central New Jersey. *Auk*. 93: 356-64.
- Gibbs, H.; Hochuli, D.F. 2002. Habitat fragmentation in an urban environment: large and small fragments support different arthropod assemblages. *Biological Conservation*. 106: 91-100.
- Golden, D.M.; Crist, T.O. 2000. Experimental effects of fragmentation on rove beetles and ants: patch area or edge? *Oikos*. 90: 525-538.
- Goldstein, E.L.; Gross, M.; DeGraff, R.M. 1983. Wildlife and greenspace planning in medium-scale residential developments. *Urban Ecology*. 7: 201-214.
- Goodwin, B.J.; Fahrig, L. 2002. How does landscape structure influence landscape connectivity? *Oikos*. 99: 552-570.
- Hanski, I. 1994. A practical model of metapopulation dynamics. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 63: 151-162.
- Harris, L. 1984. *The fragmented forest: island biogeography theory and the preservation of biotic diversity*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press. 230 p.
- Herkert, J.R. 1994. The effects of habitat fragmentation on Midwestern grassland bird communities. *Ecological Applications*. 4: 461-471.
- Holt, R.D.; Robinson, G.R.; Gaines, M.S. 1995. Vegetation dynamics in an experimentally fragmented landscape. *Ecology*. 76: 1610-1624.

- Honnay, O.; Hermy, M.; Coppin, P. 1999. Effects of area, age, and diversity of forest patches in Belgium on plant species richness, and implications for conservation and reforestation. *Biological Conservation*. 87: 73-84.
- Johnson, R.G.; Temple, S.A. 1990. Nest predation and brood parasitism of tallgrass prairie birds. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 54: 106-111.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. Conservation thresholds for land use planners. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.
- King, A.W.; With, K.A. 2002. Dispersal success on spatially structured landscapes: when do spatial pattern and dispersal behavior really matter? *Ecological Modeling*. 147: 23-39.
- Koford, R.R.; Best, L.B. 1996. Management of agricultural landscapes for the conservation of neotropical migratory birds. In: Management of agricultural landscapes for the conservation of neotropical migratory birds. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC – 187. St. Paul, MN: Department of Agriculture. Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 68-88.
- Lindenmayer, D.B.; Franklin, J.F.; Fischer, J. 2006. General management principles and a checklist of strategies to guide forest biodiversity conservation. *Biological Conservation*. 131: 433-445.
- Lynch, J.F.; Whigham, D.F. 1984. Effects of forest fragmentation on breeding bird communities in Maryland, USA. *Biological Conservation*. 28: 287-324.
- Mace, R.D.; Waller, J.S.; Manely, T.L. [and others]. 1996. Relationships among grizzly bears, roads, and habitat in the Swan Mountains, Montana. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 33: 1395-1404.
- Mader, H.J. 1984. Animal habitat isolation by roads and agricultural fields. *Biological Conservation*. 29: 81-96.
- Margules, C.; Higgs, A.J.; Rafe, R.W. 1982. Modern biogeographic theory: are there any lessons for nature reserve design? *Biological Conservation*. 24: 115-128.
- Opdam, P. 1991. Metapopulation theory and habitat fragmentation: a review of Holarctic breeding bird studies. *Landscape Ecology*. 5: 93-106.
- Ricketts, T.H. 2001. The matrix matters: effective isolation in fragmented landscapes. *American Naturalist*. 158: 87-99.
- Rizkalla, C.E.; Swihart, R.K. 2007. Explaining movement decisions of forest rodents in fragmented landscapes. *Biological Conservation*. 140: 339-348.
- Santelmann, M.; Freemark, K.; Sifneos, J.; White, D. 2006. Assessing effects of alternative agricultural practices on wildlife habitat in Iowa, USA. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 113: 243-253.
- Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J.; Margules, C.R. 1991. Biological consequences of ecosystem fragmentation: a review. *Conservation Biology*. 5: 18-32.
- Sedell, J.R.; Reeves, G.H.; Hauer, F.R. [and others]. 1990. Role of refugia in recovery from disturbances: modern fragmented and disconnected river systems. *Environmental Management*. 14: 711-724.
- Selonen, V.; Hanski, I.K. 2003. Movements of the flying squirrel *Pteromys volans* in corridors and in matrix habitat. *Ecography*. 26: 641-651.
- Semlitsch, R.D.; Bodie, J.R. 2003. Biological criteria for buffer zones around wetlands and riparian habitats for amphibians and reptiles. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 1219-1228.
- Silva, M.; Hartling, L.; Opps, S.B. 2005. Small mammals in agricultural landscapes of Prince Edward Island (Canada): effects of habitat characteristics at three different spatial scales. *Biological Conservation*. 126: 556-568.
- Soule, M.E.; Alberts, A.C.; Bolger, D.T. 1992. The effects of habitat fragmentation on chaparral plants and vertebrates. *Oikos*. 64: 39-47.
- Walk, J.W.; Warner, R.E. 2000. Grassland management for the conservation of songbirds in the Midwestern USA. *Biological Conservation*. 94: 165-172.
- Walker, B. 1995. Conserving biological diversity through ecosystem resilience. *Conservation Biology*. 9: 747-752.
- Wegner, J.F.; Merriam, G. 1979. Movements by birds and small mammals between a wood and adjoining farmland habitats. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 16: 349-357.
- Willson, J.D.; Dorcas, M.E. 2003. Effects of habitat disturbance on stream salamanders: implications for buffer zones and watershed management. *Conservation Biology*. 13: 1424-1436.

Winter, M.; Johnson, D.H.; Faaborg, J. 2000. Evidence for edge effects on multiple levels in tallgrass prairie. *Condor*. 102: 256-266.

With, K.A.; Crist, T.O. 1995. Critical thresholds in species' responses to landscape structure. *Ecology*. 76: 2446-2459.

Yahner, R.H. 1988. Changes in wildlife communities near edges. *Conservation Biology*. 2: 333-339.

2.2 Patch primer

Andren, H. 1994. Effects of habitat fragmentation on birds and mammals in landscapes with different proportions of suitable habitat: a review. *Oikos*. 71: 355-366.

As, S. 1999. Invasion of matrix species in small habitat patches. *Conservation Ecology*. 3(1): 1. <http://www.consecol.org/vol3/iss1/art1> [Date accessed: July 18, 2007].

Barbour, M.; Litvaitis, J. 1993. Niche dimensions of New England cottontails in relation to habitat patch size. *Oecologia*. 95: 321-327.

Beier, P. 1993. Determining minimum habitat areas and habitat corridors for cougars. *Conservation Biology*. 7: 98-108.

Bender, D.J.; Fahrig, L. 2005 Matrix structure obscures the relationship between interpatch movement and patch size and isolation. *Ecology*. 86: 1023-1033.

Bennett, A.F. 1999. Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.

Benton, T.G.; Vickery, J.A.; Wilson, J.D. 2003. Farmland biodiversity: is habitat heterogeneity the key? *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*. 18: 182-188.

Best, L.B.; Freemark, K.E.; Dinsmore, J.J.; Camp, M. 1995. A review and synthesis of habitat use by breeding birds in agricultural landscapes. *American Midland Naturalist*. 134: 1-29.

Blake, J.G.; Karr, J.R. 1984. Species composition of bird communities and the conservation benefit of large versus small forests. *Biological Conservation*. 30: 173-187.

Bolger, D.T.; Alberts, A.C.; Sauvajot, R.M. [and others]. 1997. Response of rodents to habitat fragmentation in coastal southern California. *Ecological Applications*. 7: 552-563.

Bowers, M.A.; Matter, S.F. 1997. Landscape ecology of mammals: relationships between density and patch size. *Journal of Mammalogy*. 78: 999-1013.

Brothers, T.S.; Spingarn, A. 1990. Forest fragmentation and alien plant invasion of central Indiana old-growth forests. *Conservation Biology*. 6: 91-100.

Brown, M.; Dinsmore, J. 1986. Implications of marsh size and isolation for marsh bird management. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 50: 392-387.

Collinge, S.K. 1996. Ecological consequences of habitat fragmentation: implications for landscape architecture and planning. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 36: 59-77.

Collinge, S.K. 1998. Spatial arrangement of habitat patches and corridors: clues from ecological field studies. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 42: 157-168.

Coppedge, B.R.; Engle, D.M.; Masters, R.E.; Gregory, M.S. 2001. Avian response to landscape change in fragmented southern Great Plains grasslands. *Ecological Applications*. 11: 47-59.

Crist, T.; Ahern, R. 1999. Effects of habitat patch size and temperature on the distributions and abundance of ground beetles (Coleoptera: Carabidae) in an old field. *Environmental Entomology*. 28: 681-689.

Diamond, J.M. 1975. The island dilemma: lessons of modern biogeographic studies for the design of nature reserves. *Biological Conservation*. 7: 129-146.

Dickman, C.R.; Doncaster, C.P. 1987. The ecology of small mammals in urban habitats. I. Populations in a patchy environment. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 56: 629-640.

Ewers, R.M.; Didham, R.K. 2007. The effect of fragment shape and species' sensitivity to habitat edges on animal population size. *Conservation Biology*. 21: 926-936.

Fischer, J.; Lindenmayer, D.B. 2002. Small patches can be valuable for biodiversity conservation: two case studies on birds in southeastern Australia. *Biological Conservation*. 106: 129-136.

- Forman, R.T.T. 1995. Some general principles of landscape and regional ecology. *Landscape Ecology*. 10: 133-142.
- Forman, R.T.T.; Galli, A.E.; Leck, C.F. 1976. Forest size and avian diversity in New Jersey woodlots with some land use implications. *Oecologia*. 26: 1-8.
- Forman, R.T.T.; Godron, M. 1981. Patches and structural components for a landscape ecology. *BioSciences*. 31: 733-740.
- Freemark, K.E.; Boutin, C.; Keddy, C.J. 2002. Importance of farmland habitats for conservation plant species. *Conservation Biology*. 16: 399-412.
- Freemark, K.E.; Merriam, H.G. 1986. Importance of area and habitat heterogeneity to bird assemblages in temperate forest fragments. *Biological Conservation*. 36: 115-141.
- Galli, A.E.; Leck, C.F.; Forman, R.T.T. 1976. Avian distribution patterns in forest islands of different size in central New Jersey. *Auk*. 93: 356-64.
- Gibbs, H.; Hochuli, D.F. 2002. Habitat fragmentation in an urban environment: large and small fragments support different arthropod assemblages. *Biological Conservation*. 106: 91-100.
- Godefroid, S.; Koedam, N. 2003. How important are large vs. small forest remnants for the conservation of woodland flora in an urban context? *Global Ecology and Biogeography*. 12: 287-298.
- Golden, D.M.; Crist, T.O. 2000. Experimental effects of fragmentation on rove beetles and ants: patch area or edge? *Oikos*. 90: 525-538.
- Goldstein, E.L.; Gross, M.; DeGraff, R.M. 1983. Wildlife and greenspace planning in medium-scale residential developments. *Urban Ecology*. 7: 201-214.
- Goodwin, B.J.; Fahrig, L. 2002. How does landscape structure influence landscape connectivity? *Oikos*. 99: 552-570.
- Hanski, I. 1994. A practical model of metapopulation dynamics. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 63: 151-162.
- Harris, L. 1984. *The fragmented forest: island biogeography theory and the preservation of biotic diversity*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press. 230 p.
- Helzer, C.J.; Jelinski, D.E. 1999. The relative importance of patch area and perimeter-area ratio to grassland breeding birds. *Ecological Applications*. 9: 1448-1458.
- Herkert, J.R. 1994. The effects of habitat fragmentation on Midwestern grassland bird communities. *Ecological Applications*. 4: 461-471.
- Higgs, A.J.; Usher, M.B. 1980. Should nature reserves be large or small? *Nature*. 285: 568-569.
- Hill, J.K.; Thomas, C.D.; Lewis, O.T. 1996. Effects of habitat patch size and isolation on dispersal by *Hesperia comma* butterflies: implications for metapopulation structure. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 65: 725-735.
- Holt, R.D.; Robinson, G.R.; Gaines, M.S. 1995. Vegetation dynamics in an experimentally fragmented landscape. *Ecology*. 76: 1610-1624.
- Honnay, O.; Endels, P.; Vereecken, H.; Hermy, M. 1999. The role of patch area and habitat diversity in explaining native plant species richness in disturbed suburban forest patches in northern Belgium. *Diversity and Distributions*. 5: 129-141.
- Honnay, O.; Hermy, M.; Coppin, P. 1999. Effects of area, age, and diversity of forest patches in Belgium on plant species richness, and implications for conservation and reforestation. *Biological Conservation*. 87: 73-84.
- Hoover, J.; Brittingham, M.; Goodrich, L. 1995. Effects of forest patch size on nesting success of wood thrushes. *Auk*. 112: 146-155.
- Johnson, R.G.; Temple, S.A. 1990. Nest predation and brood parasitism of tallgrass prairie birds. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 54: 106-111.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. *Conservation thresholds for land use planners*. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.
- King, A.W.; With, K.A. 2002. Dispersal success on spatially structured landscapes: when do spatial pattern and dispersal behavior really matter? *Ecological Modeling*. 147: 23-39.

- Koford, R.R.; Best, L.B. 1996. Management of agricultural landscapes for the conservation of neotropical migratory birds. In: Management of agricultural landscapes for the conservation of neotropical migratory birds. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC – 187. St. Paul, MN: Department of Agriculture. Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 68-88.
- Lindenmayer, D.B.; Franklin, J.F.; Fischer, J. 2006. General management principles and a checklist of strategies to guide forest biodiversity conservation. *Biological Conservation*. 131: 433-445.
- Lynch, J.F.; Whigham, D.F. 1984. Effects of forest fragmentation on breeding bird communities in Maryland, USA. *Biological Conservation*. 28: 287-324.
- Mace, R.D.; Waller, J.S.; Manely, T.L.; Lyon, L.J.; Zuuring, H. 1996. Relationships among grizzly bears, roads, and habitat in the Swan Mountains, Montana. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 33: 1395-1404.
- Mader, H.J. 1984. Animal habitat isolation by roads and agricultural fields. *Biological Conservation*. 29: 81-96.
- Margules, C.; Higgs, A.J.; Rafe, R.W. 1982. Modern biogeographic theory: are there any lessons for nature reserve design? *Biological Conservation*. 24: 115-128.
- McIntyre, N.E. 1995. Effects of forest patch size on avian diversity. *Landscape Ecology*. 10: 85-99.
- NatureServe. 2007. NatureServe Explorer: An online encyclopedia of life [web application]. Version 6.2. Arlington, VA: NatureServe. <http://www.natureserve.org/explorer>. [Date accessed October 5, 2007].
- Naugle, D.E.; Higgins, K.F.; Nusser, S.M.; Johnson, W.C. 1999. Scale-dependent habitat use in three species of prairie wetland birds. *Landscape Ecology*. 14: 267-276.
- Opdam, P. 1991. Metapopulation theory and habitat fragmentation: a review of Holarctic breeding bird studies. *Landscape Ecology*. 5: 93-106.
- Pirnat, J. 2000. Conservation and management of forest patches and corridors in suburban landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 52: 135-143.
- Robbins, C.S.; Dawson, D.K.; Dowell, B.A. 1989. Habitat area requirements of breeding forest birds of the middle Atlantic states. *Wildlife Monographs*. 103: 1-34.
- Santelmann, M.; Freemark, K.; Sifneos, J.; White, D. 2006. Assessing effects of alternative agricultural practices on wildlife habitat in Iowa, USA. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 113: 243-253.
- Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J.; Margules, C.R. 1991. Biological consequences of ecosystem fragmentation: a review. *Conservation Biology*. 5: 18-32.
- Schultz, C.B.; Crone, E. 2005. Patch size and connectivity thresholds for butterfly habitat restoration. *Conservation Biology*. 19: 887-896.
- Sedell, J.R.; Reeves, G.H.; Hauer, F.R. [and others]. 1990. Role of refugia in recovery from disturbances: modern fragmented and disconnected river systems. *Environmental Management*. 14: 711-724.
- Selonen, V.; Hanski, I.K. 2003. Movements of the flying squirrel *Pteromys volans* in corridors and in matrix habitat. *Ecography*. 26: 641-651.
- Semlitsch, R.D.; Bodie, J.R. 2003. Biological criteria for buffer zones around wetlands and riparian habitats for amphibians and reptiles. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 1219-1228.
- Silva, M.; Hartling, L.; Opps, S.B. 2005. Small mammals in agricultural landscapes of Prince Edward Island (Canada): effects of habitat characteristics at three different spatial scales. *Biological Conservation*. 126: 556-568.
- Soule, M.E.; Alberts, A.C.; Bolger, D.T. 1992. The effects of habitat fragmentation on chaparral plants and vertebrates. *Oikos*. 64: 39-47.
- Tscharntke, T.; Steffan-Dewenter, J.; Kruess, A.; Thies, C. 2002. Contribution of small habitat fragments to conservation of insect communities of grassland-cropland landscapes. *Ecological Applications*. 12: 354-363.
- Uezu, A.; Metzger, J.P.; Vielliard, J.M.E. 2005. Effects of structural and functional connectivity and patch size on the abundance of seven Atlantic Forest bird species. *Biological Conservation*. 123: 507-519.
- van Dorp, D.; Opdam, P.F.M. 1987. Effects of patch size, isolation and regional abundance on forest bird communities. *Landscape Ecology*. 1: 59-73.
- Walk, J.W.; Warner, R.E. 1999. Effects of habitat area on the occurrence of grassland birds in Illinois. *American Midland Naturalist*. 141: 339-344.

Walk, J.W.; Warner, R.E. 2000. Grassland management for the conservation of songbirds in the Midwestern USA. *Biological Conservation*. 94: 165-172.

Walker, B. 1995. Conserving biological diversity through ecosystem resilience. *Conservation Biology*. 9: 747-752.

Wegner, J.F.; Merriam, G. 1979. Movements by birds and small mammals between a wood and adjoining farmland habitats. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 16: 349-357.

Willson, J.D.; Dorcas, M.E. 2003. Effects of habitat disturbance on stream salamanders: implications for buffer zones and watershed management. *Conservation Biology*. 13: 1424-1436.

Winter, M.; Johnson, D.H.; Faaborg, J. 2000. Evidence for edge effects on multiple levels in tallgrass prairie. *Condor*. 102: 256-266.

Winter, M.; Johnson, D.H.; Shaffer, J.A. [and others] 2006. Patch size and landscape effects on density and nesting success of grassland birds. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 70: 158-172.

With, K.A.; Crist, T.O. 1995. Critical thresholds in species' responses to landscape structure. *Ecology*. 76: 2446-2459.

Yahner, R.H. 1988. Changes in wildlife communities near edges. *Conservation Biology*. 2: 333-339.

2.3 Corridors and connectivity

Anderson, G.S.; Danielson, B.J. 1997. The effects of landscape composition and physiognomy on metapopulation size: the role of corridors. *Landscape Ecology*. 12: 261-271.

Baudry, J.; Burel, F.; Aviron, S. [and others]. 2003. Temporal variability of connectivity in agricultural landscapes: do farming activities help? *Landscape Ecology*. 18: 303-314.

Beier, P.; Noss, R.F. 1998. Do habitat corridors provide connectivity? *Conservation Biology*. 12: 1241-1252.

Beier, P.; Loe, S. 1992. A checklist for evaluating impacts to wildlife movement corridors. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 20: 434-440.

Bennett, A.F. 1990. Habitat corridors and the conservation of small mammals in a fragmented forest environment. *Landscape Ecology*. 4: 109-122.

Bennett, A.F. 1999. Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.

Bennett, A.F.; Henein, K.; Merriam, G. 1994. Corridor use and the elements of corridor quality: chipmunks and fencerows in a farmland mosaic. *Biological Conservation*. 68: 155-165.

Bolger, D.T., Scott, T.A.; Rotenberry, J.T. 2001. Use of corridor-like landscape structures by bird and small mammal species. *Biological Conservation*. 102: 213-224.

Boutin, C.; Jobin, B.; Bélanger, L. 2003. Importance of riparian habitats to flora conservation in farming landscapes of southern Quebec, Canada. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 94: 73-87.

Briner, T.; Nentwig, W.; Airoldi, J.P. 2005. Habitat quality of wildflower strips for common voles (*Microtus arvalis*) and its relevance for agriculture. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 105: 173-179.

Burbrink, F.T.; Phillips, C.A.; Heske, E.J. 1998. A riparian zone in southern Illinois as a potential dispersal corridor for reptiles and amphibians. *Biological Conservation*. 86: 107-115.

Capel, S.W. 1988. Design of windbreaks for wildlife in the Great Plains of North America. *Agriculture, Ecosystem and Environment*. 22/23: 337-347.

Chetkiewicz, C.L.B.; St. Clair, C.C.; Boyce, M.S. 2006. Corridors for conservation: integrating pattern and process. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*. 37:317-342.

Collinge, S.K. 1998. Spatial arrangement of habitat patches and corridors: clues from ecological field studies. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 42: 157-168.

Damschen, E.I.; Haddad, N.M.; Orrock, J.L. [and others]. 2006. Corridors increase plant species richness at large scales. *Science*. 313: 1284-1286.

Danielson, B.J.; Hubbard, M.W. 2000. The influence of corridors on the movement behavior of individual *Peromyscus polionotus* in experimental landscapes. *Landscape Ecology*. 15: 323-331.

- Darveau, M.; Beauchesne, P.; Belanger, L. [and others]. 1995. Riparian forest strips as habitat for breeding birds in boreal forest. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 59: 67-78.
- Davies, Z.G.; Pullin, A.S. 2007. Are hedgerows effective corridors between fragments of woodland habitat? An evidence-based approach. *Landscape Ecology*. 22: 333-351.
- Dixon, J.D.; Oli, M.K.; Wooten, M.C. [and others]. 2006. Effectiveness of a regional corridor in connecting two Florida black bear populations. *Conservation Biology*. 20: 155-162.
- Dmowski, K.; Kozakiewicz, M. 1990. Influence of a shrub corridor on movements of passerine birds to a lake littoral zone. *Landscape Ecology*. 42: 99-108.
- Downes, S.J.; Handasyde, K.A., Elgar, M.A. 1997. The use of corridors by mammals in fragmented Australian eucalypt forests. *Conservation Biology*. 11: 718-726.
- Eagan, D.; Howell, E. 2001. *Historical ecology handbook: a restorationist's guide to reference ecosystems*. Covelo, CA: Island Press. 457 p.
- Falcy, M.R.; Estades, C.F. 2007. Effectiveness of corridors relative to enlargement of habitat patches. *Conservation Biology*. 21: 1341-1346.
- Forman, R.T.T. 1991. Landscape corridors: from theoretical foundations to public policy. In: Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J., eds. *Nature conservation 2: the role of corridors*. Chipping Norton, Australia: Surrey Beatty: 1-84.
- Gilbert, F.; Gonzalez, A.; Evans-Freke, I. 1998. Corridors maintain species richness in the fragmented landscapes of a microecosystem. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series B: Biological Sciences*. 265: 577-582.
- Goodwin, B.J.; Fahrig, L. 2002. How does landscape structure influence landscape connectivity? *Oikos*. 99: 552-570.
- Grashof-Bokdam, C.J.; van Langevelde, F. 2004. Green veining: landscape determinants of biodiversity in European agricultural landscapes. *Landscape Ecology*. 20: 417-439.
- Haas, C.A. 1994. Dispersal and use of corridors by birds in wooded patches on an agricultural landscape. *Conservation Biology*. 9: 845-854.
- Haddad, N. 1999. Corridor and distance effects on interpatch movements: a landscape experiment with butterflies. *Ecological Applications*. 9: 612-622.
- Haddad, N. 2000. Corridor length and patch colonization by a butterfly, *Junonia coenia*. *Conservation Biology*. 14:738-745.
- Haddad, N.M.; Baum, K.A. 1999. An experimental test of corridor density on butterfly densities. *Ecological Applications*. 9: 623-633.
- Haddad, N.M.; Bowne, D.R.; Cunningham, A. [and others]. T. 2003. Corridor use by diverse taxa. *Ecology*. 84: 609-615.
- Haddad, N.M.; Tewksbury, J.T. 2006. Impacts of corridors on populations and communities. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 390-415.
- Hannon, S.J.; Schmiegelow, F.K. 2002. Corridors may not improve the conservation value of small reserves for most boreal birds. *Ecological Applications*. 12: 1457-1468.
- Harris, L.D.; Scheck, J. 1991. From implications to applications: the dispersal corridor principle applied to the conservation of biological diversity. In: Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J., eds. *Nature conservation 2: the role of corridors*. Chipping Norton, Australia: Surrey Beatty: 189-220.
- Henein, K.; Merriam, G. 1990. The elements of connectivity where corridor quality is variable. *Landscape Ecology*. 4: 157-170.
- Henningsen, J.C.; Best, L.B. 2005. Grassland bird use of riparian filter strips in southeast Iowa. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 69: 198-210.
- Herkert, J.R. 1994. The effects of habitat fragmentation on Midwestern grassland bird communities. *Ecological Applications*. 4: 461-471.
- Hess, G.R. 1994. Conservation corridors and contagious disease: a cautionary note. *Conservation Biology*. 8: 256-261.
- Horskins, K.; Mather, P.B.; Wilson, J.C. 2006. Corridors and connectivity: when use and function do not equate. *Landscape Ecology*. 21: 641-655.

- Hudgens, G.R.; Haddad, N.M. 2003. Predicting which species will benefit from corridors in fragmented landscapes from population growth models. *American Naturalist*. 161: 808-820.
- Hultquist, J.M.; Best, L.B. 2001. Bird use of terraces in Iowa rowcrop fields. *American Midland Naturalist*. 145: 275-287.
- Jordán, F. 2000. A reliability-theory approach to corridor design. *Ecological Modelling*. 128: 211-220.
- Kautz, R.; Kawula, R.; Hctor, T. [and others]. 2006. How much is enough? Landscape-scale conservation for the Florida panther. *Biological Conservation*. 130: 118-133.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. Conservation thresholds for land use planners. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.
- Lindenmayer, D.B.; Nix, H.A. 1993. Ecological principles for the design of wildlife corridors. *Conservation Biology*. 7: 627-630.
- Little, S.J.; Harcourt, R.G.; Clevenger, A.P. 2002. Do wildlife passages act as prey-traps? *Biological Conservation*. 107: 135-145.
- Machtans, C.S.; Villard, M.V.; Hannon, S.J. 1996. Use of riparian buffer strips as movement corridors by forest birds. *Conservation Biology*. 10: 1366-1379.
- Margules, C.; Higgs, A.J.; Rafe, R.W. 1982. Modern biogeographic theory: are there any lessons for nature reserve design? *Biological Conservation*. 24: 115-128.
- Miller, J.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moonman, C.E. 2007. Southern two-lined salamanders in urbanizing watersheds. *Urban Ecosystems*. 10: 73-85.
- Naiman, R.J.; Decamps, H.; Pollock, M. 1993. The role of riparian corridors in maintaining regional biodiversity. *Ecological Applications*. 3: 209-212.
- Newmark, W.D. 1993. The role and design of wildlife corridors with examples from Tanzania. *Ambio*. 22: 500-504.
- Noss, R.F. 1987. Corridors in real landscapes. *Conservation Biology*. 1: 159-164.
- Noss, R.F. 2003. A checklist for wildlands network design. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 1270-1275.
- Pierce, R.A.; Farrand, D.T.; Kurtz, W.B. 2001. Projecting the bird community response resulting from the adoption of shelterbelt agroforestry practices in Eastern Nebraska. *Agroforestry Systems*. 53: 333-350.
- Pirnat, J. 2000. Conservation and management of forest patches and corridors in suburban landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 52: 135-143.
- Poague, K.L.; Johnson, R.J.; Young, L.J. 2000. Bird use of rural and urban converted railroad right-of-ways in southeast Nebraska. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 28: 852-864.
- Pringle, C. 2003. What is hydrologic connectivity and why is it ecologically important? *Hydrological Processes*. 17: 2685-2689.
- Reeder, K.F.; Debinski, D.M.; Danielson, B.J. 2005. Factors affecting butterfly use of filter strips in Midwestern USA. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 109: 40-47.
- Rodewald, A.D.; Vitz, A.C. 2005. Edge and area-sensitivity of shrubland birds. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 69: 681-688.
- Roe, J.H.; Georges, A. 2007. Heterogeneous wetland complexes, buffer zones, and travel corridors: landscape management for freshwater reptiles. *Biological Conservation*. 135: 67-76.
- Rosenberg, D.K.; Noon, B.R.; Meslow, E.C. 1997. Biological corridors: form, function, and efficacy. *BioScience*. 47: 677-687.
- Ruefenacht, B.; Knight, R.L. 1995. Influences of corridor continuity and width on survival and movement of deer mice *Peromyscus maniculatus*. *Biological Conservation*. 71: 269-274.
- Russell, K.N.; Ikerd, H.; Droege, S. 2005. The potential conservation value of unmowed powerline strips for native bees. *Biological Conservation*. 124: 133-148.
- Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J.; Margules, C.R. 1991. Biological consequences of ecosystem fragmentation: a review. *Conservation Biology*. 5: 18-32.

- Schultz, C.B.; Crone, E. 2005. Patch size and connectivity thresholds for butterfly habitat restoration. *Conservation Biology*. 19: 887-896.
- Sedell, J.R.; Reeves, G.H.; Hauer, F.R. [and others]. 1990. Role of refugia in recovery from disturbances: modern fragmented and disconnected river systems. *Environmental Management*. 14: 711-724.
- Selonen, V.; Hanski, I.K. 2003. Movements of the flying squirrel *Pteromys volans* in corridors and in matrix habitat. *Ecography*. 26: 641-651.
- Simberloff, D.; Farr, J.A.; Cox, J.; Mehlman, D. 1992. Movement corridors: conservation bargains or poor investments? *Conservation Biology*. 6: 493-504.
- Simberloff, D.; Cox, J. 1987. Consequences and costs of conservation corridors. *Conservation Biology*. 1: 63-71.
- Smith, R.J.; Schaefer, J.M. 1992. Avian characteristics of an urban riparian strip corridor. *Wilson Bulletin*. 104: 732-738.
- Sutcliffe, O.L.; Thomas, C.D. 1996. Open corridors appear to facilitate dispersal by ringlet butterflies between woodland clearings. *Conservation Biology*. 10: 1359-1365.
- Taylor, P.D.; Fahrig, L.; With, K.A. 2006. Landscape connectivity: a return to the basics. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 29-43.
- Tewksbury, J.J.; Levey, D.J.; Haddad, N.M. [and others]. 2002. Corridors affect plants, animals and their interactions in fragmented landscapes. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*. 99: 12923-12926.
- Uezu, A.; Metzger, J.P.; Vielliard, J.M.E. 2005. Effects of structural and functional connectivity and patch size on the abundance of seven Atlantic Forest bird species. *Biological Conservation*. 123: 507-519.
- Vannote, R.L.; Minshall, G.W.; Cummins, K.W. [and others]. 1980. The river continuum concept. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 37: 130-137.
- Wegner, J.F.; Merriam, G. 1979. Movements by birds and small mammals between a wood and adjoining farmland habitats. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 16: 349-357.
- Weldon, A.J. 2006. How corridors reduce indigo bunting nest success. *Conservation Biology*. 20: 1300-1305.

2.4 Corridors versus connectivity zones

- Bennett, A.F. 1999. *Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation*. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.
- Chetkiewicz, C.L.B.; St. Clair, C.C.; Boyce, M.S. 2006. Corridors for conservation: integrating pattern and process. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*. 37: 317-342.
- Dobson, A.; Ralls, K.; Foster, M. [and others]. 1999. Connectivity: maintaining flows in fragmented landscapes. In: Soulé, M.E.; Terborgh, J., eds. *Continental conservation: scientific foundations of regional reserve networks*. Washington, DC: Island Press: 129-170.
- Lindenmayer, D.B.; Fischer, J. 2006. *Habitat fragmentation and landscape change: an ecological and conservation synthesis*. Island Press: Washington DC. 328 p.
- Manning, A.D.; Lindenmayer, D.B.; Nix, H.A. 2004. Continua and umwelt: novel perspectives on viewing landscapes. *Oikos*. 104: 621-628.
- Sanderson, J.; Da Fonseca, G.A.B.; Galindo-Leal, C. [and others]. 2006. Escaping the minimalist trap: design and implementation of large-scale biodiversity corridors. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 620-648.
- Taylor, P.D.; Fahrig, L.; Henien, K.; Merriam, G. 1993. Connectivity is a vital element of landscape structure. *Oikos*. 68: 571-573.
- Taylor, P.D.; Fahrig, L.; With, K.A. 2006. Landscape connectivity: a return to the basics. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 29-43.
- Uezu, A.; Metzger, J.P.; Vielliard, J.M.E. 2005. Effects of structural and functional connectivity and patch size on the abundance of seven Atlantic Forest bird species. *Biological Conservation*. 123: 507-519.

2.5 Corridor network

- Anderson, G.S.; Danielson, B.J. 1997. The effects of landscape composition and physiognomy on metapopulation size: the role of corridors. *Landscape Ecology*. 12: 261-271.
- Bennett, A.F. 1999. Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.
- Bunn, A.G.; Urban, D.L.; Keitt, T.H. 2000. Landscape connectivity: a conservation application of graph theory. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 59: 265-278.
- Chetkiewicz, C.L.B.; St. Clair, C.C.; Boyce, M.S. 2006. Corridors for conservation: integrating pattern and process. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*. 37: 317-342.
- Dobson, A.; Ralls, K.; Foster, M. [and others]. 1999. Connectivity: maintaining flows in fragmented landscapes. In: Soulé, M.E.; Terborgh, J., eds. *Continental conservation: scientific foundations of regional reserve networks*. Washington, DC: Island Press: 129-170.
- Forman, R.T.T.; Baudry, J. 1984. Hedgerows and hedgerow networks in landscape ecology. *Environmental Management*. 8: 495-510.
- Henein, K.; Merriam, G. 1990. The elements of connectivity where corridor quality is variable. *Landscape Ecology*. 4: 157-170.
- Jordán, F. 2000. A reliability-theory approach to corridor design. *Ecological Modelling*. 128: 211-220.
- Kautz, R.; Kawula, R.; Hctor, T. [and others]. 2006. How much is enough? Landscape-scale conservation for the Florida panther. *Biological Conservation*. 130: 118-133.
- Noss, R.F.; Harris, L.D. 1986. Nodes, networks, and MUMs: preserving diversity at all scales. *Environmental Management*. 10: 299-309.
- Rothley, K.D.; Rae, C. 2005. Working backwards to move forwards: graph-based connectivity metrics for reserve network design. *Environmental Modeling and Assessment*. 10: 107-113.
- Taylor, P.D.; Fahrig, L.; With, K.A. 2006. Landscape connectivity: a return to the basics. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 29-43.
- Theobald, D.M. Exploring the functional connectivity of landscapes using landscape networks. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 416-443.
- ## 2.6 Climate change and corridors
- Collingham, Y. C.; Huntley, B. 2000. Impacts of habitat fragmentation and patch size upon migration rates. *Ecological Applications*. 10: 131-144.
- Epps, C.W.; Palsboll, P.J.; Wehausen, J.D. [and others]. 2006. Elevation and connectivity define genetic refugia for mountain sheep as climate warms. *Molecular Ecology*. 15: 4295-4302.
- Graham, R.W. 1988. The role of climatic change in the design of biological reserves: the paleoecological perspective for conservation biology. *Conservation Biology*. 2: 391-394.
- Guertin, D.S.; Easterling, W.E.; Brandle, J.R. 1997. Climate change and forests in the Great Plains. *BioScience*. 47: 287-295.
- Guo, G.; Brandle, J.; Schoeneberger, M.; Buettner, D. 2004. Simulating the dynamics of linear forests in Great Plains agroecosystems under changing climates. *Canadian Journal of Forest Resources*. 34: 2564-2572.
- Hannah, L.; Midgley, G.F.; Millar, D. 2002. Climate change-integrated conservation strategies. *Global Ecology and Biogeography*. 11: 485-495.
- Harris, J.A.; Hobbs, R.J.; Higgs, E.; Aronson, J. 2006. Ecological restoration and global climate change. *Restoration Ecology*. 14: 170-176.
- Hobbs, R.J.; Hopkins, A.J. M. 1991. The role of conservation corridors in a changing climate. In: Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J., eds. *Nature conservation 2: the role of corridors*. Chipping Norton, Australia: Surrey Beatty: 281-290.
- Hulme, P. 2005. Adapting to climate change: is there scope for ecological management in the face of a global threat? *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 42: 784-794.

Iverson, L.R.; Prasad, A.M. 2001. Potential changes in tree species richness and forest community types following climate change. *Ecosystems*. 4: 186-199.

Iverson, L.R.; Prasad, A.M. 2002. Potential redistribution of tree species habitat under five climate change scenarios in the eastern US. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 155: 205-222.

Iverson, L.R.; Prasad, A.M.; Schwartz, M.W. 1999. Modeling potential future individual tree-species distributions in the eastern United States under a climate change scenario" a case study with *Pinus virginiana*. *Ecological Modeling*. 115: 77-93.

Iverson, L.R.; Schwartz, M.W.; Prasad, A.M. 2004. How fast and far might tree species migrate in the eastern United States due to climate change? *Global Ecology and Biogeography*. 13: 209-219.

Katz, R.W.; Brown, B.G. 1992. Extreme events in a changing climate: variability is more important than averages. *Climate Change*. 21: 289-302.

Knox, J.C. 1993. Large increases in flood magnitude in response to modest changes in climate. *Nature*. 361: 430-432.

Malcolm, J.R.; Markham, A.; Neilson, R.P.; Garaci, M. 2002. Estimated migration rates under scenarios of global climate change. *Journal of Biogeography*. 29: 835-849.

Markham, A. 1996. Potential impacts of climate change on ecosystems: a review of implications for policymakers and conservation biologists. *Climate Research*. 6: 179-191.

McCarty, J.P. 2001. Ecological consequences of recent climate change. *Conservation Biology*. 15: 320-331.

Noss, R.F. 2001. Beyond Kyoto: forest management in a time of rapid climate change. *Conservation Biology*. 15: 578-590.

Opdam, P.; Wascher, D. 2004. Climate change meets habitat fragmentation: linking landscape and biogeographical scale levels in research and conservation. *Biological Conservation*. 117: 285-297.

Parmesan, C.; Ryrholm, N.; Stefanescu, C. [and others]. 1999. Poleward shifts in geographical ranges of butterfly species associated with regional warming. *Nature*. 399: 579-583.

Pearson, R.G.; Dawson, T.P. 2005. Long-distance plant dispersal and habitat fragmentation: identifying conservation targets for spatial landscape planning under climate change. *Biological Conservation*. 123: 389-401.

Peters, R.L.; Darling, J.D.S. 1985. The greenhouse effect and nature reserves. *BioScience*. 35: 707-717.

Scheraga, J.D.; Grambsch, A.E. 1998. Risks, opportunities, and adaptation to climate change. *Climate Research*. 10: 85-95.

Williams, P.; Hannah, L.; Andelman, S. [and others]. 2005. Planning for climate change: identifying minimum-dispersal corridors for the Cape Proteaceae. *Conservation Biology*. 19: 1063-1074.

2.7 Stepping stones and gaps

Andreassen, H.P.; Ims, R.A.; Steinset, O.K. 1996. Discontinuous habitat corridors: effects on male root vole movements. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 33: 555-560.

Bakker, V.J.; Van Vuren, D.H. 2004. Gap-crossing decisions by the red squirrel, a forest-dependent small mammal. *Conservation Biology*. 18: 689-697.

Baum, K.A.; Haynes, K.J.; Dilleuth, F.P.; Cronin, J.T. 2004. The matrix enhances the effectiveness of corridors and stepping stones. *Ecology*. 85: 2671-2676.

Bennett, A.F. 1999. Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.

Bosschieter, L.; Goedhart, P.W. 2005. Gap crossing decisions by reed warblers (*Acrocephalus scirpaceus*) in agricultural landscapes. *Landscape Ecology*. 20: 455-468.

Bowman, J.; Fahrig, L. 2002. Gap crossing by chipmunks: an experimental test of landscape connectivity. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*. 80: 1556-1561.

Bright, P.W. 1998. Behavior of specialist species in habitat corridors: arboreal dormice avoid corridor gaps. *Animal Behavior*. 56: 1485-1490.

- Brooker, L.; Brooker, M.; Cale, P. 1999. Animal dispersal in fragmented habitat: measuring habitat connectivity, corridor use, and dispersal mortality. *Conservation Ecology*. 3(1): 4. <http://www.consecol.org/vol3/iss1/art4> [Date accessed: July 18, 2007].
- Collinge, S.K. 1998. Spatial arrangement of habitat patches and corridors: clues from ecological field studies. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 42: 157-168.
- Collingham, Y. C.; Huntley, B. 2000. Impacts of habitat fragmentation and patch size upon migration rates. *Ecological Applications*. 10: 131-144.
- Date, E.M.; Ford, H.A.; Recher, H.F. 1991. Frugivorous pigeons, stepping stones and weeds in northern New South Wales. In: Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J., eds. *Nature conservation 2: the role of corridors*. Chipping Norton, Australia: Surrey Beatty: 241-245.
- Davies, Z.G.; Pullin, A.S. 2007. Are hedgerows effective corridors between fragments of woodland habitat? An evidence-based approach. *Landscape Ecology*. 22: 333-351.
- Desrochers, A.; Hannon, S.J. 1997. Gap crossing decisions by forest songbirds during the post-fledging period. *Conservation Biology*. 11: 1204-1210.
- Fischer, J.; Lindenmayer, D. 2002. The conservation value of paddock trees for birds in a variegated landscape in southern New South Wales. 2. paddock trees as stepping stones. *Biodiversity and Conservation*. 11: 833-849.
- Freeman, R.E.; Stanley, E.H.; Turner, M.G. 2003. Analysis and conservation implications of landscape change in the Wisconsin River Floodplain. *Ecological Applications*. 13: 416-431.
- Gilpin, M.E. 1980. The role of stepping-stone islands. *Theoretical Population Biology*. 17: 247-253.
- Grubb, T.C.; Doherty, P.H. 1999. On home-range gap-crossing. *Auk*. 116: 618-628.
- Haddad, N. 2000. Corridor length and patch colonization by a butterfly, *Junonia coenia*. *Conservation Biology*. 14: 738-745.
- Jordán, F. 2000. A reliability-theory approach to corridor design. *Ecological Modelling*. 128: 211-220.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. *Conservation thresholds for land use planners*. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.
- Law, B.S.; Anderson, J.; Chidel, M. 1999. Bat communities in a fragmented forest landscape on the south-west slopes of New South Wales, Australia. *Biological Conservation*. 88: 333-345.
- Loehle, C. 2007. Effect of ephemeral stepping stones on metapopulations on fragmented landscapes. *Ecological Complexity*. 4: 42-47.
- MacArthur, R.M.; Wilson, E.O. 1967. *The theory of island biogeography*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press. 224 p.
- Machtans, C.S.; Villard, M.V.; Hannon, S.J. 1996. Use of riparian buffer strips as movement corridors by forest birds. *Conservation Biology*. 10: 1366-1379.
- Nève, G.; Barascud, B.; Hughes, R. [and others]. 1996. Dispersal, colonization power and metapopulation structure in the vulnerable butterfly *Proclossiana eunomia* (Lepidoptera: Nymphalidae). *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 33: 14-22.
- Potter, M.A. 1990. Movement of North Island Brown Kiwi (*Apteryx australis mantelli*) between forest remnants. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*. 14: 17-24.
- Rail, J.F.; Darveau, M.; Descrochers, A.; Huot, J. 1997. Territorial responses of boreal forest birds to habitat gaps. *Condor*. 99: 976-980.
- Rich, A.C.; Dobkin, D.S.; Niles, L.J. 1994. Defining forest fragmentation by corridor width: the influence of narrow forest-dividing corridors on forest-nesting birds in southern New Jersey. *Conservation Biology*. 8: 1109-1121.
- Ruefenacht, B.; Knight, R.L. 1995. Influences of corridor continuity and width on survival and movement of deer mice *Peromyscus maniculatus*. *Biological Conservation*. 71: 269-274.
- Selonen, V.; Hanski, I.K. 2003. Movements of the flying squirrel *Pteromys volans* in corridors and in matrix habitat. *Ecography*. 26: 641-651.
- Shirley, S.M. 2006. Movement of forest birds across river and clearcut edges of varying riparian buffer strip widths. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 223: 190-199.

- Simberloff, D.; Cox, J. 1987. Consequences and costs of conservation corridors. *Conservation Biology*. 1: 63-71.
- Skagen, S.K.; Melcher, C.P.; Howe, W.H.; Knopf, F.L. 1998. Comparative use of riparian corridors and oases by migrating birds in southeast Arizona. *Conservation Biology*. 12: 896-909.
- Strong, A.M.; Bancroft, G.T.. 1994. Postfledging dispersal of white-crowned pigeons: implications for conservation of deciduous seasonal forests in the Florida Keys. *Conservation Biology*. 8: 770-779.
- van der Ree, R.; Bennett, A.F.; Gilmore, D.C. 2003. Gap-crossing by gliding marsupials: thresholds for use of isolated woodland patches in agricultural landscapes. *Biological Conservation*. 115: 241-249.

2.8 Buffers and corridors

- Attum, O.; Lee, Y.M.; Roe, J.H.; Kingsbury, B.A. 2007. Upland-wetland linkages: relationship of upland and wetland characteristics with watersnake abundance. *Journal of Zoology*. 271: 134-139.
- Brodie, J.R. 2001. Stream and riparian management for freshwater turtles. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 62: 443-455.
- Brothers, T.; Spingarn, A. 1992. Forest fragmentation and alien plant invasion of central Indiana old-growth forests. *Conservation Biology*. 6: 91-100.
- Burke, V.J.; Gibbons, J.W. 1995. Terrestrial buffer zones and wetland conservation: a case study of freshwater turtles in a Carolina Bay. *Conservation Biology*. 9: 1363-1369.
- Cockle, K.L.; Richardson, J.S. 2003. Do riparian buffer strips mitigate the impacts of clearcutting on small mammals? *Biological Conservation*. 113: 133-140.
- Gamble, L.R.; McGarigal, K.; Jenkins, C.L.; Timm, B.C. 2006. Limitations of regulated buffer zones for the conservation of marbled salamanders. *Wetlands*. 26: 298-306.
- Groom, M.; Jensen, D.B.; Knight, R.L. [and others]. 1999. Buffer zones: benefits and dangers of compatible stewardship. In: Soulé, M.E.; Terborgh, J., eds. *Continental conservation: scientific foundations of regional reserve networks*. Washington, DC: Island Press: 171-189.
- Homan, R.N.; Windmiller, B.S.; Reed, J.M. 2004. Critical thresholds associated with habitat loss for two vernal pool-breeding amphibians. *Ecological Applications*. 14: 1547-1553.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. *Conservation thresholds for land use planners*. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.
- Li, W.; Wang, Z.; Tang, H. 1999. Designing the buffer zone of a nature reserve: a case study in Yancheng Biosphere Reserve, China. *Biological Conservation*. 90: 159-165.
- Miller, J.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moorman, C.E. 2007. Southern two-lined salamanders in urbanizing watersheds. *Urban Ecosystems*. 10: 73-85.
- Noss, R.F.; Harris, L.D. 1986. Nodes, networks, and MUMs: preserving diversity at all scales. *Environmental Management*. 10: 299-309.
- Perkins, D.W.; Hunter, M.L., Jr. 2006. Effects of riparian timber management on amphibians in Maine. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 70: 657-670.
- Regosin, J.; Windmiller, B.S.; Homan, R.N.; Reed, J.M. 2005. Variation in terrestrial habitat use by four pool-breeding amphibian species. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 69: 1481-1493.
- Roe, J.H.; Georges, A. 2007. Heterogeneous wetland complexes, buffer zones, and travel corridors: landscape management for freshwater reptiles. *Biological Conservation*. 135: 67-76.
- Schaefer, J.M.; Brown, M.T. 1992. Designing and protecting river corridors for wildlife. *Rivers*. 3(1): 14-26.
- Semlitsch, R.D. 1998. Biological delineation of terrestrial buffer zones for pond-breeding salamanders. *Conservation Biology*. 12: 113-119.
- Semlitsch, R.D.; Bodie, J.R. 2003. Biological criteria for buffer zones around wetlands and riparian habitats for amphibians and reptiles. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 1219-1228.
- Vuori, K.M.; Joensuu, I. 1996. Impact of forest drainage on the macroinvertebrates of a small boreal headwater stream: do buffer zones protect lotic biodiversity? *Biological Conservation*. 77: 87-95.

Wells, M.P.; Brandon, K.E. 1993. The principles and practice of buffer zones and local participation in biodiversity conservation. *Ambio*. 22: 157-162.

Willson, J.D.; Dorcas, M.E. 2003. Effects of habitat disturbance on stream salamanders: implications for buffer zones and watershed management. *Conservation Biology*. 13: 1424-1436.

2.9 Corridor width

Andreassen, H.P.; Halle, S.; Ims, R.A. 1996. Optimal width of movement corridors for root voles: not too narrow and not too wide. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 33: 63-70.

Arnold, G.W. 1983. The influence of ditch and hedgerow structure, length of hedgerows, and area of woodland and garden on bird numbers on farmland. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 20: 731-750.

Askins, R.A. 1994. Open corridors in heavily forested landscape: impact on shrubland and forest-interior birds. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 22: 339-347.

Beier, P. 1993. Determining minimum habitat areas and habitat corridors for cougars. *Conservation Biology*. 7: 98-108.

Beier, P. 1995. Dispersal of juvenile cougars in fragmented habitat. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 59: 228-237.

Beier, P.; Noss, R.F. 1998. Do habitat corridors provide connectivity? *Conservation Biology*. 12: 1241-1252.

Bennett, A.F. 1990. Habitat corridors and the conservation of small mammals in a fragmented forest environment. *Landscape Ecology*. 4: 109-122.

Bennett, A.F. 1999. Linkages in the landscape: the role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 254 p.

Brodie, J.R. 2001. Stream and riparian management for freshwater turtles. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 62: 443-455.

Boutin, C.; Jobin, B.; Bélanger, L. 2003. Importance of riparian habitats to flora conservation in farming landscapes of southern Quebec, Canada. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 94: 73-87.

Burbrink, F.T.; Phillips, C.A.; Heske, E.J. 1998. A riparian zone in southern Illinois as a potential dispersal corridor for reptiles and amphibians. *Biological Conservation*. 86: 107-115.

Crawford, J.A.; Semlitsch, R.D. 2007. Estimation of core terrestrial habitat for stream-breeding salamanders and delineation of riparian buffers for protection of biodiversity. *Conservation Biology*. 21: 152-158.

Darveau, M.; Beauchesne, P.; Belanger, L. [and others]. 1995. Riparian forest strips as habitat for breeding birds in boreal forest. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 59: 67-78.

Dixon, J.D.; Oli, M.K.; Wooten, M.C. [and others]. 2006. Effectiveness of a regional corridor in connecting two Florida black bear populations. *Conservation Biology*. 20: 155-162.

Erman, D.C.; Newbold, J.C.; Roby, K.B. 1977. Evaluation of streamside buffer strips for protecting aquatic organisms. Tech. Completion Rep. Contribution 165. Davis, CA: University of CA-Davis, California Water Resource Center. 50 p.

Fischer, R.A.; Fishcench, J.C. 2000. Design recommendations for riparian corridors and vegetated buffer strips. EMRRP Tech. Note Series. TN EMRRp-SR-24. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center. 17 p. <http://el.erdc.usace.army.mil/elpubs/pdf/sr24.pdf> [Date accessed October 17, 2007].

Groom, J.D.; Grubb, T.C., Jr. 2002. Bird species associated with riparian woodland in fragmented, temperate-deciduous forest. *Conservation Biology*. 16: 832-836.

Haddad, N. 1999. Corridor and distance effects on interpatch movements: a landscape experiment with butterflies. *Ecological Applications*. 9: 612-622.

Haddad, N. 2000. Corridor length and patch colonization by a butterfly, *Junonia coenia*. *Conservation Biology*. 14:738-745.

Haddad, N.M.; Baum, K.A. 1999. An experimental test of corridor density on butterfly densities. *Ecological Applications*. 9: 623-633.

Hagar, J.C. 1999. Influences of riparian buffer width on bird assemblages in western Oregon. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 63: 484-496.

- Hannon, S.J.; Paszkowski, C.A.; Boutin, S. [and others]. 2002. Abundance and species composition of amphibians, small mammals, and songbirds in riparian forest buffer strips of varying widths in the boreal mixed wood of Alberta. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*. 32: 1784-1800.
- Harris, L.D.; Scheck, J. 1991. From implications to applications: the dispersal corridor principle applied to the conservation of biological diversity. In: Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J., eds. *Nature conservation 2: the role of corridors*. Chipping Norton, Australia: Surrey Beatty: 189-220.
- Harrison, R.L. 1992. Toward a theory of inter-refuge corridor design. *Conservation Biology*. 6: 293-295.
- Harvey, C.A. 2000. Colonization of agricultural windbreaks by forest trees: effects of connectivity and remnant trees. *Ecological Applications*. 10: 1762-1773.
- Hilty, J.A.; Merenlender, A.M. 2004. Use of riparian corridors and vineyards by mammalian predators in northern California. *Conservation Biology*. 18: 126-135.
- Hodges, M.F.; Krementz, D.G. 1996. Neotropical migratory breeding bird communities in riparian forests of different widths along the Altamaha River, Georgia. *Wilson Bulletin*. 108: 496-506.
- Iwata, T.; Nakano, S.; Murakami, M. 2003. Stream meanders increase insectivorous bird abundance in riparian deciduous forests. *Ecography*. 26: 325-337.
- Jenkins, D.G.; Brescacin, C.R.; Duxbury, C.V. [and others]. 2007. Does size matter for dispersal distance? *Global Ecology and Biogeography*. 16: 415-425.
- Keller, C. M.; Robbins, C.S.; Hatfield, J.S. 1993. Avian communities in riparian forests of different widths in Maryland and Delaware. *Wetlands*. 13: 137-144.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. *Conservation thresholds for land use planners*. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.
- Kilgo, J.C.; Sargent, R.A.; Chapman, B.R.; Miller, K.V. 1998. Effect of stand width and adjacent habitat on breeding bird communities in bottomland hardwoods. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 62: 72-83.
- La Polla, V.N.; Barrett, G.W. 1993. Effects of corridor width and presence on the population dynamics of the meadow vole (*Microtus pennsylvanicus*). *Landscape Ecology*. 8: 25-37.
- Ma, M.; Tarmi, S.; Helenius, J. 2002. Revisiting the species-area relationship in a semi-natural habitat: floral richness in agricultural buffer zones in Finland. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 89: 137-148.
- Machtans, C.S.; Villard, M.V.; Hannon, S.J. 1996. Use of riparian buffer strips as movement corridors by forest birds. *Conservation Biology*. 10: 1366-1379.
- Maisonneuve, C.; Rioux, S. 2001. Importance of riparian habitats for small mammal and herpetofaunal communities in agricultural landscapes of southern Québec. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 83: 165-175.
- Miller, J.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moorman, C.E. 2007. Southern two-lined salamanders in urbanizing watersheds. *Urban Ecosystems*. 10: 73-85.
- Moring, J.R. 1982. Decrease in instream gravel permeability after clear-cut logging: an indication of intragravel conditions for developing salmonid eggs and alevins. *Hydrobiologia*. 88: 295-298.
- Naiman, R.J.; Decamps, H.; Pollock, M. 1993. The role of riparian corridors in maintaining regional biodiversity. *Ecological Applications*. 3: 209-212.
- Newmark, W.D. 1993. The role and design of wildlife corridors with examples from Tanzania. *Ambio*. 22: 500-504.
- Peak, R.G.; Thompson, F.R., III. 2006. Factors affecting avian species richness and density in riparian areas. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 70: 173-179.
- Peak, R.G.; Thompson, F.R., III; Shaffer, T.L. 2004. Factors affecting songbird nest survival in riparian forests in a Midwestern agricultural landscape. *Auk*. 121: 726-737.
- Pearson, S.F.; Manuwal, D.A. 2001. Breeding bird response to riparian buffer width in managing Pacific Northwest Douglas-Fir forests. *Ecological Applications*. 11: 840-853.
- Perkins, D.W.; Hunter, M.L., Jr. 2006. Effects of riparian timber management on amphibians in Maine. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 70: 657-670.

- Pringle, C. 2003. What is hydrologic connectivity and why is it ecologically important? *Hydrological Processes*. 17: 2685-2689.
- Quinn, J.M.; Boothroyd, I.K.G.; Smith, B.J. 2004. Riparian buffers mitigate effects of pine plantation on logging on New Zealand streams 2. Invertebrate communities. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 19: 129-146.
- Ranney, J.W.; Bruner, M.C.; Levenson, J.B. 1981. The importance of edge in the structure and dynamics of forest islands. In: Burgess, R.L.; Sharpe, D.M., eds. *Forest island dynamics in man-dominated landscapes*. New York: Springer: 67-95.
- Reeder, K.F.; Debinski, D.M.; Danielson, B.J. 2005. Factors affecting butterfly use of filter strips in Midwestern USA. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 109: 40-47.
- Roe, J.H.; Georges, A. 2007. Heterogeneous wetland complexes, buffer zones, and travel corridors: landscape management for freshwater reptiles. *Biological Conservation*. 135: 67-76.
- Rudolph, D.C.; Dickson, J.G. 1990. Streamside zone width and amphibian and reptile abundance. *Southwestern Naturalist*. 35: 472-476.
- Ruefenacht, B.; Knight, R.L. 1995. Influences of corridor continuity and width on survival and movement of deer mice *Peromyscus maniculatus*. *Biological Conservation*. 71: 269-274.
- Schaefer, J.M.; Brown, M.T. 1992. Designing and protecting river corridors for wildlife. *Rivers*. 3(1): 14-26.
- Semlitsch, R.D. 1998. Biological delineation of terrestrial buffer zones for pond-breeding salamanders. *Conservation Biology*. 12: 113-119.
- Semlitsch, R.D.; Bodie, J.R. 2003. Biological criteria for buffer zones around wetlands and riparian habitats for amphibians and reptiles. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 1219-1228.
- Shirley, S.M. 2006. Movement of forest birds across river and clearcut edges of varying riparian buffer strip widths. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 223: 190-199.
- Shirley, S.M.; Smith, J.N.M. 2005. Bird community structure across riparian buffer strips of varying width in a coastal temperate forest. *Biological Conservation*. 125: 475-489.
- Sinclair, K.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moorman, C.E.; Mason, J.H. 2005. Mammalian nest predators respond to greenway width, landscape context, and habitat structure. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 71: 277-293.
- Smith, R.J.; Schaefer, J.M. 1992. Avian characteristics of an urban riparian strip corridor. *Wilson Bulletin*. 104: 732-738.
- Spackman, S.C.; Hughes, J.W. 1995. Assessment of minimum stream corridor width for biological conservation: species richness and distribution along mid-order streams in Vermont. *Biological Conservation*. 71: 325-332.
- Tassone, J. 1981. Utility of hardwood leave strips for breeding birds in Virginia's central Piedmont. Blacksburg, VA: Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University. M.S. thesis.
- Taylor, P.D.; Fahrig, L.; With, K.A. 2006. Landscape connectivity: a return to the basics. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 29-43.
- Triquet, A.M.; McPeck, G.A.; McComb, W.C. 1990. Songbird diversity in clearcuts with and without a riparian buffer strip. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 45: 500-503.
- Vander Haegen, M.W.; DeGraaf, R.M. 1996. Predation on artificial nests in forested riparian buffer strips. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 60: 542-550.
- Vannote, R.L.; Minshall, G.W.; Cummins, K.W. [and others]. 1980. The river continuum concept. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 37: 130-137.
- Weldon, A.J. 2006. How corridors reduce indigo bunting nest success. *Conservation Biology*. 20: 1300-1305.
- Wiens, J.A. 2002. Riverine landscapes: taking landscape ecology into the water. *Freshwater Biology*. 47: 501-515.
- Wissmar, R.C.; Beschta, R.L. 1998. Restoration and management of riparian ecosystems: a catchment perspective. *Freshwater Biology*. 40: 571-585.

2.10 Edge effects of corridors

- As, S. 1999. Invasion of matrix species in small habitat patches. *Conservation Ecology*. 3(1): 1. <http://www.consecol.org/vol3/iss1/art1> [Date accessed: July 18, 2007].

- Askins, R.A. 1994. Open corridors in heavily forested landscape: impact on shrubland and forest-interior birds. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 22: 339-347.
- Bollinger, E.K.; Gavin, T.A. 2004. Responses of nesting bobolinks (*Dolichonyx Oryzivorus*) to habitat edges. *Auk*. 121: 767-776.
- Brittingham, M.C.; Temple, S.A. 1983. Have cowbirds caused forest songbirds to decline? *BioScience*. 33: 31-35.
- Brothers, T.; Spingarn, A. 1992. Forest fragmentation and alien plan invasion of central Indiana old-growth forests. *Conservation Biology*. 6: 91-100.
- Burger, L.D.; Burger, L.W., Jr.; Faaborg, J. 2004. Effects of prairie fragmentation on predation on artificial nests. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 58: 249-254.
- Cadenasso, M.L.; Pickett, S.T.A. 2001. Effects of edge structure on the flux of species into forest interiors. *Conservation Biology*. 15: 91-97.
- Chasko, G.G.; Gates, J.E. 1982. Avian habitat suitability along a transmission line corridor in an oak-hickory forest region. *Wildlife Monographs*. 82: 1-41.
- Chen, J.; Franklin, J.; Spies, T. 1995 Growing season microclimatic gradients from clearcut edges into old-growth Douglas-Fir forests. *Ecological Applications*. 5: 74-86.
- Clarke, D.J.; Pearce, K.A.; White, J.G. 2006. Powerline corridors: degraded ecosystems or wildlife havens? *Wildlife Research*. 33: 615-626.
- Coppedge, B.R.; Engle, D.M.; Masters, R.E.; Gregory, M.S. 2001. Avian response to landscape change in fragmented southern Great Plains grasslands. *Ecological Applications*. 11: 47-59.
- Dignan, P.; Bren, L. 2003. Modelling light penetration edge effects for stream buffer design in mountain ash forest in southeastern Australia. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 179: 95-106.
- Euskirchen, E.S.; Chen, J.; Bi, R. 2001. Effects of edges on plant communities in a managed landscape in northern Wisconsin. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 148: 93-108.
- Fenske-Crawford, T.J.; Niemi, G.J. 1997. Predation of artificial ground nests at two types of edges in forest-dominated landscapes. *Condor*. 99: 13-24.
- Fletcher, R.J., Jr.; Koford, R.F. 2003. Spatial responses of bobolinks (*Dolichonyx Oryzivorus*) near different types of edges in northern Iowa. *Auk*. 120: 799-810.
- Fry, G.; Herlin, I.S. 1997. The ecological and amenity functions of woodland edges in the agricultural landscape: a basis for design and management. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 37: 45-55.
- Gates, J.E.; Gysel, L.W. 1978. Avian nest dispersion and fledgling success in field-forest ecotones. *Ecology*. 59: 871-883.
- Gehlhausen, S.M.; Schwartz, M.W.; Augspurger, C.K. 2000. Vegetation and microclimate edge effects in two mixed-mesophytic forest fragments. *Plant Ecology*. 147: 21-35.
- Hansen, M.J.; Clevenger, A.P. 2005. The influence of disturbance and habitat on the presence of non-native plant species along transport corridors. *Biological Conservation*. 125: 249-259.
- Harper, K.A.; Macdonald, S.E.; Burton, P.J. [and others]. 2005. Edge influences on forest structure and composition in fragmented landscapes. *Conservation Biology*. 19: 768-782.
- Henningsen, J.C.; Best, L.B. 2005. Grassland bird use of riparian filter strips in southeast Iowa. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 69: 198-210.
- Herlin, I.S. 2001. Approaches to forest edges as dynamic structures and functional concepts. *Landscape Research*. 26: 27-43.
- Johnson, R.G.; Temple, S.A. 1990. Nest predation and brood parasitism of tallgrass prairie birds. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 54: 106-111.
- Kelsey, K.W.; Naugle, D.E.; Higgins, K.F. 2006. Planting trees in prairie landscapes: do the ecological costs outweigh the benefits? *Natural Areas Journal*. 26: 254-260.
- Kennedy, C.; Wilkinson, J.; Balch, J. 2003. Conservation thresholds for land use planners. Washington, DC: Environmental Law Institute. 55 p.

- Kuehl, A.K.; Clark, W.R. 2002. Predator activity related to landscape features in northern Iowa. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 66: 1224-1234.
- Lahti, D.C. 2001. The "edge effect on nest predation" hypothesis after twenty years. *Biological Conservation*. 99: 365-374.
- Laurance, W.F.; Yensen, E. 1991. Predicting the impacts of edge effects in fragmented habitats. *Biological Conservation*. 55: 77-92.
- Lidicker, W.Z., Jr. 1999. Responses of mammals to habitat edges: an overview. *Landscape Ecology*. 14: 333-343.
- Luken, J.O.; Hinton, A.C.; Baker, D.G. 1991. Forest edges associated with power-line corridors and implications for corridor siting. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 20: 315-324.
- Matlack, G.R. 1993. Sociological edge effects: spatial distribution of human impact in suburban forest fragments. *Environmental Management*. 17: 829-835.
- Matlack, G.R. 1993. Microenvironment variation within and among forest edge sites in the Eastern United States. *Biological Conservation*. 66: 185-194.
- McDonald, R.I.; Urban, D.L. 2006. Edge effects on species composition and exotic species abundance in the North Carolina Piedmont. *Biological Invasions*. 8: 1049-1060.
- Murcia, C. 1995. Edge effects in fragmented forests: implications for conservation. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*. 10: 58-62.
- Newmark, W.D. 1993. The role and design of wildlife corridors with examples from Tanzania. *Ambio*. 22: 500-504.
- Newton, J.L.; Heske, E.J. 2001. Predation on artificial nests in small grassland patches in east-central Illinois. *American Midland Naturalist*. 145: 29-39.
- O'Leary, C.H.; Nyberg, D.W. 2000. Treelines between fields reduce density of grassland birds. *Natural Areas Journal*. 20: 243-249.
- Ortega, Y.K.; Capen, D.E. 2002. Roads as edges: effects on birds in forested landscapes. *Forest Science*. 48: 381-390.
- Paton, P.W.C. 1994. The effect of edge on avian nest success: how strong is the evidence? *Conservation Biology*. 8: 17-26.
- Pierce, R.A.; Farrand, D.T.; Kurtz, W.B. 2001. Projecting the bird community response resulting from the adoption of shelterbelt agroforestry practices in Eastern Nebraska. *Agroforestry Systems*. 53: 333-350.
- Ranney, J.W.; Bruner, M.C.; Levenson, J.B. 1981. The importance of edge in the structure and dynamics of forest islands. In: Burgess, R.L.; Sharpe, D.M., eds. *Forest island dynamics in man-dominated landscapes*. New York: Springer: 67-95.
- Renfrew, R.B.; Ribic, C.A.; Nack, J.L. 2005. Edge avoidance by nesting grassland birds: a futile strategy in a fragmented landscape. *Auk*. 122: 618-636.
- Ribic, C.A.; Sample, D.A. 2001. Associations of grassland birds with landscape factors in southern Wisconsin. *American Midland Naturalist*. 146: 105-121.
- Rich, A.C.; Dobkin, D.S.; Niles, L.J. 1994. Defining forest fragmentation by corridor width: the influence of narrow forest-dividing corridors on forest-nesting birds in southern New Jersey. *Conservation Biology*. 8: 1109-1121.
- Ries, L.; Debinski, D.M. 2001. Butterfly responses to habitat edges in highly fragmented prairies of Central Iowa. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 70: 840-852.
- Ries, L.; Fletcher, R.J.; Battin, J.; Sisk, T.D. 2004. Ecological responses to habitat edges: mechanisms, models, and variability explained. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*. 35: 491-522.
- Rodewald, A.D.; Vitz, A.C. 2005. Edge and area-sensitivity of shrubland birds. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 69: 681-688.
- Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J.; Margules, C.R. 1991. Biological consequences of ecosystem fragmentation: a review. *Conservation Biology*. 5: 18-32.
- Simberloff, D.; Farr, J.A.; Cox, J.; Mehlman, D. 1992. Movement corridors: conservation bargains or poor investments? *Conservation Biology*. 6: 493-504.
- Sinclair, K.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moorman, C.E.; Mason, J.H. 2005. Mammalian nest predators respond to greenway width, landscape context, and habitat structure. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 71: 277-293.

Stauffer, D.F.; Best, L.B. 1980. Habitat selection by birds of riparian communities: evaluating effects of habitat alterations. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 44: 1-15.

Steinblums, I.J.; Froehlich, H.A.; Lyons, J.K. 1984. Designing stable buffer strips for stream protection. *Journal of Forestry*. 82: 49-52.

Sutcliffe, O.L.; Thomas, C.D. 1996. Open corridors appear to facilitate dispersal by ringlet butterflies between woodland clearings. *Conservation Biology*. 10: 1359-1365.

Watkins, R.Z.; Chen, J.; Pickens, J.; Brosofske, K.D. 2003. Effects of forest roads on understory plants in a managed hardwood landscape. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 411-419.

Weldon, A.J. 2006. How corridors reduce indigo bunting nest success. *Conservation Biology*. 20: 1300-1305.

Winter, M.; Johnson, D.H.; Faaborg, J. 2000. Evidence for edge effects on multiple levels in tallgrass prairie. *Condor*. 102: 256-266.

Yahner, R.H. 1988. Changes in wildlife communities near edges. *Conservation Biology*. 2: 333-339.

Yahner, R.H.; Mahan, C.G. 1997. Effects of logging roads on depredation of artificial ground nests in a forested landscape. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 25: 158-162.

Yates, E.D.; Levia, D.F., Jr.; Williams, C.L. 2004. Recruitment of three non-native invasive plants into a fragmented forest in southern Illinois. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 190: 119-130.

Yosef, R. 1994. The effects of fencelines on the reproductive success of loggerhead shrikes. *Conservation Biology*. 8: 281-285.

Young, A.; Mitchell, N. 1994. Microclimate and vegetation edge effects in fragmented podocarp-broadleaf forest in New Zealand. *Biological Conservation*. 67: 63-72.

2.11 Aquatic habitat and buffers

Albarino, R.J.; Balseiro, E.G. 2002. Leaf litter breakdown in Patagonian streams: native versus exotic trees and the effect of invertebrate size. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems*. 12: 181-192.

Allmendinger, N.E.; Pizzuto, J.E.; Potter, N., Jr. [and others]. 2005. The influence of riparian vegetation on stream width, eastern Pennsylvania, USA. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. 117: 229-243.

Barton, D.R.; Taylor, W.D.; Biette, R.M. 1985. Dimensions of riparian buffer strips required to maintain trout habitat in southern Ontario streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 5: 364-378.

Broadmeadow, S.; Nisbet, T.R. 2004. The effects of riparian forest management on the freshwater environment: a literature review of best management practices. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*. 8: 286-305.

Dong, J.; Chen, J.; Brosofske, K.D.; Naiman, R.J. 1998. Modelling air temperature gradients across managed small streams in western Washington. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 5: 309-321.

Flebbe, P.A.; Dolloff, C.A. 1995. Trout use of woody debris and habitat in Appalachian streams of North Carolina. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 15: 579-590.

Frimpong, E.A.; Sutton, T.M.; Lim, K.J. [and others]. 2005. Determination of optimal riparian forest buffer dimensions for stream biota-landscape association models using multimetric and multivariate responses. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*. 62: 1-6.

Haberstock, A.E.; Nichols, H.G.; DesMeules, M.D. [and others]. 2000. Method to identify effective riparian buffer widths for Atlantic salmon habitat protection. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 36: 1271-1286.

Hylander, K.; Jonsson, B.G.; Nilsson, C. 2002. Evaluating buffer strips along boreal streams using bryophytes as indicators. *Ecological Applications*. 12: 797-806.

Jones, E.B.D., III; Helfman, G.S.; Harper, J.O.; Bolstad, P.V. 1999. Effects of riparian forest removal on fish assemblages in southern Appalachian streams. *Conservation Biology*. 13: 1454-1465.

Kelly, D.J.; Bothwell, M.L.; Schindler, D.W. 2003. Effects of solar radiation on stream benthic communities: an intersite comparison. *Ecology*. 84: 2724-2740.

Kiffney, P.M.; Richardson, J.S.; Bull, J.P. Responses of periphyton and insects to experimental manipulation of riparian buffer width along forest streams. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 40: 1060-1076.

- Lee, P.; Symth, C.; Boutin, S. 2004. Quantitative review of riparian buffer width guidelines from Canada and the United States. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 70: 165-180.
- McDade, M.H.; Swanson, F.J.; McKee, W.A. [and others]. 1990. Source distance for coarse woody debris entering small streams in western Oregon and Washington. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*. 20: 326-330.
- Meleason, M.A.; Gregory, S.V.; Bolte, J.P. 2003. Implications of riparian management strategies on wood in streams of the Pacific Northwest. *Ecological Applications*. 13: 1212-1221.
- Miller, J.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moorman, C.E. 2007. Southern two-lined salamanders in urbanizing watersheds. *Urban Ecosystems*. 10: 73-85.
- Milner, A.M.; Gloyne-Phillips, I.T. 2005. The role of riparian vegetation and woody debris in the development of macroinvertebrate assemblages in streams. *River Research and Application*. 21: 403-420.
- Montgomery, D.R. 1997. What's best on the banks? *Nature*. 388: 328-329.
- Muenz, T.K.; Golladay, S.W.; Vellidis, G.; Smith, L.L. 2006. Stream buffer effectiveness in an agriculturally influenced area, Southwestern Georgia: responses of water quality, macroinvertebrates, and amphibians. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 35: 1924-1938.
- Murphy, M.L.; Heifetz, J.; Johnson, S.W. [and others]. 1986. Effects of clear-cut logging with and without buffer strips on juvenile salmonids in Alaskan streams. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*. 43: 1521-1533.
- Newbold, J.D.; Erman, D.C.; Roby, K.B. 1980. Effects of logging on macroinvertebrates in streams with and without buffer strips. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*. 37: 1076-1085.
- Ormerod, S.J.; Rundle, S.D.; Lloyd, E.C.; Douglas, A.A. 1993. The influence of riparian management on the habitat structure and macroinvertebrate communities of upland streams draining plantation forests. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 30: 13-24.
- Parkyn, S.M.; Davies-Colley, R.J.; Halliday, N.J. [and others]. 2003. Planted riparian buffer zones in New Zealand: do they live up to expectations? *Restoration Ecology*. 11: 436-447.
- Quinn, J.M.; Boothroyd, I.K.G.; Smith, B.J. 2004. Riparian buffers mitigate effects of pine plantation on logging on New Zealand streams 2. Invertebrate communities. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 19: 129-146.
- Reid, L.M.; Hilton, S. 1998. Buffering the buffer. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-168. Arcata, CA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station, Redwood Sciences Laboratory. 10 p.
<http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/gtr-168/08reid.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 28, 2007].
- Reinhart, K.O.; VandeVoort, R. 2006. Effect of native and exotic leaf litter on macroinvertebrate communities and decomposition in western Montana stream. *Diversity and Distributions*. 12: 776-781.
- Roth, N.E.; Allan, J.D.; Erickson, D.L. 1996. Landscape influences on stream biotic integrity assessed at multiple spatial scales. *Landscape Ecology*. 11: 141-156.
- Roy, A.H.; Freeman, M.C.; Freeman, B.J. [and others]. 2006. Importance of riparian forest in urban catchments contingent on sediment and hydrologic regimes. *Environmental Management*. 37: 523-539.
- Sweeney, B.W.; Bott, T.L.; Jackson, J.K. [and others]. 2004. Riparian deforestation, stream narrowing, and loss of stream ecosystem services. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science*. 101: 14132-14137.
- Teels, B.M.; Rewa, C.A.; Myers, J. 2006. Aquatic condition response to riparian buffer establishment. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 34: 927-935.
- Vesely, D.G.; McCombs, W.C. 2002. Salamander abundance and amphibian species richness in riparian buffer strips in the Oregon Coast Range. *Forest Science*. 48: 291-297.
- Wang, L.; Lyons, J.; Kanehl, P.; Bannerman, R. 2001. Impacts of urbanization on stream habitat and fish across multiple spatial scales. *Environmental Management*. 28: 255-266.
- Willson, J.D.; Dorcas, M.E. 2003. Effects of habitat disturbance on stream salamanders: implications for buffer zones and watershed management. *Conservation Biology*. 13: 1424-1436.
- Wooster, D.E.; DeBano, S.J. 2006. Effect of woody riparian patches in croplands on stream macroinvertebrates. *Archive für Hydrobiologie*. 165: 241-268.

2.12 Stream temperature and buffers

- Anbumozhi, V.; Radhakrishnan, J.; Yamaji, E. 2005. Impact of riparian buffer zones on water quality and associated management considerations. *Ecological Engineering*. 24: 517-523.
- Barton, D.R.; Taylor, W.D.; Biette, R.M. 1985. Dimensions of riparian buffer strips required to maintain trout habitat in southern Ontario streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 5: 364-378.
- Beschta, R.L. 1997. Riparian shade and stream temperature: an alternative perspective. *Rangelands*. 19: 25-28.
- Blann, K.; Nerbonne, J.F.; Vondracek, B. 2002. Relationships of riparian buffer type to water temperature in the Driftless area ecoregion of Minnesota. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 22: 441-451.
- Brososke, K.D.; Chen, J.; Naiman, R.J.; Franklin, J.F. 1997. Harvesting effects on microclimatic gradients from small streams to uplands in western Washington. *Ecological Applications*. 7: 1188-1200.
- Brown, G.W. 1969. Predicting temperatures of small streams. *Water Resources Research*. 5: 68-75.
- Brown, G.W.; Krygier, J.T. 1970. Effects of clear-cutting on stream temperatures. *Water Resources Research*. 6: 1133-1139.
- Caissie, D. 2006. The thermal regime of rivers: a review. *Freshwater Biology*. 51: 1389-1406.
- Chen, J.; Saunders, S.C.; Crow, T.R. [and others]. 1999. Microclimate in forest ecosystem and landscape ecology. *BioScience*. 49: 299-297.
- Davies-Colley, R.J.; Payne, G.W.; van Elswijk, M. 2000. Microclimate gradients across a forest edge. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*. 24: 111-121.
- Davies, P.; Cook, D.; Rutherford, K.; Walshe, T. 2004. Managing high in-stream temperatures using riparian vegetation. *River and Riparian Land Management Technical Guideline No. 5*. Canberra, Australia: Land and Water Australia. 24 p.
- Dignan, P.; Bren, L. 2003. Modelling light penetration edge effects for stream buffer design in mountain ash forest in southeastern Australia. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 179: 95-106.
- Feller, M.C. 1981. Effects of clearcutting and slashburning on stream temperature in southwestern British Columbia. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 17: 863-867.
- Greene, G.E. 1950. Land use and trout streams. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 5: 125-126.
- Hewlett, J.D.; Fortson, J.C. 1982. Stream temperature under an inadequate buffer strip in the southeast piedmont. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 18: 983-988.
- Johnson, S.L.; Jones, J.A. 2000. Stream temperature responses to forest harvest and debris flows in western Cascades, Oregon. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 57 (supplement 2): 30-39.
- Karr, J.R.; Schlosser, I.J. 1978. Water resources and the land-water interface. *Science*. 201: 229-234.
- Larson, L.L.; Larson, S.L. 1996. Riparian shade and stream temperature: a perspective. *Rangelands*. 18: 149-152.
- Macdonald, J.S.; MacIsaac, E.A.; Herunter, H.E. 2003. The effect of variable-retention riparian buffer zones on water temperatures in small headwater streams in sub-boreal forest ecosystems of British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*. 33: 1371-1382.
- Mitchell, S. 1999. A simple model for estimating mean monthly stream temperatures after riparian canopy removal. *Environmental Management*. 24: 77-83.
- Moore, R.D.; Spittlehouse, D.L.; Story, A. 2005. Riparian microclimate and stream temperature response to forest harvesting: a review. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 41: 813-834.
- O'Laughlin, J.; Belt, G.H. 1995. Functional approaches to riparian buffer strip design. *Journal of Forestry*. 93: 29-32.
- Osborne, L.L.; Kovacic, D.A. 1993. Riparian vegetated buffer strips in water-quality restoration and stream management. *Freshwater Biology*. 29: 243-258.
- Parkyn, S.M.; Davies-Colley, R.J.; Halliday, N.J. [and others]. 2003. Planted riparian buffer zones in New Zealand: do they live up to expectations? *Restoration Ecology*. 11: 436-447.
- Quigley, T.M. 1981. Estimating contribution of overstory vegetation to stream surface shade. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 9: 22-27.

Rishel, G.B.; Lynch, J.A.; Corbett, E.S. 1982. Seasonal stream temperature changes following forest harvesting. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 11: 112-116.

Saunders, S.C.; Chen, J.; Crow, T.R.; Brososke, K.D. 1998. Hierarchical relationships between landscape structure and temperature in a managed forest landscape. *Landscape Ecology*. 13: 381-395.

Sridhar, V.; Sansone, A.L.; LaMarche, J. [and others]. 2004. Prediction of stream temperature in forested watersheds. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 40: 197-213.

Webb, B.W.; Crisp, D.T. 2006. Afforestation and stream temperature in a temperate maritime environment. *Hydrological Processes*. 20: 51-66.

Wilkerson, E.; Hagan, J.M.; Siegel, D.; Whitman, A.A. 2006. The effectiveness of different buffer widths for protecting headwater stream temperatures in Maine. *Forest Science*. 52: 221-231.

Zwieniecki, M.A.; Newton, M. 1999. Influence of streamside cover and stream features on temperature trends in forested streams of western Oregon. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry*. 14: 106-113.

2.13 Roads and wildlife crossings

Aresco, M.J. 2005. Mitigation measures to reduce highway mortality of turtles and other herpetofauna at a north Florida lake. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 69: 549-560.

Ascensão, F.; Mira, A. 2007. Factors affecting culvert use by vertebrates along two stretches of road in southern Portugal. *Ecological Research*. 22: 57-66.

Ashley, E.P.; Robinson, J.T. 1996. Road mortality of amphibians, reptiles, and other wildlife on the Long Point Causeway, Lake Erie, Ontario. *Canadian Field Naturalist*. 110: 403-412.

Cavallaro, L.; Sanden, K.; Schellhase, J.; Tanaka, M. 2005. Designing road crossings for safe wildlife passage: Ventura county guidelines. Santa Barbara, CA: University of California. 90 p. M.S. thesis.
http://www.bren.ucsb.edu/research/documents/corridors_final.pdf [Date accessed July 19, 2007].

Clevenger, A.P.; Chruszcz, B.; Gunson, K. 2001. Drainage culverts as habitat linkages and factors affecting passage by animals. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 38: 1340-1349.

Clevenger, A.P.; Waltho, N. 2000. Factors influencing the effectiveness of wildlife underpasses in Banff National Park, Alberta, Canada. *Conservation Biology*. 14: 47-56.

Clevenger, A.P.; Waltho, N. 2005. Performance indices to identify attributes of highway crossing structures facilitating movement of large mammals. *Biological Conservation*. 121: 453-464.

Clevenger, A.P.; Wierchowksi, K. 2006. Maintaining and restoring connectivity in landscapes fragmented by roads. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 502-535.

Dodd, C.K., Jr.; Barichivich, W.J.; Smith, L.L. 2004. Effectiveness of a barrier wall and culverts in reducing wildlife mortality on a heavily traveled highway in Florida. *Biological Conservation*. 118: 619-631.

Foster, M.L.; Humphrey, S.R. 1995. Use of highway underpasses by Florida panthers and other wildlife. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 23: 95-100.

Hunt, A.; Dickens, H.J.; Whelan, R.J. 1987. Movement of mammals through tunnels under railway lines. *Australian Zoologist*. 24: 89-93.

Jackson, S.D.; Griffin, C.R. 2000. A strategy for mitigating highway impacts on wildlife. In: Messmer, T.A.; West, B., eds. *Wildlife and highways: seeking solutions to an ecological and socio-economic dilemma*. Washington, DC: The Wildlife Society:143-159.

Jaeger, J.A.; Fahrig, L. 2004. Effects of road fencing on population persistence. *Conservation Biology*. 18: 1651-1657.

Lesbarreres, D.; Lode, T.; Merila, J. 2004. What type of amphibian tunnel could reduce road kills? *Oryx*. 38: 220-223.

Little, S.J.; Harcourt, R.G.; Clevenger, A.P. 2002. Do wildlife passages act as prey-traps? *Biological Conservation*. 107: 135-145.

Mader, H.J. 1984. Animal habitat isolation by roads and agricultural fields. *Biological Conservation*. 29: 81-96.

Mazerolle, M.J. 2004. Drainage ditches facilitate frog movements in a hostile landscape. *Landscape Ecology*. 20: 579-590.

McDonald, W.; St. Clair, C.C. 2004. Elements that promote highway crossing structure use by small mammals in Banff National Park. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 41: 82-93.

McDonald, W.; St. Clair, C.C. 2004. The effects of artificial and natural barriers on the movement of small mammals in Banff National Park, Canada. *Oikos*. 105: 397-407.

Ng, S.J.; Dole, J.W.; Sauvajot, S.; Riley, S.P.D.; Valone, T.J. 2004. Use of highway undercrossings by wildlife in southern California. *Biological Conservation*. 115: 499-507.

Reed, D.F.; Woodard, T.W.; Pojar, T.M. 1975. Behavioral response of mule deer to a highway underpass. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 39: 361-367.

Rodriguez, A.; Crema, G.; Delibes, M. 1996. Use of non-wildlife passages across a high speed railway by terrestrial vertebrates. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 33: 1527-1540.

Taylor, B.D.; Goldingay, R.L. 2003. Cutting the carnage: wildlife usage of road culverts in north-eastern New South Wales. *Wildlife Research*. 30: 529-537.

Trombulak, S.C.; Frissell, C.A. 2000. Review of ecological effects of roads on terrestrial and aquatic communities. *Conservation Biology*. 14: 18-30.

Yanes, M.; Velasco, J.M.; Suarez, F. 1995. Permeability of roads and railways to vertebrates: the importance of culverts. *Biological Conservation*. 71: 217-222.

2.14 Roadside corridors

Berger, R.L. 2005. Integrated roadside vegetation management. NCHRP Synthesis 341. Washington, DC: Transportation Research Board. 62 p.

Bergin, T.M.; Best, L.B.; Freemark, K.E. 1997. An experimental study of nest predation on artificial nests in roadsides adjacent to agricultural habitats in Iowa. *Wilson Bulletin*. 109: 437-448.

Bergin, T.M.; Best, L.B.; Freemark, K.E.; Koehler, K.J. 2000. Effects of landscape structure on nest predation in roadsides on nest predation in roadsides of a Midwestern agroecosystem: a multiscale analysis. *Landscape Ecology*. 15: 131-143.

Best, L.B.; Freemark, K.E.; Dinsmore, J.J.; Camp, M. 1995. A review and synthesis of habitat use by breeding birds in agricultural landscapes. *American Midland Naturalist*. 134: 1-29.

Bolger, D.T., Scott, T.A.; Rotenberry, J.T. 2001. Use of corridor-like landscape structures by bird and small mammal species. *Biological Conservation*. 102: 213-224.

Brown, G.P.; Phillips, B.L.; Webb, K.K.; Shine, R. 2006. Toad on the road: use of roads as dispersal corridors by cane toads (*Bufo marinus*) at an invasion front in tropical Australia. *Biological Conservation*. 133: 88-94.

Bryan, G.C.; Best, L.B. 1991. Bird abundance and species richness in grassed waterways in Iowa rowcrop fields. *American Midland Naturalist*. 126: 90-102.

Bryan, G.C.; Best, L.B. 1994. Avian nest density and success in grassed waterways in Iowa rowcrop fields. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 22: 583-592.

Camp, M.; Best, L.B. 1993. Bird abundance and species richness in roadsides adjacent to Iowa rowcrop fields. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 21: 315-325.

Camp, M.; Best, L.B. 1994. Nest density and nesting success of birds in roadsides adjacent to rowcrop fields. *American Midland Naturalist*. 131: 347-358.

Carroll, J.P.; Crawford, R.D. 1991. Roadside nesting by gray partridge in north-central North Dakota. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 19: 286-291.

Forman, R.T.T.; Sperling, D.; Bissonette, J.A. [and others]. 2003. *Roadside Ecology*. Covelo, CA: Island Press. 424 p.

Forman, R.T.T.; Alexander, L.E. 1998. Roads and their major ecological effects. *Annual Review of Ecological Systems*. 29: 207-231.

Gelbard, J.L.; Belnap, J. 2003. Roads as conduits for exotic plant invasions in a semiarid landscape. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 420-432.

Hansen, M.J.; Clevenger, A.P. 2005. The influence of disturbance and habitat on the presence of non-native plant species along transport corridors. *Biological Conservation*. 125: 249-259.

- Harper-Lore, B.; Wilson, M. 2000. *Roadside Use of Native Plants*. Covelo, CA: Island Press. 665 p.
- Herkert, J.R.; Sample, D.W.; Warner, R.W. 1996. Management of Midwestern grassland landscapes for the conservation of migratory birds. In: *Management of agricultural landscapes for the conservation of neotropical migratory birds*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC – 187. St. Paul, MN: Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 89-116.
- Horn, D.J.; Koford, R.K. 2000. Relation of grassland bird abundance to mowing of Conservation Reserve Program fields in North Dakota. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 28: 653-659.
- Lonsdale, W.M.; Lane, A.M. 1994. Tourist vehicles as vectors of weed seeds in Kakadu National Park, Northern Australia. *Biological Conservation*. 69: 277-283.
- Mauritzen, M.; Bergers, P.J.M.; Andreassen, H.P. [and others]. 1999. Root vole movement patterns: do ditches function as habitat corridors? *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 36: 409-421.
- Mazerolle, M.J. 2004. Drainage ditches facilitate frog movements in a hostile landscape. *Landscape Ecology*. 20: 579-590.
- Meunier, F.D.; Corbin, J.; Verheyden, C.; Jouventin, P. 1999. Effects of landscape type and extensive management on use of motorway roadsides by small mammals. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*. 77: 108-117.
- Meunier, F.D.; Verheyden, C.; Jouventin, P. 1999. Bird communities of highway verges: influence of adjacent habitat and roadside management. *Acta Oecologica*. 20: 1-13.
- Meunier, F.D.; Verheyden, C.; Jouventin, P. 2000. Use of roadsides by diurnal raptors in agricultural landscapes. *Biological Conservation*. 92: 291-298.
- Morrison, D.G. 1981. Use of prairie vegetation on disturbed sites. *Transportation Research Record*. 822: 10-17.
- Munguira, M.L.; Thomas, J.A. 1992. Use of road verges by butterfly and burnet populations, and the effect of roads on adult dispersal and mortality. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 29: 316-329.
- Panzer, R. 2002. Compatibility of prescribed burning with the conservation of insects in small, isolated prairie reserves. *Conservation Biology*. 16: 1296-1307.
- Parendes, L.A.; Jones, J.A. 2000. Role of light availability and dispersal in exotic plant invasion along roads and streams in the H.J. Andrews Experimental Forest, Oregon. *Conservation Biology*. 14: 64-75.
- Parr, T.W.; Way, J.M. 1988. Management of roadside vegetation: the long-term effects of cutting. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 25: 1073-1087.
- Pirnat, J. 2000. Conservation and management of forest patches and corridors in suburban landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 52: 135-143.
- Reijnen, R.; Foppen, R.; Veenbaas, G. 1997. Disturbance by traffic of breeding birds: evaluation of the effect and considerations in planning and managing road corridors. *Biodiversity and Conservation*. 6: 567-581.
- Ries, L.; Debinski, D.M.; Wieland, M.L. 2001. Conservation value of roadside prairie restoration to butterfly communities. *Conservation Biology*. 15: 401-411.
- Schippers, P.; Joenje, W. 2002. Modeling the effect of fertilizer, mowing, disturbance and width on biodiversity of plant communities of field boundaries. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 93: 351-365.
- Shochat, E.; Wolfe, E.H.; Patten, M.A. [and others]. 2005. Tallgrass prairie management and bird nest success along roadsides. *Biological Conservation*. 121: 399-407.
- Swengel, A.B. 1996. Effects of fire and hay management on abundance of prairie butterflies. *Biological Conservation*. 76: 73-85.
- Tikka, P.M.; Hogmander, H.; Koski, R. 2001. Road and railway verges serve as dispersal corridors for grassland plants. *Landscape Ecology*. 16: 659-666.
- Trombulak, S.C.; Frissell, C.A. 2000. Review of ecological effects of roads on terrestrial and aquatic communities. *Conservation Biology*. 14: 18-30.
- Tyser, R.W.; Worley, C.A. 1992. Alien flora in grasslands adjacent to road and trail corridors in Glacier National Park, Montana (USA). *Conservation Biology*. 6: 253-262.

- Varchola, J.M.; Dunn, J.P. 1999. Changes in ground beetle assemblages in farming systems bordered by complex or simple roadside vegetation. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 73: 41-49.
- Viles, R.L.; Rosier, D.J. 2001. How to use roads in the creation of greenways: case studies in three New Zealand landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 55: 15-27.
- Voorhees, L.D.; Cassel, J.F. 1980. Highway right-of-way: mowing versus succession as related to duck nesting. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 44: 155-163.
- Warner, R.E.; Joselyn, G.B. 1986. Responses of Illinois ring-neck pheasant populations to block roadside management. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 50: 525-532.
- Way, J.M. 1977. Roadside verges and conservation in Britain: a review. *Biological Conservation*. 12: 65-74.
- Wilcox, D.A. 1989. Migration and control of purple loosestrife (*Lythrum salicaria*) along highway corridors. *Environmental Management*. 13: 365-370.
- Wilson, S.D. 1989. The suppression of native prairie by alien species introduced for revegetation. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 17: 113-119.

3.0 Stable and Productive Soils

3.1 Buffers and cropland management

- Balesdent, J.; Chenu, C.; Balabane, M. 2000. Relationship of soil organic matter dynamics to physical protection and tillage. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 53: 215-230.
- Bradford, J.M.; Huang, C. 1987. Interrill soil erosion as affected by tillage and residue cover. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 31: 353-361.
- Chow, T.L.; Rees, H.W.; Daigle, J.L. 1999. Effectiveness of terraces/grassed waterway systems for soil and water conservation: A field evaluation. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 54: 577-583.
- Forman, R.T.T.; Buadry, J. 1984. Hedgerows and hedgerow networks in landscape ecology. *Environmental Management*. 8: 495-510.
- Holland, J.M. 2004. The environmental consequences of adopting conservation tillage in Europe: reviewing the evidence. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 103: 1-25.
- House, G.J.; Brust, G.E. 1989. Ecology of low input, no-tillage agroecosystems. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 27: 331-345.
- Jørgensen, S.E.; Nielsen, S.N. 1996. Application of ecological engineering principles in agriculture. *Ecological Engineering*. 7: 373-381.
- Kay, B.D.; VandenBygaart, A.J. 2002. Conservation tillage and depth stratification of porosity and soil organic matter. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 66: 107-118.
- Langdale, G.W.; Barnett, A.P.; Leonard, R.A.; Fleming, W.G. 1979. Reduction of soil erosion by the no-till system in the southern piedmont. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 22: 82-86.
- Liebig, M.A.; Tanaka, D.L.; Wienhold, B.J. 2004. Tillage and cropping effects on soil quality indicators in the northern Great Plains. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 78: 131-141.
- Mwendera, E.J.; Feyen, J. 1994. Effects of tillage and rainfall on soil surface roughness and properties. *Soil Technology*. 7: 93-103.
- Prato, T.; Shi, H-Q.; Rhew, R.; Brusven, M. 1989. Soil erosion and nonpoint-source pollution control in a Idaho watershed. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 44: 323-328.
- Shipitalo, M.J.; Dick, W.A.; Edwards, W.M. 2000. Conservation tillage and macropore factors that affect water movement and fate of chemicals. *Soil and Tillage Research*. 53: 167-183.
- Van Doren, C.A.; Stauffer, R.S.; Kidder, E.H. 1950. Effect of contour farming on soil loss and runoff. *Soil Science Society of American Proceedings*. 15: 413-417.

3.2 Windbreaks for wind erosion control

- Bouvet, T.; Loubet, B.; Wilson, J.D.; Tuzet, A. 2007. Filtering of windborne particles by a natural windbreak. *Boundary-Layer Meteorology*. 123: 481-509.

- Brandle, J.R.; Hodges, L.; Zhou, X.H. 2004. Windbreaks in North American agricultural systems. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 65-78.
- Brandle, J.R.; Johnson, B.B.; Akeson, T. 1992. Field windbreaks: are they economical? *Journal of Production Agriculture*. 5: 393-398.
- Cornelis, W.M.; Gabriels, D. 2005. Optimal windbreak design for wind-erosion control. *Journal of Arid Environments*. 61: 315-332.
- De Jong, E.; Kowalchuk, T.E. 1995. The effect of shelterbelts on erosion and soil properties. *Soil Science*. 159: 337-345.
- Forman, R.T.T.; Buadry, J. 1984. Hedgerows and hedgerow networks in landscape ecology. *Environmental Management*. 8: 495-510.
- Heisler, G.M.; DeWalle, D.R. 1988. Effects of windbreak structure on wind flow. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 41-69.
- Helmets, G.; Brandle, J.R. 2005. Optimum windbreak spacing in Great Plains agriculture. *Great Plains Research*. 15: 179-198.
- Loeffler, A.E.; Gordon, A.M.; Gillespie, T.J. Optical porosity and windspeed reduction by coniferous windbreaks in southern Ontario. *Agroforestry System*. 17: 119-133.
- Lyles, L. 1988. Basic wind erosion processes. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 91-101.
- McConkey, D.G.; Dyck, F.B. 1996. Summerfallow oilseed barrier strips for wind erosion control: influences on the subsequent crop. *Canadian Journal of Plant Sciences*. 76: 675-682.
- Raupach, M.R.; Woods, N.; Dorr, G. [and others]. 2001. The entrapment of particles by windbreaks. *Atmospheric Environment*. 35: 3373-3383.
- Scholten, H. 1988. Snow distribution on crop fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 363-380.
- Tibke, G. 1988. Basic principles of wind erosion control. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 103-122.
- Ticknor, K.A. 1988. Design and use of field windbreaks in wind erosion control systems. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 123-132.
- Wang, H.; Takle, E.S. 1996. On shelter efficiency of shelterbelts in oblique wind. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*. 81: 95-117.
- Wilson, J.D. 2005. Deposition of particles to a thin windbreak: the effect of a gap. *Atmospheric Environment*. 39: 5525-5531.
- Zhou, X.H.; Brandle, J.R.; Mize, C.W.; Takle, E.S. 2004. Three-dimensional aerodynamic structure of a tree shelterbelt: definition, characterization and working models. *Agroforestry Systems*. 63: 133-147.

3.3 Herbaceous wind barriers

- Aase, J.K.; Siddoway, F.H. 1976. Influence of tall wheatgrass wind barriers on soil drying. *Agronomy Journal*. 68: 627-631.
- Aase, J.K.; Siddoway, F.H.; Black, A.L. 1985. Effectiveness of grass barriers for reducing wind erosiveness. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 40: 354-357.
- Black, A.L.; Aase, J.K. 1988. The use of perennial herbaceous barriers for water conservation and the protection of soils and crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 135-148.
- Boldes, U.; Colman, J. Marañón Di Leo, J. 2001. Field study of the flow behind single and double row herbaceous windbreaks. *Journal of Wind Engineering and Industrial Aerodynamics*. 89: 665-687.
- Brandle, J.R.; Hodges, L.; Zhou, X.H. 2004. Windbreaks in North American agricultural systems. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 65-78.
- Brandle, J.R.; Johnson, B.B.; Akeson, T. 1992. Field windbreaks: are they economical? *Journal of Production Agriculture*. 5: 393-398.
- Cornelis, W.M.; Gabriels, D. 2005. Optimal windbreak design for wind-erosion control. *Journal of Arid Environments*. 61: 315-332.

- De Jong, E.; Kowalchuk, T.E. 1995. The effect of shelterbelts on erosion and soil properties. *Soil Science*. 159: 337-345.
- Forman, R.T.T.; Buadry, J. 1984. Hedgerows and hedgerow networks in landscape ecology. *Environmental Management*. 8: 495-510.
- Helmets, G.; Brandle, J.R. 2005. Optimum windbreak spacing in Great Plains agriculture. *Great Plains Research*. 15: 179-198.
- Heisler, G.M.; DeWalle, D.R. 1988. Effects of windbreak structure on wind flow. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 41-69.
- Lyles, L. 1988. Basic wind erosion processes. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 91-101.
- McConkey, D.G.; Dyck, F.B. 1996. Summerfallow oilseed barrier strips for wind erosion control: influences on the subsequent crop. *Canadian Journal of Plant Sciences*. 76: 675-682.
- Raupach, M.R.; Woods, N.; Dorr, G. [and others]. 2001. The entrapment of particles by windbreaks. *Atmospheric Environment*. 35: 3373-3383.
- Scholten, H. 1988. Snow distribution on crop fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 363-380.
- Tibke, G. 1988. Basic principles of wind erosion control. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 103-122.
- Ticknor, K.A. 1988. Design and use of field windbreaks in wind erosion control systems. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 123-132.
- Wang, H.; Takle, E.S. 1996. On shelter efficiency of shelterbelts in oblique wind. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*. 81: 95-117.
- Wilson, J.D. 2005. Deposition of particles to a thin windbreak: the effect of a gap. *Atmospheric Environment*. 39: 5525-5531.

3.4 Grassed waterways

- Chow, T.L.; Rees, H.W.; Daigle, J.L. 1999. Effectiveness of terraces/grassed waterway systems for soil and water conservation: A field evaluation. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 54: 577-583.
- Corolo, F.G.; Ferro, V.; Termini, D. 2002. Flow velocity measurements in vegetated channels. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*. 128: 664-673.
- Dabney, S.M.; Moore, M.T.; Locke, M.A. 2006. Integrated management of in-field, edge-of-field, and after-field buffers. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 42: 15-24.
- Fiener, P.; Auerswald, K. 2003. Effectiveness of grassed waterways in reducing runoff and sediment delivery from agricultural watersheds. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 32: 927-936.
- Fiener, P.; Auerswald, K. 2003. Concept and effects of a multi-purpose grassed waterway. *Soil Use and Management*. 19: 65-72.
- Fiener, P.; Auerswald, K. 2005. Measurement and modeling of concentrated runoff in grassed waterways. *Journal of Hydrology*. 301: 198-215.
- Gwinn, W.R.; Ree, W.O. 1980. Maintenance effects on the hydraulic properties of a vegetation lined channel. Paper Number 79-2063. St. Joseph, MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers.
- Samani, J.M.V.; Kouwen, N. 2002. Stability and erosion in grassed channels. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*. 128: 40-45.
- Temple, D.M. 1982. Flow retardance of submerged grass channel linings. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 25: 1300-1303.
- Temple, D.M. 1985. Stability of grass-lined channels following mowing. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 28: 750-754.
- Temple, D.M. 1999. Flow resistance of grass-lined channel banks. *Applied Engineering in Agriculture*. 15: 129-133.
- Temple, D.M.; Robinson, K.M.; Ahring, R.M.; Davis, A.G. 1987. Stability design of grass-lined open channels. *Agriculture Handbook 667*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department Of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service. 175 p. <http://www.info.usda.gov/CED/ftp/CED/AH-667.pdf> [Date accessed: October 19, 2007].

3.5 Phytoremediation buffers

Aprill, W.; Sims, R.C. 1990. Evaluation of the use of prairie grasses for stimulating polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon treatment in soil. *Chemosphere*. 20: 253-265.

Burken, J.G.; Schnoor, J.L. 1997. Uptake and metabolism of atrazine by poplar trees. *Environmental Science and Technology*. 31: 1399-1406.

Davis, L.C.; Castro-Diaz, S.; Zhang, Q.; Erickson, L.E. 2002. Benefits of vegetation for soils with organic contaminants. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*. 21: 457-491.

Dickinson, N.M. 2000. Strategies for sustainable woodland on contaminated sites. *Chemosphere*. 41: 259-263.

Dickinson, N.M.; MacKay, J.M.; Goodman, J.M.; Putwain, P.D. 2000. Planting trees on contaminated soils: issues and guidelines. *Land Contamination and Reclamation*. 8: 87-102.

French, C.J.; Dickinson, N.M.; Putwain, P.D. 2006. Woody biomass phytoremediation of contaminated brownfield land. *Environmental Pollution*. 141: 387-395.

Glick, B.R. 2003. Phytoremediation: synergistic use of plants and bacteria to clean up the environment. *Biotechnology Advances*. 21: 383-393.

Kuzovkina, Y.A.; Quigley, M.F. 2005. Willows beyond wetlands: uses of *Salix* L. species for environmental projects. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 162: 183-204.

Licht, L.A.; Isebrands, J.G. 2005. Linking phytoremediated pollutant removal to biomass economic opportunities. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 28: 203-218.

Pilon-Smits, E. 2005. Phytoremediation. *Annual Review of Plant Biology*. 56: 15-39.

Prasad, M.N.V. 2003. Phytoremediation of metal-polluted ecosystems: hype for commercialization. *Russian Journal of Plant Physiology*. 50: 686-700.

Pulford, I.D.; Watson, C. 2003. Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated land by trees – a review. *Environment International*. 29: 529-540.

Raskin, I.; Ensley, B.D. 2000. *Phytoremediation of toxic metals: using plants to clean up the environment*. New York: John Wiley and Sons. 304 p.

Rockwood, D.L.; Naidu, C.V.; Carter, D.R. [and others]. 2004. Short-rotation woody crops and phytoremediation: opportunities for agroforestry? *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 51-63.

Susarala, S.; Medina, V.F.; McCutcheon, S.C. 2002. Phytoremediation: an ecological solution to organic chemical contamination. *Ecological Engineering*. 18: 647-658.

USEPA. 2000. Introduction to phytoremediation. Pub. No. 600/R-99/107. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 104 p. <http://www.cluin.org/download/remed/introphyto.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 28, 2007].

Volk, T.A.; Abrahamson, L.P.; Nowak, C.A. [and others]. 2006. The development of short-rotation willow in the northeastern United States for bioenergy and bioproducts, agroforestry and phytoremediation. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 30: 715-727.

Westphal, L.M.; Isebrands, J.G. 2001. Phytoremediation of Chicago's brownfields – considerations of ecological approaches and social issues. Chicago: Brownfields 2001 proceedings Brownfields. 9 p. http://ncrs.fs.fed.us/pubs/jrnl/2001/nc_2001_Westphal_001.pdf. [Date accessed: September 28, 2007].

4.0 Alternative Income

4.1 Buffers and ecosystem services

Benedict, M.A.; and McMahon, E.T. 2006. *Green infrastructure: linking landscapes and communities*. Washington, DC: Island Press. 320 p.

Bergen, S.D.; Bolton, S.M.; Fridley, J.L. 2001. Design principles for ecological engineering. *Ecological Engineering*. 18: 201-210.

Cable, T.T.; Cook, P.S. 1990. The use of windbreaks by hunters in Kansas. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 45: 574-577.

Cook, P.S.; Cable, T.T. 1990. The economic value of windbreaks for hunting. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 18: 337-342.

- Fausold, C.H.; Lillieholm, R.J. 1999. The economic value of open space: a review and synthesis. *Environmental Management*. 23: 307-320.
- Graham, D.W.; Smith, V.H. 2004. Designed ecosystem services: application of ecological principles in wastewater treatment engineering. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*. 2: 199-206.
- Hill, D.B.; Buck, L.W. 2000. Forest farming practices. In: Garrett, H.E.; Rietveld, W.J.; Fisher, R.F. *North American agroforestry: an integrated science and practice*. Madison, WI: American Society of Agronomy: 283-320.
- Jørgensen, S.E.; Nielsen, S.N. 1996. Application of ecological engineering principles in agriculture. *Ecological Engineering*. 7: 373-381.
- Josiah, S.J.; St-Pierre, R.; Brott, H.; Brandle, J. 2004. Productive conservation: diversifying farm enterprises by producing specialty woody products in agroforestry systems. *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture*. 23: 93-108.
- Mitsch, W.J. 1992. Landscape design and the role of created, restored, and natural riparian wetlands in controlling nonpoint source pollution. *Ecological Engineering*. 1: 27-47.
- Nowak, D.J. 1994. Air pollution removal by Chicago's urban forest. In: McPherson, E.G.; Nowak, D.J.; Rowntree, R.A., eds. *Chicago's urban forest ecosystem: results of the Chicago Urban Forest Climate Project*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-186. Upper Darby, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station: 63-81.
- Robles-Diaz-de-Leon, L.F.; Kangas, P. 1999. Evaluation of potential gross income from non-timber products in a model riparian forest for the Chesapeake Bay watershed. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 215-225.
- 4.2 Carbon sequestration**
- Coleman, M.D.; Isebrands, J.G.; Tolsted, D.N.; Tolbert, V.R. 2004. Comparing soil carbon of short rotation poplar plantations with agricultural crops and woodlots in north central United States. *Environmental Management*. 33: s229-s308.
- Corre, M.D.; Schnabel, R.R.; Shaffer, J.A. 1999. Evaluation of soil organic carbon under forests, cool-season and warm-season grasses in northeastern US. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 31: 1531-1539.
- Dixon, R.K. 1995. Agroforestry systems: sources or sinks of greenhouse gases? *Agroforestry Systems*. 31: 99-116.
- Kirschbaum, M.U.F. 2003. Can trees buy time? An assessment of the role of vegetation sinks as part of the global carbon cycle. *Climatic Change*. 58: 47-71.
- Kort, J.; Turnock, R. 1999. Carbon reservoir and biomass in Canadian prairie shelterbelts. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 175-186.
- Kursten, E.; Burschel, P. 1993. CO₂-mitigation by agroforestry. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 70: 533-544.
- Marquez, C.O.; Cambardella, C.A.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 1999. Assessing soil quality in a riparian buffer by testing organic matter fractions in central Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 133-140.
- McCarty, G.W.; Richie, J.C. 2002. Impact of soil movement on carbon sequestration in agricultural ecosystems. *Environmental Pollution*. 116: 423-430.
- McHale, M.R.; McPherson, E.G.; Burke, I.C. 2007. The potential of urban tree plantings to be cost effective in carbon credit markets. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 6: 49-60.
- Montagnini, F.; Nair, P.K. 2004. Carbon sequestration: an underexploited environmental benefit of agroforestry systems. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 281-295.
- Nowak, D.J. 1993. Atmospheric carbon reduction by urban trees. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 37: 207-217.
- Nowak, D.J.; Crane, D.E. 2002. Carbon storage and sequestration by urban trees in the USA. *Environmental Pollution*. 116: 381-389.
- Paul, K.I.; Polglase, P.J.; Nyakuengama, J.G.; Khanna, P.K. 2002. Changes in soil carbon following afforestation. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 168: 241-257.
- Peichl, M.; Thevathasan, N.V.; Gordon, A.M. [and others]. 2006. Carbon sequestration potentials in temperate tree-based intercropping systems, southern Ontario, Canada. *Agroforestry Systems*. 66: 243-257.
- Sauer, T.J.; Cambardella, C.A. Brandle, J.R. 2007. Soil carbon and tree litter dynamics in a red cedar-scotch pine shelterbelt. *Agroforestry Systems*. 71: 163-174.

Schroeder, P. 1994. Carbon storage benefits of agroforestry systems. *Agroforestry Systems*. 27: 89-97.

Sharrow, S.H.; Ismail, S. 2004. Carbon and nitrogen storage in agroforests, tree plantations, and pastures in western Oregon, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 60: 123-130.

Tufekcioglu, A.; Raich, J.W.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 2001. Soil respiration within riparian buffers and adjacent crop fields. *Plant and Soil*. 229: 117-124.

Tufekcioglu, A.; Raich, J.W.; Isenhardt, T.M.; Schultz, R.C. 2003. Biomass, carbon, and nitrogen dynamics of multi-species riparian buffers within an agricultural watershed in Iowa, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 57: 187-198.

Uri, N.D. 2001. Conservation practices in U.S. agriculture and their impact on carbon sequestration. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*. 70: 323-344.

Wright, L.L.; Hughes, E.E. 1993. U.S. carbon offset potential using biomass energy systems. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 70: 483-497.

4.3 Multi-story cropping in buffers

Hill, D.B.; Buck, L.W. 2000. Forest farming practices. In: Garrett, H.E.; Rietveld, W.J.; Fisher, R.F. *North American agroforestry: an integrated science and practice*. Madison, WI: American Society of Agronomy: 283-320.

Josiah, S.J.; St-Pierre, R.; Brott, H.; Brandle, J. 2004. Productive conservation: diversifying farm enterprises by producing specialty woody products in agroforestry systems. *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture*. 23: 93-108.

Robles-Diaz-de-Leon, L.F. ; Kangas, P. 1999. Evaluation of potential gross income from non-timber products in a model riparian forest for the Chesapeake Bay watershed. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 215-225.

Wiersum, K.F. 2004. Forest gardens as an 'intermediate' land-use system in the nature-culture continuum: characteristics and future potential. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61/62: 123-134.

4.4 Windbreaks and crop yields

Baldwin, C.S. 1988. The influence of field windbreaks on vegetable and specialty crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 191-203.

Brandle, J.R.; Hodges, L.; Zhou, X.H. 2004. Windbreaks in North American agricultural systems. *Agroforestry Systems*. 61: 65-78.

Brandle, J.R.; Johnson, B.B.; Akeson, T. 1992. Field windbreaks: are they economical? *Journal of Production Agriculture*. 5: 393-398.

Cleugh, H.A. 1998. Effects of windbreaks on airflow, microclimates and crop yields. *Agroforestry Systems*. 41: 55-84.

Finch, S.J. 1988. Field windbreak: design criteria. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 215-228.

Grala, R.K.; Colletti, J.P. 2003. Estimates of additional maize yields required to offset costs of tree-windbreaks in midwestern USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 59: 11-20.

Heisler, G.M.; DeWalle, D.R. 1988. Effects of windbreak structure on wind flow. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 41-69.

Helmert, G.; Brandle, J.R. 2005. Optimum windbreak spacing in Great Plains agriculture. *Great Plains Research*. 15: 179-198.

Kort, J. 1988. Benefits of windbreaks to field and forage crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 165-190.

Loeffler, A.E.; Gordon, A.M.; Gillespie, T.J. Optical porosity and windspeed reduction by coniferous windbreaks in Southern Ontario. *Agroforestry System*. 17: 119-133.

McNaughton, K.G. 1988. Effects of windbreaks on turbulent transport and microclimate. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 17-39.

Norton, R.L. 1988. Windbreaks: benefits to orchard and vineyard crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 22/23:205-213.

Scholten, H. 1988. Snow distribution on crop fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 363-380.

Zhou, X.H.; Brandle, J.R.; Mize, C.W.; Takle, E.S. 2004. Three-dimensional aerodynamic structure of a tree shelterbelt: definition, characterization and working models. *Agroforestry Systems*. 63: 133-147.

4.5 Alley cropping

- Delate, K.; Holzmueller, E.; Frederick, D.D. [and others]. 2005. Tree establishment and growth using forage ground covers in an alley-cropped system in midwestern USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 65: 43-52.
- Garrett, H.E.; McGraw, R.L. 2000. Alley cropping practices. In: Garrett, H.E.; Rietveld, W.J.; Fisher, R.F. *North American agroforestry: an integrated science and practice*. Madison, WI: American Society of Agronomy: 149-188.
- Garrity, D.P.; Mercado, A.R., Jr. 1994. Nitrogen fixation capacity in the component species of contour hedgerows: how important? *Agroforestry Systems*. 27: 241-258.
- Gillespie, A.R.; Jose, S.; Mengel, D.B. [and others]. 2000. Defining competition vectors in a temperate alley cropping system in the midwestern USA: 1. production physiology. *Agroforestry Systems*. 48: 25-40.
- Jose, S.; Gillespie, A.R.; Seifert, J.R.; Biehle, D.J. 2000. Defining competition vectors in temperate alley cropping system in the midwestern USA: 2. competition for water. *Agroforestry Systems*. 48: 41-59.
- Jose, S.; Gillespie, A.R.; Seifert, J.R. [and others]. 2000. Defining competition vectors in temperate alley cropping system in the midwestern USA: 3. competition for nitrogen and litter decomposition dynamics. *Agroforestry Systems* 48:41-59.
- Mungai, N.W.; Motavalli, P.P. 2006. Litter quality effects on soil carbon and nitrogen dynamics in temperate alley cropping systems. *Applied Soil Ecology*. 31: 32-42.
- Ntayombya, P.; Gordon, A.M. 1995. Effects of black locust on productivity and nitrogen nutrition of intercropped barley. *Agroforestry Systems*. 29: 239-254.
- Seiter, S.; William, R.D.; Hibbs, D.E. 1999. Crop yield and tree-leaf production in three planting patterns of temperate-zone alley cropping in Oregon, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 46: 273-288.
- Stamps, W.T.; Woods, T.W.; Linit, M.J.; Garrett, H.E. 2002. Arthropod diversity in alley cropped black walnut stands in eastern Missouri, USA. *Agroforestry Systems*. 56: 167-175.
- Vandermeer, J. 1997. Maximizing crop yield in alley crops. *Agroforestry Systems*. 40: 199-206.

4.6 Biofuel buffers

- Abrahamson, L.P.; Robison, D.J.; Volk, T.A. [and others]. 1998. Sustainability and environmental issues associated with willow bioenergy development in New York, USA. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 15: 17-22.
- Alley, J.L.; Garrett, H.E.; McGraw, R.L. [and others]. 1999. Forage legumes as living mulches for trees in agroforestry practices – preliminary results. *Agroforestry Systems*. 44: 281-291.
- Christian, D.P.; Hoffman, W.; Hanowski, J.M. [and others]. 1998. Bird and mammal diversity on woody biomass plantations in North America. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 14: 395-402.
- Farrell, A.E.; Plevin, R.J.; Turner, B.T. [and others]. 2006. Ethanol can contribute to energy and environmental goals. *Science*. 311: 506-508.
- Fike, J.H.; Parrish, D.J.; Wolf, D.D. [and others]. 2006. Long-term yield potential of switchgrass-for-biofuel systems. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 30: 198-206.
- Graham, R.L.; Wright, L.L.; Turhollow, A.F. 1992. The potential for short-rotation woody crops to reduce U.S. CO₂ emissions. *Climatic Change*. 22: 223-238.
- Gruenewald, H.; Brandt, B.K.V.; Schneider, B.U. [and others]. 2007. Agroforestry systems for the production of woody biomass for energy transformation purposes. *Ecological Engineering*. 29: 319-328.
- Hall, D.O.; Scrase, J.I. 1998. Will biomass be the environmentally friendly fuel of the future? *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 15: 357-367.
- Keoleian, G.A.; Volk, T.A. 2005. Renewable energy from willow biomass crops: life cycle energy, environmental and economic performance. *Critical Reviews in Plant Science*. 24: 385-406.
- Kuemmel, B.; Langer, V.; Magid, J. [and others]. 1998. Energetic, economic and ecological balances of combined food and energy system. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 15: 407-416.
- Lemus, R.; Brummer, E.C.; Moore, K.J. [and others]. 2002. Biomass yield and quality of 20 switchgrass populations in southern Iowa, USA. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 23: 433-442.
- Lewandowski, I.; Scurlock, J.M.O.; Lindvall, E.; Christou, M. 2003. The development and current status of perennial rhizomatous grasses as energy crops in the US and Europe. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 25: 335-361.

- Madakadze, J.C.; Stewart, K.; Peterson, P.R. [and others]. 1999. Cutting frequency and nitrogen fertilization effects on yield and nitrogen concentration of switchgrass in a short season area. *Crop Science*. 39: 552-557.
- McLaughlin, R.A.; Pope, P.E.; Hansen, E.A. 1985. Nitrogen fertilization and ground cover in a hybrid poplar plantation: effects on nitrate leaching. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 14: 241-245.
- McLaughlin, S.B.; Walsh, M.E. 1998. Evaluating environmental consequences of producing herbaceous crops for bioenergy. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 14: 317-324.
- Murray, L.D.; Best, L.B. 2003. Short-term bird response to harvesting switchgrass for biomass in Iowa. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 67: 611-621.
- Paine, L.K.; Peterson, T.L.; Undersander, D.J. [and others]. 1996. Some ecological and socio-economic considerations for biomass energy crop production. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 10: 231-242.
- Parrish, D.J.; Fike, J.H. 2005. The biology and agronomy of switchgrass for biofuels. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*. 24: 423-459.
- Powelson, D.S.; Riche, A.B.; Shield, J. 2005. Biofuels and other approaches for decreasing fossil fuel emissions from agriculture. *Annals of Applied Biology*. 146: 193-201.
- Ranney, J.W.; Mann, L.K. 1994. Environmental considerations in energy crop production. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 6: 211-228.
- Roth, A.M.; Sample, D.W.; Ribic, C.A. [and others]. 2005. Grassland bird response to harvesting switchgrass as a biomass energy crop. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 28: 490-498.
- Sanderson, M.A.; Read, J.C.; Reed, R.L. 1999. Harvest management of switchgrass for biomass feedstock and forage production. *Agronomy Journal*. 91: 5-10.
- Shapouri, H.; Duffield, J.A.; Wang, M. 2003. The energy balance of corn ethanol revisited. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers*. 46: 959-968.
- Spinelli, R.; Nati, C.; Magagnotti, N. 2006. Biomass harvesting from buffer strips in Italy: three options compared. *Agroforestry Systems*. 68: 113-121.
- Turhollow, A. 2000. Costs of producing biomass from riparian buffer strips. ORNL/TM-1999/146. Oak Ridge, TN: Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Energy Division. 72 p. <http://www.ornl.gov/~webworks/cpr/v823/rpt/108548.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 25, 2007].
- Vogel, K.P.; Brejda, J.J.; Walters, D.T.; Buxton, D.R. 2002. Switchgrass biomass production in the Midwest USA: harvest and nitrogen management. *Agronomy Journal*. 94: 423-420.
- Volk, T.A.; Abrahamson, L.P.; Nowak, C.A. [and others]. 2006. The development of short-rotation willow in the northeastern United States for bioenergy and bioproducts, agroforestry and phytoremediation. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 30: 715-727.
- Volk, T.A.; Verwijst, T.; Tharakan, P.J. [and others]. 2004. Growing fuel: a sustainability assessment of willow biomass crops. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*. 2: 411-418.
- Wright, L.L. 1994. Production technology status of woody and herbaceous crops. *Biomass and Bioenergy*. 6: 191-209.
- 4.7 Energy conservation: site**
- Akbari, H. 2002. Shade trees reduce building energy use and Co2 emissions from power plants. *Environmental Pollution*. 116: S119-S126.
- Akbari, H.; Kurn, D.M.; Bretz, S.E.; Hanford, J.W. 1997. Peak power and cooling energy savings of shade trees. *Energy and Buildings*. 25: 139-148.
- Brown, R.D.; Gillespie, T.J. 1995. *Microclimatic landscape design*. New York: John Wiley and Sons. 212 p.
- DeWalle, D.R.; Heisler, G.M. 1983. Windbreak effects on air infiltration and space heating in a mobile home. *Energy and Buildings*. 5: 279-288.
- DeWalle, D.R.; Heisler, G.M. 1988. Use of windbreaks for home energy conservation. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 243-260.

- Harrje, D.T.; Buckley, C.E.; Heisler, G.M. 1982. Building energy reductions: windbreak optimization. *Journal of Energy Division*. 108: 143-152.
- Heisler, G.M. 1986. Effects of individual trees on the solar radiation climate of small buildings. *Urban Ecology*. 9: 337-359.
- Heisler, G.M. 1986. Energy savings with trees. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 12: 113-125.
- Hutchison, B.A.; Taylor, F.G. 1983. Energy conservation mechanisms and potentials of landscape design to ameliorate building microclimates. *Landscape Journal*. 2: 19-39.
- Jones, B.W.; Oreszczyn, T. 1987. The effects of shelterbelts on microclimate and on passive solar gains. *Building and Environment*. 22: 101-110.
- McPherson, E.G. 1988. Functions of buffer plantings in urban environments. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 281-298.
- McPherson, E.G.; Dougherty, E. 1989. Selecting trees for shade in the southwest. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 15: 35-43.
- McPherson, E.G.; Herrington, L.P.; Heisler, G.M. 1988. Impacts of vegetation on residential heating and cooling. *Energy and Buildings*. 12: 41-51.
- McPherson, E.G.; Rowntree, R.A. 1993. Energy conservation potential of urban tree planting. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 19: 321-331.
- McPherson, E.G.; Rowntree, R.A.; Wagar, J.A. 1995. Energy-efficient landscapes. In: Bradley, G.A., ed. *Urban forest landscapes: integrating multidisciplinary perspectives*. Seattle: University of Washington Press: 150-160.
- McPherson, E.G.; Simpson, J.R. 2003. Potential energy savings in buildings by an urban tree planning programme in California. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 2: 73-86.
- Meier, A.K. 1990. Strategic landscaping and air-conditioning savings: a literature review. *Energy and Buildings*. 15/16: 478-486.
- Robinette, G.O. 1977. *Landscape planning for energy conservation*. Reston, VA: Environmental Design Press. 227 p.
- Rudie, R., Jr.; Dewers, R.S. 1984. Effects of tree shade on home cooling requirements. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 10: 320-322.
- Spronken-Smith, R.A.; Oke, T.R. 1998. The thermal regime of urban parks in two cities with different summer climates. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*. 19: 2085-2104.
- Stathopoulos, T.; Chiovitti, D.; Dodaro, L. 1994. Wind shielding effects of trees on low buildings. *Building and Environment*. 29: 141-150.
- Youngberg, R.J. 1983. Shading effects of deciduous trees. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 9: 295-297.

4.8 Energy conservation: landscape

- Akbari, H. 2002. Shade trees reduce building energy use and CO₂ emissions from power plants. *Environmental Pollution*. 116: S119-S126.
- Akbari, H.; Pomerantz, M.; Taha, H. 2001. Cool surfaces and shade trees to reduce energy use and improve air quality in urban areas. *Solar Energy*. 70: 295-310.
- Bernatzky, A. 1982. The contribution of trees and green spaces to a town climate. *Energy and Buildings*. 5: 1-10.
- Chang, C.; Li, M.; Chang, S. 2007. A preliminary study on the local cool-island intensity of Taipei city parks. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 80: 386-395.
- Georgi, N.J.; Zafiriadis, K. 2006. The impact of park trees on microclimate in urban areas. *Urban Ecosystems*. 9: 195-209.
- Givoni, B. 1991. Impact of planted areas on urban environmental quality: a review. *Atmospheric Environment*. 25B: 289-299.
- Honjo, T.; Takakura, T. 1990. Simulation of thermal effects of urban green areas on their surrounding areas. *Energy and Buildings*. 15/16: 443-446.
- McPherson, E.G. 1988. Functions of buffer plantings in urban environments. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 281-298.

- McPherson, E.G.; Simpson, J.R. 2003. Potential energy savings in buildings by an urban tree planning programme in California. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 2: 73-86.
- Meleason, M.A.; Quinn, J.M. 2004. Influence of riparian buffer width on air temperature at Whangapoua Forest, Coromandel Peninsula, New Zealand. *Forest Ecology and Management*. 191: 365-371.
- Oke, T.R.; Crowther, J.M.; McNaughton, K.G. [and others]. 1989. The micrometeorology of the urban forest. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London Series B Biological Sciences*. 324: 335-349.
- Saito, I.; Ishihara, O.; Katayama, T. 1991. Study of the effect of green areas on the thermal environment in an urban area. *Energy and Buildings*. 25/26: 493-498.
- Simpson, J.R.; McPherson, E.G. 1996. Potential of tree shade for reducing residential energy use in California. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 22: 10-18.
- Spronken-Smith, R.A.; Oke, T.R.; Lowry, W.P. 2000. Advection and the surface energy balance across an irrigated urban park. *International Journal of Climatology*. 20: 1033-1047.
- Spronken-Smith, R.A.; Oke, T.R. 1998. The thermal regime of urban parks in two cities with different summer climates. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*. 19: 2085-2104.
- Stathopoulos, T.; Chiovitti, D.; Dodaro, L. 1994. Wind shielding effects of trees on low buildings. *Building and Environment*. 29: 141-150.
- Taha, H.; Akbari, H.; Rosenfeld, A. 1991. Heat island and oasis effects of vegetative canopies: micro—meteorological field-measurements. *Theoretical and Applied Climatology*. 44: 123-138.
- Upmanis, H.; Eliasson, J.; Lindqvist, S. 1998. The influence of green areas on nocturnal temperatures in a high latitude city (Goteborg, Sweden). *International Journal of Climatology*. 18: 681-700.
- Vu, T.C.; Asaeda, T.; Abu, E.M. 1998. Reductions in air conditioning energy caused by a nearby park. *Energy and Buildings*. 29: 83-92.
- Wang, F. 2006. Modelling sheltering effects of trees on reducing space heating in office buildings in a windy city. *Energy and Buildings*. 38: 1443-1454.

4.9 Crop pollinator habitat

- Altieri, M.A. 1983. Vegetational designs for insect-habitat management. *Environmental Management*. 7: 3-7.
- Altieri, M.A.; Nicholls, C.I.; Fritz, M.A. 2005. Manage insects on your farm: a guide to ecological strategies. Beltsville, MD: Sustainable Agriculture Network. 130 p. <http://www.sare.org/publications/insect/insect.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 25, 2007].
- Banaszak, J. 1992. Strategy for conservation of wild bees in an agricultural landscape. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 40: 179-192.
- Gathmann, A.; Tschamtko, T. 2002. Foraging ranges of solitary bees. *Journal of Animal Ecology*. 71: 757-764.
- Issacs, R.; Tuell, J. 2007. Conserving native bees on farmland. Bulletin E-2985. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University. 4 p. <http://nativeplants.msu.edu/pdf/E2985ConservingNativeBees.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Kearns, C.A.; Inouye, D.W.; Waser, N.M. 1998. Endangered mutualisms: the conservation of plant-pollinator interactions. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*. 29: 83-112.
- Kells, A.R.; Holland, J.M.; Goulson, D. 2001. The value of uncropped field margins for foraging bumblebees. *Journal of Insect Conservation*. 5: 283-291.
- Kremen, C.; Williams, N.M.; Bugg, R.L. [and others]. 2004. The area requirements of an ecosystem service: crop pollination by native bee communities in California. *Ecology Letters*. 7: 1109-1119.
- Lagerloef, J.; Stark, J.; Svensson, B. 1992. Margins of agricultural fields as habitats for pollinating insects. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 40: 117-124.
- Mayer, D. F.; Johansen, C.A.; Baird, C.R. 1999. How to reduce bee poisoning from pesticides. PNW-518. Pullman, WA: Washington State University. 15 p. <http://cru.cahe.wsu.edu/CEPublications/pnw0518/pnw0518.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Morandin, L.; Winston, M.L. 2006. Pollinators provide economic incentive to preserve natural land in agroecosystems. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 116: 289-292.

- Pywell, R.F.; Warman, E.A.; Sparks, T.H. [and others]. 2004. Assessing habitat quality for butterflies on intensively managed arable farmland. *Biological Conservation*. 118: 313-325.
- Pywell, R.F.; Warman, E.A.; Carvell, C. [and others]. 2005. Providing foraging resources for bumblebees in intensively farmed landscapes. *Biological Conservation* 121:479-494.
- Reeder, K.F.; Debinski, D.M.; Danielson, B.J. 2005. Factors affecting butterfly use of filter strips in midwestern USA. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 109: 40-47.
- Ricketts, T.H.; Williams, N.M.; Mayfield, M.M. Connectivity and ecosystem services: crop pollination in agricultural landscapes. In: Crooks, K.R.; Sanjayan, M., eds. *Connectivity conservation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 255-289.
- Russell, K.N.; Ikerd, H.; Droege, S. 2005. The potential conservation value of unmowed powerline strips for native bees. *Biological Conservation*. 124: 133-148.
- Smallidge, P.J.; Leopold, D.J. 1997. Vegetation management for the maintenance and conservation of butterfly habitats in temperate human-dominated landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 38: 259-280.
- Vaughan, M.; Shepherd, M.; Kremen, C.; Black, S.H. 2004. Farming for bees: guidelines for providing native bee habitat on farms. Portland, OR: Xerces Society. 44 p.
http://www.xerces.org/Pollinator_Insect_Conservation/Farming_for_Bees_2nd_edition.pdf. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Walter-Hellwig, K.; Frankl, R. 2000. Foraging habitats and foraging distances of bumblebees in agricultural landscapes. *Journal of Applied Entomology*. 124: 299-306.

4.10 Economic impact of trails

- Correll, M.R.; Lillydahl, J.R.; Singell, L.D. 1978. The effects of greenbelts on residential property values: some findings on the political economy of open space. *Land Economics*. 54: 207-217.
- Fausold, C.H.; Lilieholm, R.J. 1999. The economic value of open space: a review and synthesis. *Environmental Management*. 23: 307-320.
- Lindsey, G.; Knaap, G. 1999. Willingness to pay for urban greenway projects. *Journal of American Planning Association*. 65: 297-313.
- Lindsey, G.; Man, J.; Payton, S.; Dickson, K. 2004. Property values, recreation values, and urban greenways. *Journal of Park and Recreation Administration*. 22: 69-90.
- Litman, T.A. 2003. Economic value of walkability. *Transportation Research Record*. 1828: 3-11.
- Maryland Greenways Commission. 1994. Analysis of economic impacts of the Northern Central Rail Trail. Annapolis, MD: Maryland Department of Natural Resources. <http://ntl.bts.gov/DOCS/430.html>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Moore, R.L.; Graefe, A.R.; Gitelson, R.J. 1994. The economic impact of rail-trails. *Journal of Park and Recreation Administration*. 12: 63-72.
- National Park Service. 1995. Economic impacts of protecting rivers, trails, and greenway corridors. Washington, DC: National Park Service. 154 p. http://www.nps.gov/pwro/rtca/econ_all.pdf. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Nelson, N. 2004. Evaluating the economic impact of community open space and urban forests: a literature review. Athens, GA: University of Georgia, Institute for Ecology, River Basin Center. 17 p.
http://www.rivercenter.uga.edu/publications/pdf/guf_hedonic_lit_review.pdf. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Siderelis, C.; Moore, R. 1995. Outdoor recreation net benefits of rail-trails. *Journal of Leisure Research*. 27: 344-359.

4.11 Greenways and property values

- Anderson, L.M.; Cordell, H.K. 1988. Influence of trees on residential property values in Athens, Georgia: a survey based on actual sales prices. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 15: 153-164.
- Arendt, R. 2004. Linked landscapes creating greenway corridors through conservation subdivision design strategies in the northeastern and central United States. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 68: 241-269.
- Bolitzer, B.; Netusil, N.R. 2000. The impact of open spaces on property values in Portland, Oregon. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 59: 185-193.
- Campbell, H.S.; Munroe, D.K. 2007. Greenways and greenbacks: the impact of the Catawba Regional Trail on property values in Charlotte, North Carolina. *Southeastern Geographer*. 47: 118-137.

Correll, M.R.; Lillydahl, J.R.; Singell, L.D. 1978. The effects of greenbelts on residential property values: some findings on the political economy of open space. *Land Economics*. 54: 207-217.

Crompton, J.L. 2001. The impacts of parks on property values: a review of the empirical evidence. *Journal of Leisure Research*. 33: 1-31.

Fausold, C.H.; Lilieholm, R.J. 1999. The economic value of open space: a review and synthesis. *Environmental Management*. 23: 307-320.

Geoghegan, J. 2002. The value of open spaces in residential land use. *Land Use Policy*. 19: 91-98.

Greer, D.L. 2000. Omaha recreational trails: their effect on property values and public safety. Omaha, NE: University of Nebraska, Recreation and Leisure Studies Program. 18 p. <http://atfiles.org/files/pdf/omahastudy.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Irwin, E.G. 2002. The effects of open space on residential property values. *Land Economics*. 78: 465-480.

Kulshreshtha, S.N.; Gillies, J.A. 1993. Economic evaluation of aesthetic amenities: a case study of a river view. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 29: 257-266.

Lindsey, G.; Payton, S.; Man, J.; Ottensmann, J. 2003. Public choices and property values: evidence from greenways in Indianapolis. Indianapolis: Center for Urban Policy and the Environment. 12 p. <http://atfiles.org/files/pdf/lindseypropvalues.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Lindsey, G.; Man, J.; Payton, S.; Dickson, K. 2004. Property values, recreation values, and urban greenways. *Journal of Park and Recreation Administration*. 22: 69-90.

Luttik, J. 2000. The value of trees, water, and open space as reflected by house prices in the Netherlands. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 48: 161-167.

Lutzenhiser, M.; Netusil, N.R. 2001. The effect of open spaces on a home's sale price. *Contemporary Economic Policy*. 19: 291-298.

Mooney, S.; Eisgruber, L.M. 2001. The influence of riparian protection measures on residential property values: the case of the Oregon Plan for salmon and watersheds. *Journal of Real Estate Finance and Economics*. 22: 273-286.

Nicholls, S.; Crompton, J.L. 2005. The impact of greenways on property values: evidence from Austin, Texas. *Journal of Leisure Research*. 37: 321-341.

Puncochar, B.; Lagerwey, P. 1987. Evaluation of the Burke-Gilman Trail's effect on property values and crime. Seattle, WA: Seattle Engineering Department, Office for Planning. <http://www.brucefreemanrailtrail.org/pdf/Burke-Gilman.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Streiner, C.; Loomis, J.B. 1995. Estimating the benefits of urban stream restoration using the hedonic price method. *Rivers*. 5: 267-278.

Tyrvaainen, L.; Miettinen, A. 2000. Property prices and urban forest amenities. *Journal of Environmental Economics and Management*. 39: 205-223.

Tyrvaainen, L. 1997. The amenity value of the urban forest: an application of the hedonic pricing method. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 37: 211-222.

5.0 Protection and Safety

5.1 Managing insect pests with buffers

Altieri, M.A. 1983. Vegetational designs for insect-habitat management. *Environmental Management*. 7: 3-7.

Altieri, M.A.; Nicholls, C.I. 2004. Effects of agroforestry systems on the ecology and management of insect pest populations. In: Gurr, G.M.; Wratten, S.D.; Altieri, M.A., eds. *Ecological engineering for pest management*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press:143-154.

Altieri, M.A.; Nicholls, C.I.; Fritz, M.A. 2005. Manage insects on your farm: a guide to ecological strategies. Beltsville, MD: Sustainable Agriculture Network. 130 p. <http://www.sare.org/publications/insect/insect.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 25, 2007].

Altieri, M.A.; Todd, J.W. 1981. Some influences of vegetational diversity on insect communities of Georgia soybean fields. *Protection Ecology*. 3: 333-338.

- Altieri, M.A.; Whitcomb, W.H. 1979. The potential use of weeds in the manipulation of beneficial insects. *Horticultural Science*. 14: 12-18.
- Asteraki, E.J.; Hart, B.J.; Ings, T.C.; Manley, W.J. 2004. Factors influencing the plant and invertebrate diversity of arable field margins. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 102: 219-231.
- Bhar, R.; Fahrig, L. 1998. Local vs. landscape effects of woody field borders as barriers to crop pest movement. *Conservation Ecology*. 2(2): 3 <http://www.consecol.org/vol2/iss2/art3>. [Date accessed: August 14, 2007].
- Bianchi, F.J.J.A.; Booij, C.J.H.; Tschardtke, T. 2006 Sustainable pest regulation in agricultural landscapes: a review on landscape composition, biodiversity and natural pest control. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B*. 273: 1715-1727.
- Bianchi, F.J.J.A.; van der Werf, W. 2003. The effect of the area and configuration of hibernation sites on the control of aphids by *Coccinella septempunctata* in agricultural landscapes: a simulation study. *Environmental Entomology*. 32: 1290-1304.
- Bianchi, F.J.J.A.; van Wingerden, W.K.R.E.; Griffioen, A.J. [and others]. 2005. Landscape factors affecting the control of *Mamestra brassicae* by natural enemies in brussel sprout. *Agriculture, Ecosystem and Environment*. 107: 145-150.
- Collins, K.L.; Boatman, N.D.; Wilcox, A. [and others]. 2002. Influence of beetle banks on cereal aphid predation in winter wheat. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 93: 337-350.
- Collins, K.L.; Boatman, N.D.; Wilcox, A.; Holland, J.M. 2003. A 5-year comparison of overwintering polyphagous predator densities within a beetle bank and two conventional hedgebanks. *Annals of Applied Biology*. 143: 63-71.
- Corbett, A.; Rosenheim, J.A. 1996. Impact of natural enemy overwintering refuge and its interaction with the surrounding landscape. *Ecological Entomology*. 21: 155-164.
- Den Belder, E.; Elderson, J.; van den Brink, W.J.; Schelling, G. 2002. Effect of woodlots on thrips density in leek fields: a landscape analysis. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 91: 139-145.
- Dennis, P.; Fry, G.L.A. 1993. Field margins: can they enhance natural enemy population densities and general arthropod diversity on farmland. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 40: 95-115.
- Denys, C.; Tschardtke, T. 2002. Plant-insect communities and predator-prey ratios in field margin strips, adjacent crop fields, and fallows. *Oecologia*. 130: 315-324.
- Dix, M.E.; Johnson, R.J.; Harrell, M.O. [and others]. 1995. Influences of trees on abundance of natural enemies of insect pests: a review. *Agroforestry Systems*. 29: 303-311.
- Elliot, N.C.; Kieckhefer, R.W.; Michels, G.W., Jr.; Giles, K.L. 2002. Predator abundance in alfalfa fields in relation to aphids within-field vegetation, and landscape matrix. *Environmental Entomology*. 31: 253-260.
- Epila, J.S.O. 1988. Wind, crop pests and agroforest design. *Agricultural Systems*. 26: 99-110.
- Frank, S.D.; Shrewsbury, P.M. 2004. Effect of conservation strips on the abundance and distribution of natural enemies and predation of *Agrotis ipsilon* on golf course fairways. *Environmental Entomology*. 33: 1662-1672.
- Gurr, G.M.; Wratten, S.D.; Luna, J.M. 2003. Multi-function agricultural biodiversity: pest management and other benefits. *Basic and Applied Ecology*. 4: 107-116.
- Hawkins, B.A.; Cornell, H.V. 1994. Maximum parasitism rates and successful biological control. *Science*. 266:1886.
- Holland, J.; Fahrig, L. 2000. Effect of woody borders on insect density and diversity in crop fields: a landscape-scale analysis. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 78: 115-122.
- Jobin, E.; Choiniere, L.; Belanger, L. 2001. Bird use of three types of field margins in relation to intensive agriculture in Quebec, Canada. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 84: 131-143.
- Kemp, J.C.; Barrett, G.W. 1989. Spatial patterning: impact of uncultivated corridors on arthropod populations within soybean Agroecosystems. *Ecology*. 70: 114-128.
- Kinross, C.; Wratten, S.D.; Gurr, G.M. 2004. Pest management and wildlife conservation: compatible goals for ecological engineering? In: Gurr, G.M.; Wratten, S.D.; Altieri, M.A., eds. *Ecological engineering for pest management*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press: 199-218.
- Kirk, D.A.; Evenden, M.D.; Mineau, P. 1996. Past and current attempts to evaluate the role of birds as predators of insect pests in temperate agriculture. In: Nolan, V., Jr.; Ketterson, E.D., eds. *Current Ornithology* 13. New York: Plenum Press: 175-269.

- Kruess, A.; Tschamtker, T. 1994. Habitat fragmentation, species loss, and biological control. *Science*. 264: 1581-1584.
- Landis, D.A.; Wratten, S.D.; Gurr, G.M. 2000. Habitat management to conserve natural enemies of arthropod pests in agriculture. *Annual Review of Entomology*. 45: 175-201.
- Lee, J.C.; Menalled, F.D.; Landis, D.A. 2001. Refuge habitats modify impact of insecticide disturbance on carabid beetle communities. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 38: 472-483.
- MacLeod, A.; Wratten, S.D.; Sotherton, N.W.; Thomas, M.B. 2004. Beetle banks as refuges for beneficial arthropods in farmland. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology*. 6: 147-158.
- Marino, P.; Landis, D.A. 1996. Effect of landscape structure on parasitoid diversity and parasitism in agroecosystems. *Ecological Applications*. 6: 276-284.
- Menalled, F.D.; Costamagna, A.C.; Marino, P.C.; Landis, D.A. 2003. Temporal variation in the response of parasitoids to agricultural landscape structure. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 96: 29-35.
- Menalled, F.D.; Marino, P.C.; Gage, S.H.; Landis, D.A. 1999. Does agricultural landscape structure affect parasitism and parasitoid diversity? *Ecological Applications*. 9: 634-641.
- Nicholls, C. I.; Parrella, M.; Altieri, M. 2001. The effects of a vegetational corridor on the abundance and dispersal of insect biodiversity within a northern California organic vineyard. *Landscape Ecology*. 16: 133-146.
- Nicholls, C.I.; Altieri, M.A. 2004. Agroecological bases of ecological engineering for pest management. In: Gurr, G.M.; Wratten, S.D.; Altieri, M.A., eds. *Ecological engineering for pest management*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press: 33-54.
- Norris, R.F.; Kogan, M. 2000. Interactions between weeds, arthropod pests and their natural enemies in managed ecosystems. *Weed Science*. 48: 94-158.
- Panzer, R. 2002. Compatibility of prescribed burning with the conservation of insects in small, isolated prairie reserves. *Conservation Biology*. 16: 1296-1307.
- Pasek, J. 1988. Influence of wind and windbreaks on local dispersal of insects. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 539-554.
- Pfiffner, L.; Wyss, E. 2004. Use of sown wildflower strips to enhance natural enemies of agricultural pests. . In: Gurr, G.M.; Wratten, S.D.; Altieri, M.A., eds. *Ecological engineering for pest management*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press: 165-186.
- Pickett, C.H.; Bugg, R.L. 1998. *Enhancing biological control: habitat management to promote natural enemies of agricultural pests*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press. 421 p.
- Pywell, R.F.; James, K.L.; Herbert, I. [and others]. 2005. Determinants of overwintering habitat quality for beetles and spiders on arable farmland. *Biological Conservation*. 123: 79-90.
- Pywell, R.F.; Warman, E.A.; Hulmes, L. [and others]. 2006. Effectiveness of new agri-environment schemes in providing foraging resources for bumblebees in intensively farmed landscapes. *Biological Conservation*. 129: 192-206.
- Rodenhouse, N.L.; Barrett, G.W.; Zimmerman, D.W.; Kemp, J.C. 1992. Effects of uncultivated corridors on arthropod abundances and crop yields in soybean agroecosystems. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 38: 179-191.
- Russell, K.N.; Ikerd, H.; Droege, S. 2005. The potential conservation value of unmowed powerline strips for native bees. *Biological Conservation*. 124: 133-148.
- Saska, P.; Vodde, M.; Heijerman, T. [and others]. 2007. The significance of a grassy field boundary for the spatial distribution of carabids within two cereal fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 122: 427-434.
- Schmidt, M.H.; Thies, C.; Tschamtker, T. 2004. Landscape context of arthropod biological control In: Gurr, G.M.; Wratten, S.D.; Altieri, M.A., eds. *Ecological engineering for pest management*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press: 55-63.
- Sotherton, N.W. 1995. Beetle banks – helping nature to control pests. *Pesticide Outlook*. 6: 13-17.
- Stamps, W.T.; Dailey, T.W.; Gruenhagen, N.M. 2007. Infestation of European corn borer, *Ostrinia nubilalis* in Midwestern USA fields with herbaceous borders. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 121: 430-434.
- Thies, C.; Steffan-Dewenter, I.; Tschamtker, T. 2003. Effects of landscape context on herbivory and parasitism at different spatial scales. *Oikos*. 101: 18-25.

- Thies, C.; Tschardtke, T. 1999. Landscape structure and biological control in agroecosystems. *Science*. 285: 893-895.
- Thomas, C.F.G.; Marshall, E.J.P. 1999. Arthropod abundance and diversity in differently vegetated margins of arable fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 72: 131-144.
- Thomas, M.B.; Wratten, S.D.; Sotherton, N.W. 1991. Creation of 'island' habitats in farmland to manipulate populations of beneficial arthropods: predator densities and emigration. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 28: 906-917.
- Thomas, M.B.; Wratten, S.D.; Sotherton, N.W. 1992. Creation of 'island' habitats in farmland to manipulate populations of beneficial arthropods: predator densities and species composition. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 29: 524-531.
- Thomas, S. 2000. Progress on beetle banks in UK arable farming. *Pesticide Outlook*. 11: 51-53.
- Thomas, S.; Noordhuis, R.; Holland, J.; Goulson, D. 2002. Botanical diversity of beetle banks: effects of age and comparison with conventional arable field margins in southern UK. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 93: 403-412.
- Tremblay, A.; Mineau, P.; Stewart, R.K. 2001. Effects of bird predation on some insect populations in corn. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 83: 143-152.
- Tschardtke, T.; Steffan-Dewenter, I.; Kruess, A.; Thies, C. 2002. Contribution of small habitat fragments to conservation of insect communities of grassland-cropland landscapes. *Ecological Applications*. 12: 354-363.
- Van Emden, H.F. 1965. The role of uncultivated land in the biology of crop pests and beneficial insects. *Scientific Horticulture*. 17: 121-136.
- Van Emden, H.F.; Williams, G.F. 1974. Insect stability and diversity in agro-ecosystems. *Annual Review of Entomology*. 19: 455-475.
- Varchola, J.M.; Dunn, J.P. 2001. Influence of hedgerow and grassy field borders on ground beetle activity in fields of corn. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 83: 153-163.
- Wilkinson, T.K.; Landis, D.A. 2005. Habitat diversification in biological control: the role of plant resources. In: Wackers, F.L.; van Rijn, P.C.J.; Bruin, J., eds. *Plant provided food for carnivorous insects*. Cambridge, MA: Cambridge University Press: 305-325.
- With, K.A.; Pavuk, D.M.; Worchuck, J.L. [and others]. 2002. Threshold effects of landscape structure on biological control in agroecosystems. *Ecological Applications*. 12: 52-65.
- Woodcock, B.A.; Potts, S.G.; Pilgrim, E. [and others]. 2007. The potential of grass field margin management for enhancing beetle diversity in intensive livestock farms. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 44: 60-69.
- Wratten, S.D.; van Emden, H.F. 1995. Habitat management for enhanced activity of natural enemies of insect pests. In: Glen, D.M.; Greaves, M.P.; Anderson, H.M., eds. *Ecology and integrated farming systems*. Bristol, UK: John Wiley and Sons: 117-145.

5.2 **Plants that attract beneficial insects**

- Al-Doghairi, M.A.; Cranshaw, W.S.. 1999. Surveys on visitation of flowering landscape plants by common biological control agents in Colorado. *Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society*. 72: 190-196.
- Altieri, M.A.; Nicholls, C.I.; Fritz, M.A. 2005. *Manage insects on your farm: a guide to ecological strategies*. Beltsville, MD: Sustainable Agriculture Network. 130 p. <http://www.sare.org/publications/insect/insect.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 25, 2007].
- Bugg, R. 1994. Using cover crops to manage arthropods of orchards: A review. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 50:11-28.
- Colley, M.R.; Luna, J.M. 2000. Relative attractiveness of potential beneficial insectary plants to aphidophagous hoverflies. *Environmental Entomology*. 29: 1054-1059.
- Defour, R. 2000. *Farmscaping to enhance biological control*. Fayetteville, AR: Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas. 40 p. <http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/PDF/farmscaping.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Fiedler, A.; Tuell, J.; Issacs, R.; Landis, D. 2007. Attracting beneficial insects with native flowering plants. *Bulletin E-2973*. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University. 5 p. <http://nativeplants.msu.edu/pdf/E2973.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Jones, G.A.; Gillett, J.L. 2005. Intercropping with sunflowers to attract beneficial insects in organic agriculture. *Florida Entomologist*. 88: 91-96.

Landis, D.; Fiedler, A. 2005. Enhancing biological control with native plants. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University. <http://nativeplants.msu.edu/>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Nicholls, C.I.; Parrella, M.P.; Altieri, M.A. 2000. Reducing the abundance of leafhoppers and thrips in northern California organic vineyard through maintenance of full season floral diversity with summer cover crops. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology*. 2: 107-113.

Pickett, C.H.; Bugg, R.L. 1998. Enhancing biological control: habitat management to promote natural enemies of agricultural pests. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press. 421 p.

Stamps, W.T.; Linit, M.J. 1998. Plant diversity and arthropod communities: implications for temperate agroforestry. *Agroforestry Systems*. 39: 73-89.

5.3 Buffers and spray drift

Brown, R.B.; Carter, M.H.; Stephenson, G.R. 2004. Buffer zone and windbreak effects on spray drift deposition in a simulated wetland. *Pest Management Science*. 60: 1085-1090.

Burn, A. 2003. Pesticide buffer zones for the protection of wildlife. *Pest Management Science*. 59: 583-590.

CSIRO. 2002. Spray drift management: principles, strategies and supporting information. Victoria, Australia: CSIRO Publishing. 83 p. <http://downloads.publish.csiro.au/books/download.cfm?ID=3452>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Dabrowski, J.M.; Bollen, A.; Bennett, E.R.; Schulz, R. 2005. Pesticide interception by emergent aquatic macrophytes: potential to mitigate spray –drift input in agricultural streams. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 111: 340-348.

Davis, B.N.; Brown, M.J.; Frost, A.J. [and others]. 1994. The effects of hedges on spray deposition and on the biological impact of pesticide spray drift. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*. 27: 281-293.

Davis, B.N.; Lakhani, K.H.; Yates, T.J. [and others]. 1993. Insecticide drift from ground-based, hydraulic spraying of peas and brussels sprouts: bioassays for determining buffer zones. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 43: 93-108.

Davis, B.N.; Williams, C.T. 1990. Buffer zone widths for honeybees from ground and aerial spraying of insecticides. *Environmental Pollution*. 63: 247-259.

de Snoo, G.R. 1999. Unsprayed field margins: effects on environment, biodiversity and agricultural practice. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 46: 151-160.

de Snoo, G.R.; de Wit, P.J. 1998. Buffer zones for reducing pesticide drift to ditches and risks to aquatic organisms. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*. 41: 112-118.

de Snoo, G.R.; van der Poll, R.J. 1999. Effect of herbicide drift on adjacent boundary vegetation. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 73: 1-6.

Felsot, A. S.; Foss, S.; Yu, J. 2003. Deposition of pesticides in riparian buffer zones following aerial applications to Christmas tree plantations. In: Coats, J.; Yamamoto, H., eds. *Pesticide science: environmental fate & effects of pesticides*. Washington, DC: American Chemical Society: 241-260.

Feng, J.C.; Thompson, D.G.; Reynolds, P.E. 1990. Fate of glyphosate in a Canadian forest watershed. 1. aquatic residues and off-target deposit assessment. *Journal of Agricultural Food Chemistry*. 38: 1110-1118.

Frank, R.; Johnson, K.; Braun, H.E. [and others]. 1991. Monitoring air, soil, stream and fish for aerial drift of permethrin. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*. 16: 137-150.

Frank, R.; Ripley, B.D.; Lampman, W. [and others]. 1994. Comparative spray drift studies of aerial and ground applications 1983-1985. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*. 29: 167-181.

Helson, B.V.; Payne, N.J.; Sundaram, K.M.S. 1993. Impact assessment of spray drift from silvicultural aerial applications of permethrin on aquatic invertebrates using mosquito bioassays. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*. 12: 1635-1642.

Longley, M.; Cilgi, T.; Jepson, P.C.; Sotherton, N.W. 1997. Measurements of pesticide spray drift deposition into field boundaries and hedgerows: 1. summer applications. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*. 16: 165-172.

Marrs, R.H.; Frost, A.J.; Plant, R.A.; Lunnis, P. 1992. The effects of herbicide drift on semi-natural vegetation: the use of buffer zones to minimize risks. *Aspects of Applied Biology*. 29: 57-64.

Marrs, R.H.; Frost, A.J.; Plant, R.A.; Lunnis, P. 1992. Aerial applications of asulam: a bioassay technique for assessing buffer zones to protect sensitive sites in upland Britain. *Biological Conservation*. 59: 19-23.

Mayer, D. F.; Johansen, C.A.; Baird, C.R. 1999. How to reduce bee poisoning from pesticides. PNW-518. Pullman, WA: Washington State University. 15 p. <http://cru.cahe.wsu.edu/CEPublications/pnw0518/pnw0518.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Michael, J.L. 2004. Best management practices for silvicultural chemicals and the science behind them. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution: Focus*. 4: 95-117.

Miller, P.C.H.; Lane, A.G.; Walklate, P.J.; Richardson, G.M. 2000. The effect of plant structure on the drift of pesticides at field boundaries. *Aspects of Applied Biology*. 57: 75-82.

Parkin, C.S.; Merritt, C.R. 1988. The measurement and prediction of spray drift. *Aspects of Applied Biology*. 17: 351-361.

Payne, N.J. 1992. Off-target glyphosate from aerial silvicultural applications and buffer zones required around sensitive areas. *Pesticide Science*. 34: 1-8.

Payne, N.J.; Helson, B.V.; Sundaram, K.M.S.; Fleming, R.A. 1988. Estimating buffer zone widths for pesticide applications. *Pesticide Science*. 24: 147-161.

Payne, N.J.; Feng, J.C.; Reynolds, P.E. 1990. Off-target deposits and buffer zones required around water for aerial glyphosate applications. *Pesticide Science*. 30: 183-198.

Pinder, L.C.V.; House, W.A.; Farr, I.S. 1993. Effects of insecticides on freshwater invertebrates. In: Cooke, A.S., ed. *The environmental effects of pesticide drift*. Peterborough, UK: English Nature Report: 64-75.

Reichenberger, S.; Bach, M.; Skitschak, A.; Frede, H. 2007. Mitigation strategies to reduce pesticide inputs into ground- and surface water and their effectiveness; a review. *Science of the Total Environment*. 384: 1-35.

Richardson, G.M.; Walklate, P.J.; Baker, D.E. 2004. Spray drift from apple orchards with deciduous windbreaks. *Aspects of Applied Biology*. 71: 149-156.

Robinson, R.C.; Parsons, R.G.; Barbe, G. [and others]. 2000. Drift control and buffer zones for helicopter spraying of bracken (*Pteridium aquilinum*). *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 79: 215-231.

Teske, M.E. 1996. An introduction to aerial spray modeling with FSCBG. *Journal of American Mosquito Control Association*. 12: 353-358.

Teske, M.E.; Bird, S.L.; Esterly, D.M. 2002. AgDRIFT: A model for estimating near-field spray drift from aerial applications. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*. 21: 659-671.

Ucar, T.; Hall, F.R. 2001. Windbreaks as a pesticide drift management strategy. *Pest Management Science*. 57: 663-675.

Ucar, T.; Hall, F.R.; Tew, J.T.; Hacker, J.K. 2003. Wind tunnel studies on spray deposition on leaves of tree species used for windbreaks and exposure of honey bees. *Pest Management Science*. 59: 358-364.

Wenneker, M.; Heijne, B.; Zande, J.C. van de. 2005. Effect of natural windbreaks on drift reduction in orchard spraying. *Communications in Agricultural and Applied Biological Sciences*. 70: 961-969.

Wilson, A.G.; Harper, L.A.; Baker, H. 1986. Evaluation of insecticide residues and droplet drift following aerial application to cotton in New South Wales. *Australian Journal of Experimental Agriculture*. 26: 237-243. http://www.publish.csiro.au/?act=view_file&file_id=EA9860237.pdf. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Woods, N.; Craig, I.P.; Dorr, G.; Young, B. 2001. Spray drift of pesticides arising from aerial application in cotton. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 30: 697-701.

5.4 **Weed control with buffers**

Asteraki, E.J.; Hart, B.J.; Ings, T.C.; Manley, W.J. 2004. Factors influencing the plant and invertebrate diversity of arable field margins. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 102: 219-231.

Damschen, E.I.; Haddad, N.M.; Orrock, J.L. [and others]. 2006. Corridors increase plant species richness at large scales. *Science*. 313: 1284-1286.

Devlaeminck, R.; Bossuyt, B.; Hermy, M. 2005. Seed dispersal from a forest into adjacent cropland. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 107: 57-64.

Gelbard, J.L.; Belnap, J. 2003. Roads as conduits for exotic plant invasions in a semiarid landscape. *Conservation Biology*. 17: 420-432.

- Harvey, C.A. 2000. Colonization of agricultural windbreaks by forest trees: effects of connectivity and remnant trees. *Ecological Applications*. 10: 1762-1773.
- Holmes, R.J.; Froud-Williams, R.J. 2005. Post-dispersal weed seed predation by avian and non-avian predators. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 105: 23-27.
- Landis, D.A.; Menalled, F.D.; Costamagna, A.C.; Wilkinson, T.K. 2005. Manipulating plant resources to enhance beneficial arthropods in agricultural landscapes. *Weed Science*. 53: 902-908.
- Marino, P.C.; Gross, K.L.; Landis, D.A. 1997. Weed seed loss due to predation in Michigan maize fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 66: 189-197.
- Marino, P.C.; Westerman, P.R.; Pinkert, C.; van der Werf, W. 2005. Influence of seed density and aggregation on post-dispersal weed seed predation in cereal fields. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 106: 17-25.
- Marshall, E.J.P. 1989. Distribution patterns of plants associated with arable field edges. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 26: 247-257.
- Marshall, E.J.P.; Moonen, A.C. 2002. Field margins in northern Europe: their functions and interactions with agriculture. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 89: 5-21.
- Menalled, F.D.; Lee, J.C.; Landis, D.A. 2001. Herbaceous filter strips in agroecosystems: implications for ground beetle (Coleoptera: Carabidae) conservation and invertebrate weed seed predation. *Great Lakes Entomologist*. 34: 77-91.
- Menalled, F.D.; Marino, P.C.; Renner, K.A.; Landis, D.A. 2000. Post-dispersal weed seed predation in Michigan crop fields as a function of agricultural landscape structure. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 77: 193-202.
- Panetta, F.D.; Hopkins, A.J.M. 1991. Weeds in corridors: invasion and management. In: Saunders, D.A.; Hobbs, R.J., eds. *Nature conservation 2: the role of corridors*. Chipping Norton, Australia: Surrey Beatty: 341-351.
- Povey, F.D.; Smith, H.; Watt, T.A. 1993. Predation of annual grass weed seeds in arable field margins. *Annals of Applied Biology*. 122: 323-328.
- Smith, H.; Firbank, L.G.; Macdonald, D.W. 1999. Uncropped edges of arable fields managed for biodiversity do not increase weed occurrence in adjacent crops. *Biological Conservation*. 89: 107-111.
- Westerman, P.R.; Wes, J.S.; Kropff, M.J.; van der Werf, W. 2003. Annual losses of weed seeds due to predation in organic cereal fields. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 40: 824-836.

5.5 Buffers and road intersections

- AASHTO. 2001. Guidelines for geometric design of very low volume local roads (ADT_≤400). Washington, DC: American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials. 94 p.
- Haines, C.W.; Dines, N.T. 1997. Time-saver standards for landscape architecture. New York: McGraw-Hill. 928 p.
- Mok, J.H.; Landphair, H.C.; Naderi, J.R. 2006. Landscape improvement impacts on roadside safety in Texas. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 78: 263-274.
- Turner, D.S.; Mansfield, E.R. 1990. Urban trees and roadside safety. *Journal of Transportation Engineering*. 116: 90-104.

5.6 Managing shade

- Haines, C.W.; Dines, N.T. 1997. Time-saver standards for landscape architecture. New York: McGraw-Hill. 928 p.
- NOAA. 2007. Solar position calculator. National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). Earth System Research Lab. <http://www.srb.noaa.gov/highlights/sunrise/azel.html>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Rudie, R., Jr.; Dewers, R.S. 1984. Effects of tree shade on home cooling requirements. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 10: 320-322.
- SBSE. 2007. Pilkington sun angle calculator. Society of Building Science Educators. http://www.sbse.org/resources/sac/PSAC_Manual.pdf. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

5.7 Managing drifting snow

- Forman, R.T.T.; Buadry, J. 1984. Hedgerows and hedgerow networks in landscape ecology. *Environmental Management*. 8: 495-510.
- Heisler, G.M.; DeWalle, D.R. 1988. Effects of windbreak structure on wind flow. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 41-69.

Loeffler, A.E.; Gordon, A.M; Gillespie, T.J. Optical porosity and windspeed reduction by coniferous windbreaks in southern Ontario. *Agroforestry System*. 17: 119-133.

Peterson, T.C.; Schmidt, R.A. 1983. Outdoor scale modeling of shrub barriers in drifting snow. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*. 31: 167-181.

Shaw, D.L. 1988. The design and use of living snow fences in North America. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 351-362.

Tabler, R.D. 1991. Snow fence guide. SHRP-H-320. Washington, DC: National Research Council, Strategic Highway Research Program. 76 p. <http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/shrp/SHRP-H-320.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Tabler, R.D. 1994. Design guidelines for the control of blowing and drifting snow. Washington, DC: National Research Council, Strategic Highway Research Program. 389 p. <http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/shrp/SHRP-H-381.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Wight, B. 1988. Farmstead windbreaks. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 261-280.

5.8 Windbreaks for livestock

Bird, P.R. 1998. Tree windbreaks and shelter benefits to pasture in temperate grazing systems. *Agroforestry Systems*. 41: 35-54.

Dronen, S.I. 1988. Layout and design criteria for livestock windbreaks. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 231-240.

Forman, R.T.T.; Buadry, J. 1984. Hedgerows and hedgerow networks in landscape ecology. *Environmental Management*. 8: 495-510.

Heisler, G.M.; DeWalle, D.R. 1988. Effects of windbreak structure on wind flow. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 41-69.

Loeffler, A.E.; Gordon, A.M; Gillespie, T.J. Optical porosity and windspeed reduction by coniferous windbreaks in southern Ontario. *Agroforestry System*. 17: 119-133.

Quam, V.C.; Johnson, L.; Wight, B.; Brandle, J.R. 1994. Windbreaks for livestock production. EC 94-1766-X. Lincoln, NE: University of Nebraska Cooperative Extension. 6 p. <http://www.unl.edu/nac/morepublications/ec1766.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Read, R.A. 1957. Effect of livestock concentration on surface-soil porosity within shelterbelts. *Journal of Forestry*. 55: 529-530.

Shaw, D.L. 1988. The design and use of living snow fences in North America. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 351-362.

Timm, R.M. 1988. Vertebrate pest management in windbreak systems. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 555-570.

5.9 Flood attenuation and buffers

Hey, D.L.; Philippi, N.S. 1995. Flood reduction through wetland restoration: the upper Mississippi River basin as a case history. *Restoration Ecology*. 3(1): 4-17.

McAllister, L.S.; Peniston, B.E.; Leibowitz, S.G. [and others]. 2000. A synoptic assessment for prioritizing wetland restoration efforts to optimize flood attenuation. *Wetlands*. 20: 70-83.

Mitsch, W.J. 1992. Landscape design and the role of created, restored, and natural riparian wetlands in controlling nonpoint source pollution. *Ecological Engineering*. 1: 27-47.

Ogawa, H.; Male, J.W. 1986. Simulating the flood mitigation roles of wetlands. *Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management*. 112: 114-128.

Potter, K.W. 1994. Estimating potential reduction flood benefits of restored wetlands. *Water Resources Update*. 97: 34-38.

Russell, G.D.; Hawkins, C.P.; O'Neill, M.P. 1997. The role of GIS in selecting sites for riparian restoration based on hydrology and land use. *Restoration Ecology*. 5 (4): 56-68.

Smakhtin, V.U.; Batchelor, A.L. 2005. Evaluating wetland flow regulating functions using discharge time-series. *Hydrological Processes*. 19: 1293-1305.

Turner-Gillespie, D.F.; Smith, J.A.; Bates, P.D. 2003. Attenuating reaches and the regional flood response of an urbanizing drainage basin. *Advances in Water Resources*. 26: 673-684.

Zelder, J.B. 2003. Wetlands at your service: reducing impacts of agriculture at the watershed scale. *Frontiers in Ecology and Environment*. 1(2): 65-72.

5.10 Waterbreaks

Allen, S.B.; Dwyer, J.P.; Wallace, D.C.; Cook, E.A. 2003. Missouri River flood of 1993: role of woody corridor width in levee protection. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 39: 923-933.

Dwyer, J.P.; Wallace, D.C.; Larsen, D.R. 1997. Value of woody river corridors in levee protection along the Missouri River in 1993. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 33: 481-489.

Geyer, W.A.; Neppl, T.; Brooks, K.; Carlisle, J. 2000. Woody vegetation protects streambank stability during the 1993 flood in central Kansas. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 55: 483-486.

Shields, F.D.; Gray, D.H. 1992. Effects of woody vegetation on sandy levee integrity. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 28: 917-931.

Wallace, D.C.; Geyer, W.A.; Dwyer, J.P. 2000. Waterbreaks: managed trees for floodplains. *Agroforestry Notes* 19. Lincoln, NE: USDA National Agroforestry Center. 4 p. <http://www.unl.edu/nac/agroforestrynotes/an19sa04.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

5.11 Wildfire defensible buffer zones

Anchorage Wildfire Partnership. 2004. Firewise vegetation guide: protect your home from wildland fire. Anchorage, AK: Anchorage Wildlife Partnership. 10 p. <http://www.muni.org/iceimages/fire1/Firewise%20Alaska%202003%20vegetation%20guide.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Bond, W.J.; van Wilgen, B. 1996. *Fire and Plants*. New York: Chapman and Hall. 276 p.

Dennis, F.C. 2007. Creating wildfire-defensible zones. Pub. 6.302. Fort Collins, CO: Colorado State University Cooperative Extension. <http://www.greenhouse.colostate.edu/pubs/natres/06302.html>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Dennis, F.C. 2007. Fire-resistant landscaping. Pub. 6.303. Fort Collins, CO: Colorado State University Cooperative Extension. <http://www.greenhouse.colostate.edu/pubs/natres/06303.html>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Dennis, F.C. 2007. Firewise plant materials. Pub. 6.305. Fort Collins, CO: Colorado State University Cooperative Extension. <http://www.greenhouse.colostate.edu/pubs/natres/06305.html>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Doran, J.D.; Randall, C.K.; Long, A.J. 2004. Selecting and maintaining firewise plants for landscaping. Gainesville, FL: University of Florida, Institute of Food and Agricultural Sciences Extension Publication. 8 p. <http://edis.ifas.ufl.edu/pdffiles/FR/FR14700.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

IHBS. 2004. Is your home protected from wildfire disaster? Tampa, FL: Institute for Business and Home Safety (IHBS). 25 p. <http://www.firewise.org/resources/files/wildfr2.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

6.0 Aesthetics and Visual Quality

6.1 Rural-urban land use buffer

Arendt, R. 2004. Linked landscapes creating greenway corridors through conservation subdivision design strategies in the northeastern and central United States. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 68: 241-269.

Brush, R.; Chenoweth, R.E.; Barman, T. 2000. Group differences in the enjoyability of driving through rural landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 47 :39-45.

Dwyer, J.F.; Schroeder, H.W.; Gobster, P.H. 1991. The significance of urban trees and forests: towards a deeper understanding of values. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 17: 276-284.

Erickson, D.L.; Ryan, R.L., De Young, R. 2002. Woodlots in the rural landscape: landowner motivations and management attitudes in a Michigan case study. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 58: 101-112.

Kuo, F.E. 2001. Coping with poverty: impacts of environment and attention in the inner city. *Environment and Behavior*. 33: 5-34.

McPherson, G. 1988. Functions of buffer plantings in urban environments. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 281-298.

Nassauer, J.I. 1993. Ecological function and the perception of suburban residential landscapes. In: Gobster, R., ed. *Managing urban and high-use recreation settings*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-163. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 55-60.

Schoeneberger, M.M.; Bentrup, G.; Francis, C.F. 2001. Ecobelts: reconnecting agriculture and communities. In: Flora, C.B., ed. *Interactions between agroecosystems and rural human communities*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press. 239-260 p.

Smardon, R.C. 1988. Perception and aesthetics of the urban environment: review of the role of vegetation. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 15: 86-106.

Sullivan, W.C. 1994. Perceptions of the rural-urban fringe: citizen preferences for natural and developed settings. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 29: 85-101.

Sullivan, W.C.; Anderson, O.M.; Lovell, S.T. 2004. Agricultural buffers at the rural-urban fringe: an examination of approval by farmers, residents, and academics in the Midwestern United States. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 69: 299-313.

6.2 Windbreaks for odor control

Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 1998. Urban woodlands: their role in reducing the effects of particulate pollution. *Environmental Pollution*. 99: 347-360.

Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 2000. The capture of particulate pollution by trees at five contrasting urban sites. *Arboricultural Journal*. 24: 209-230.

Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 2000. Particulate pollution capture by urban trees: effect of species and windspeed. *Global Change Biology*. 6: 995-1003.

Bennett, J.H.; Hill, A.C. 1973. Absorption of gaseous air pollutants by a standardized canopy. *Journal of Air Pollution Control Association*. 23: 203-206.

Elkiey, T.; Ormond, D.P.; Marie, B. 1982. Foliar sorption of sulfur dioxide, nitrogen dioxide, and ozone by ornamental woody plants. *Horticultural Science*. 17: 358-360.

Hill, A.C. 1971. Vegetation: a sink for atmospheric pollutants. *Journal of Air Pollution Control Association*. 21: 341-346.

Khan, F.I.; Abbasi, S.A. 2000. Attenuation of gaseous pollutants by greenbelts. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 64: 457-475.

Lin, X.J.; Barrington, S.; Nicell, J. [and others]. 2006. Influence of windbreaks on livestock odour dispersion plume in the field. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 116:263-272.

Lin, X.J.; Barrington, S.; Nicell, J. [and others]. 2007. Livestock odour dispersion as affected by natural windbreaks. *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution*. 182: 263-273.

Lin, X.J.; Barrington, S.; Nicell, J.; Choinière, D. 2007. Effect of natural windbreaks on maximum odour dispersion distance. *Canadian Biosystems Engineering*. 49: 6.21-6.32.

Reischl, A.; Reissinger, M.; Thoma, H.; Hutzinger, O. 1989. Accumulation of organic air constituents by plant surfaces. *Chemosphere*. 18: 561-568.

Thernelius, S.M. 1997. Wind tunnel testing of odor transportation from swine production facilities. Ames, IA: Iowa State University. 111 p. M.S. thesis.

Tyndall, J.; Colletti, J. 2000. Air quality and shelterbelts: odor mitigation and livestock production literature review. Ames, IA: Iowa State University, Forestry Department. 74 p.

Tyndall, J.; Colletti, J. 2007. Mitigating swine odor with strategically designed shelterbelt systems: a review. *Agroforestry Systems*. 69: 45-65.

Welke, B.; Ettliger, K.; Riederer, M. 1998. Sorption of volatile organic chemicals in plant surfaces. *Environmental Science and Technology*. 32: 1099-1104.

6.3 Air quality buffers

- Akbari, H. 2002. Shade trees reduce building energy use and Co2 emissions from power plants. *Environmental Pollution*. 116: S119-S126.
- Akbari, H.; Pomerantz, M.; Taha, H. 2001. Cool surfaces and shade trees to reduce energy use and improve air quality in urban areas. *Solar Energy*. 70: 295-310.
- Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 1998. Urban woodlands: their role in reducing the effects of particulate pollution. *Environmental Pollution*. 99: 347-360.
- Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 2000. Effective tree species for local air-quality management. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 26: 12-19.
- Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 2000. The capture of particulate pollution by trees at five contrasting urban sites. *Arboricultural Journal*. 24: 209-230.
- Beckett, K.P.; Freer-Smith, P.; Taylor, G. 2000. Particulate pollution capture by urban trees: effect of species and windspeed. *Global Change Biology* 6: 995-1003.
- Benjamin, M.T.; Winer, A.M. 1998. Estimating the ozone-forming potential of urban trees and shrubs. *Atmospheric Environment*. 32: 53-68.
- Bernatzky, A. 1982. The contribution of trees and green spaces to a town climate. *Energy and Buildings*. 5: 1-10.
- Carlisle, A.J.; Sharp, N.C.C. 2001. Exercise and outdoor ambient air pollution. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 35: 214-222.
- Desanto, R.S.; Glaser, R.A.; McMillen, W.P. [and others]. 1976. Open space as an air resource management measure. volume II: design criteria. EPA-450/3-76-028b. Research Triangle Park, NC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 183 p.
- Dochinger, L.S. 1980. Interception of airborne particles by tree plantings. *Journal of Environmental Quality*. 9: 265-268.
- Everett, M.D. 1974. Roadside air pollution hazards in recreational land use planning. *Journal of the American Institute of Planning*. 40: 83-89.
- Fowler, D.; Cape, J.N.; Unsworth, M.H. [and others]. 1989. Deposition of atmospheric pollutants on forests [and discussion]. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series B, Biological Sciences*. 324: 247-265.
- Freer-Smith, P.H.; Holloway, S.; Goodman, A. 1996. The uptake of particulates by an urban woodland: site description and particulate composition. *Environmental Pollution*. 95: 27-35.
- Hagevik, G.; Mandelker, D.; Brail, R. 1974. The contribution of urban planning to air quality. EPA-450/3-75-038. Research Triangle Park, NC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- Hill, A.C. 1971. Vegetation: a sink for atmospheric pollution. *Journal of the Air Pollution Control Association*. 21: 341-346.
- Hosker, R.P., Jr.; Lindberg, S.E. 1982. Review: atmospheric deposition and plant assimilation of gases and particles. *Atmospheric Environment*. 16: 889-910.
- Kapoor, R.K.; Gupta, V.K. 1984. Air pollution attention coefficient concept for optimization of greenbelt. *Atmospheric Environment*. 18: 1107-1113.
- Khan, F.I.; Abbasi, S.A. 2000. Attenuation of gaseous pollutants by greenbelts. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*. 64: 457-475.
- Madders, M.; Lawrence, M. 1982. The role of woodland in air pollution control. *Quarterly Journal of Forestry*. 76: 256-260.
- Madders, M.; Lawrence, M. 1985. The contribution made by vegetation buffer zones to improved air quality in urban areas. *Tasks for Vegetation Science*. 14: 175-181.
- McPherson, E.G.; Scott, K.I.; Simpson, J.R. 1998. Estimating cost effectiveness of residential yard trees for improving air quality in Sacramento, California, using existing models. *Atmospheric Environment*. 32: 75-84.
- Nowak, D.J. 1994. Air pollution removal by Chicago's urban forest. In: McPherson, E.G.; Nowak, D.J.; Rowntree, R.A., eds. *Chicago's urban forest ecosystem: results of the Chicago Urban Forest Climate Project*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-186. Upper Darby, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station: 63-81.
- Nowak, D.J.; Crane, D.E. 2002. Carbon storage and sequestration by urban trees in the USA. *Environmental Pollution*. 116: 381-389.

Nowak, D.J.; Crane, D.E.; Stevens, J.C. 2006. Air pollution removal by urban trees and shrubs in the United States. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 4: 115-123.

Nowak, D.J.; Stevens, J.C.; Sisinni, S.M.; Luley, J.C. 2002. Effects of urban tree management and species selection on atmospheric carbon dioxide. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 28: 113-122.

Scott, K.I.; Simpson, J.R.; McPherson, E.G. 1999. Effects of tree cover on parking lot microclimate and vehicle emissions. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 25: 129-141.

Smith, W.H. 1984. Pollutant uptake by plants. In: Treshow, M., ed. *Air pollution and plant life*. New York: Wiley and Sons: 417-450.

Smith, W.H. 1990. *Air pollution and forests*. New York: Springer-Verlag. 618 p.

Smith, W.H.; Dochinger, S. 1976. Capability of metropolitan trees to reduce atmospheric contaminants. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-22. Upper Darby, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station: 49-59.

Thernelius, S.M. 1997. Wind tunnel testing of odor transportation from swine production facilities. Ames, IA: Iowa State University. 111 p. M.S. thesis.

Thorne, L.; Hanson, G.P. 1972. Species differences in rates of vegetal ozone absorption. *Environmental Pollution*. 3: 303-312.

Tyndall, J.; Colletti, J. 2000. Air quality and shelterbelts: odor mitigation and livestock production literature review. Ames, IA: Iowa State University, Forestry Department. 74 p.

Varshney, C.K.; Mitra, I. 1993. Importance of hedges in improving urban air quality. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 25: 75-83.

Weathers, K.C.; Cadenasso, M.L.; Pickett, S.T.A. 2001. Forest edges as nutrient and pollutant concentrators: potential synergisms between fragmentation, forest canopies, and the atmosphere. *Conservation Biology*. 15: 1506-1514.

Yang, J.; McBride, J.; Zhou, J.; Sun, Z. 2005. The urban forest in Beijing and its role in air pollution reduction. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 3: 65-78.

6.4 Buffers for noise control

Anderson, L.M.; Mulligan, B.E.; Goodman, L.S. 1984. Effects of vegetation on human response to sound. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 10: 45-49.

Aylor, D.E. 1972. Noise reduction by vegetation and ground. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 51: 197-205.

Bullen, R.; Fricke, F. 1982. Sound propagation through vegetation. *Journal of Sound and Vibration*. 80: 11-23.

Cook, D.I.; Haverbeke, D.F.V. 1971. Trees and shrubs for noise abatement. Bulletin RB246. Lincoln, NE: University of Nebraska, College of Agricultural Experimental Station. 77 p.

Cook, D.I.; Haverbeke, D.F.V. 1972. Trees, shrubs, and landforms for noise control. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 27: 259-261.

Cook, D.I.; Haverbeke, D.F.V. 1974. Tree-covered land-forms for noise control. Bulletin RB263. Lincoln, NE: University of Nebraska, College of Agricultural Experimental Station. 52 p.

Cook, D.I.; Haverbeke, D.F.V. 1977. Suburban noise control with plant materials and solid barriers. Bulletin EM100. Lincoln, NE: University of Nebraska, College of Agricultural Experimental Station Bulletin. 74 p.

Embleton, T.F.W. 1963. Sound propagation in homogeneous deciduous and evergreen woods. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 35: 1119-1125.

Fang, C.F.; Ling, D.L. 2003. Investigation of the noise reduction provided by tree belts. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 63: 187-195.

Fang, C.F.; Ling, D.L. 2005. Guidance for noise reduction provided by tree belts. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 71: 29-34.

Fricke, F. 1984. Sound attenuation in forests. *Journal of Sound and Vibration*. 92: 149-158.

Harris, R.A. 1985. Vegetative barriers: an alternative highway noise abatement measure. *Noise Control Engineering Journal*. 27: 4-8.

Harris, R.A.; Cohn, L.F. 1985. Use of vegetation for abatement of highway traffic noise. *Journal of Urban Planning and Development*. 111: 34-48.

Heisler, G.M. 1977. Trees modify metropolitan climate and noise. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 3: 201-207.

Kotzen, B. 2004. Plants and environmental noise barriers. *Acta Horticulturae*. 643: 265-275.

Kragh, J. 1979. Pilot study on railway noise attenuation by belts of trees. *Journal of Sound and Vibration*. 66: 407-415.

Kragh, J. 1981. Road traffic noise attenuation by belts of trees. *Journal of Sound and Vibration*. 74: 235-241.

Martens, M.J.M. 1981. Noise abatement in plant monocultures and plant communities. *Applied Acoustics*. 14: 167-189.

Reethof, G. 1973. Effect of plantings on radiation of highway noise. *Journal of the Air Pollution Control Association*. 23: 185-189.

Reethof, G.; Heisler, G.M. 1976. Trees and forests for noise abatement and visual screening. In: Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-22. Upper Darby, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station: 39-48.

Reethof, G.; McDaniel, O.H.; Heisler, G.M. 1977. Sound adsorption characteristics of tree bark and forest floor. In: Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-25. Upper Darby, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station: 206-217.

Whitcomb, C.D.; Stowers, J.F. 1973. Sound abatement with hedges. *HortScience*. 8: 128-129.

6.5 **Developing an ecological aesthetic**

Balling, J.D.; Falk, J.H. 1982. Development of visual preference for natural environments. *Environment and Behavior*. 14: 5-28.

Brown, T.C.; Daniel, T.C. 1984. Modeling forest scenic beauty: concepts and application to ponderosa pine. Res. Pap. RM-256. Fort Collins, CO: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Services, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station. 35 p.

Brush, R.O. 1979. The attractiveness of woodlands: perceptions of forest landowners in Massachusetts. *Forest Science*. 25: 495-506.

Coeterier, J.F.; Dijkstra, H. 1976. Research on the visual perception and application of visual changes in a hedgerow landscape. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 3: 421-452.

Cook, P.S.; Cable, T.T. 1995. The scenic beauty of shelterbelts on the Great Plains. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 32: 63-69.

Dutcher, D.D.; Finley, J.C.; Luloff, A.E.; Johnson, J. 2004. Landowner perceptions of protecting and establishing riparian forests: a qualitative analysis. *Society and Natural Resources*. 17: 319-332.

Dwyer, J.F.; Schroeder, H.W.; Gobster, P.H. 1991. The significance of urban trees and forests: towards a deeper understanding of values. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 17: 276-284.

Egoz, S.; Bowring, J.; Perkins, H.C. 2001. Tastes in tension: form, function, and meaning in New Zealand's farmed landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 57: 177-196.

Egoz, S.; Bowring, J.; Perkins, H.C. 2006. Making a 'mess' in the countryside: organic farming and the threats to sense of place. *Landscape Journal*. 25: 54-66.

Erickson, D.L.; Ryan, R.L.; De Young, R. 2002. Woodlots in the rural landscape: landowner motivations and management attitudes in a Michigan case study. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 58: 101-112.

Fry, G.; Herlin, I.S. 1997. The ecological and amenity functions of woodland edges in the agricultural landscape: a basis for design and management. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 37: 45-55.

Gobster, P.H. 1999. An ecological aesthetic for forest landscape management. *Landscape Journal*. 18: 54-64.

Gregory, K.J.; Davis, R.J. 1993. The perception of riverscape aesthetics: an example from two Hampshire rivers. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 39: 171-185.

Hands, D.E.; Brown, R.D. 2002. Enhancing visual preference of ecological rehabilitation sites. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 58: 57-70.

- Herzog, T.R. A cognitive analysis of preference for waterscapes. 1985. *Journal of Environmental Psychology*. 5: 225-241.
- Herzog, T.R.; Herbert, E.J.; Kaplan, R.; Crooks, C.L. 2000. Cultural and developmental comparisons of landscape perceptions and preferences. *Environment and Behavior*. 32: 323-346.
- Kaplan, R.; Kaplan, S.; Ryan, R.L. 1998. *With people in mind: design and management of everyday nature*. Washington DC: Island Press. 244 p.
- Karjalainen, E.; Komulainen, M. 1998. Field afforestation preferences: a case study in northeastern Finland. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 43: 79-90.
- Kellomaki, S.; Savolainen, R. 1984. The scenic value of the forest landscape as assessed in the field and the laboratory. *Landscape Planning*. 11: 97-107.
- Kuo, F.E. 2001. Coping with poverty: impacts of environment and attention in the inner city. *Environment and Behavior*. 33: 5-34.
- Lamb, R.J.; Purcell, A.T. 1990. Perception of naturalness in landscape and its relationship to vegetation structure. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 19: 333-352.
- Lohr, V.I.; Pearson-Mims, C.H. 2006. Responses to scenes with spreading, rounded, and conical tree forms. *Environment and Behavior*. 38: 667-688.
- Matsuoka, R.H. 2002. Increasing the acceptability of urban nature through effective cues to care: a study of the Lower Arroyo Seco Natural Park, Pasadena, California. Pomona, CA: California State Polytechnic University. M.S. thesis.
- Misgav, A. 2000. Visual preference of the public for vegetation groups in Israel. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 48: 143-159.
- Nassauer, J.I. 1988. The aesthetics of horticulture: neatness as a form of care. *HortScience*. 23: 973-977.
- Nassauer, J.I. 1992. The appearance of ecological systems as a matter of policy. *Landscape Ecology*. 6: 239-250.
- Nassauer, J.I. 1993. Ecological function and the perception of suburban residential landscapes. In: Gobster, R., ed. *Managing urban and high-use recreation settings*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-163. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 55-60.
- Nassauer, J.I. 1995. Messy ecosystems: orderly frames. *Landscape Journal*. 14: 161-170.
- Nassauer, J.I. 2004. Monitoring the success of metropolitan wetland restorations: cultural sustainability and ecological function. *Wetlands*. 24: 756-765.
- Nelson, W.R., Jr. 1976. Esthetic considerations in the selection and use of trees in the urban environment. In: Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-22. Upper Darby: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. 13-24 p.
- Ode, A. 2003. Visual aspects in urban woodland management and planning. Alnarp, Sweden: Swedish University of Agricultural Sciences. 41 p. Ph.D. dissertation.
- Parsons, R. 1995. Conflict between ecological sustainability and environmental aesthetics: conundrum, canard or curiosity. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 32: 227-244.
- Ribes, R.G. 1989. The aesthetics of forestry: what has empirical preference research taught us. *Environmental Management*. 13: 55-74.
- Ryan, R.L. 1998. Local perceptions and values for a midwestern river corridor. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 42: 225-237.
- Ryan, R.L.; Erickson, D.L.; De Young, R. 2003. Farmers' motivations for adopting conservation practices along riparian zones in a mid-western agricultural landscape. *Journal of Environmental Planning and Management*. 46: 19-37.
- Schrader, C.C. 1995. Rural greenway planning: the role of streamland perception in landowner acceptance of land management strategies. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 375-390.
- Schroeder, H.W.; Green, T.L. 1985. Public preference for tree density in municipal parks. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 11: 272-277.
- Schroeder, H.W.; Orland, B. 1994. Viewer preference for spatial arrangement of park trees: an application of video-imaging technology. *Environmental Management*. 18: 119-128.

Sheppard, S.R.J. 2000. Beyond visual resource management: emerging theories of an ecological aesthetic and visible stewardship. In: Sheppard, S.R.J.; Harshaw, H., eds. *Forests and landscapes: linking ecology, sustainability, and aesthetics*. Wallingford, UK: CABI, IUFRO Research Series: 149-173.

Smardon, R.C. 1988. Perception and aesthetics of the urban environment: review of the role of vegetation. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 15: 86-106.

Sullivan, W.C. 1994. Perceptions of the rural-urban fringe: citizen preferences for natural and developed settings. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 29: 85-101.

Summit, J.; Sommer, R. 1999. Further studies of preferred tree shapes. *Environment and Behavior*. 31: 550-576.

Ulrich, R. 1986. Human response to vegetation and landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 13: 29-44.

Urban, M.A. 2005. Values and ethical beliefs regarding agricultural drainage in central Illinois, USA. *Society and Natural Resources*. 18: 173-189.

Yarrow, C. 1966. A preliminary survey of the public's concepts of amenity in British forestry. *Forestry*. 39: 59-67.

6.6 Attractive roadside corridors

Akbar, K.F.; Hale, W.H.G.; Headley, A.D. 2003. Assessment of scenic beauty of the roadside vegetation in northern England. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 63: 139-144.

Brush, R.; Chenoweth, R.E.; Barman, T. 2000. Group differences in the enjoyability of driving through rural landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 47: 39-45.

Cackowski, J.M.; Nasar, J.L. 2003. The restorative effects of roadside vegetation: implications for automobile driver anger and frustration. *Environment and Behavior*. 35: 736-751.

Clay, G.R.; Daniel, T.C. 2000. Scenic landscape assessment: the effects of land management jurisdiction on public perception of scenic beauty. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 49: 1-13.

Cook, P.S.; Cable, T.T. 1995. The scenic beauty of shelterbelts on the Great Plains. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 32: 63-69.

Dwyer, J.F.; Schroeder, H.W.; Gobster, P.H. 1991. The significance of urban trees and forests: towards a deeper understanding of values. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 17: 276-284.

Froment, J. and G. Domon. 2006. Viewer appreciation of highway landscapes: the contribution of ecologically managed embankments in Quebec, Canada. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 78: 14-32

Hands, D.E.; Brown, R.D. 2002. Enhancing visual preference of ecological rehabilitation sites. *Landscape and Urban Planning* 58:57-70.

Kaplan, R.; Kaplan, S.; Ryan, R.L. 1998. *With people in mind: design and management of everyday nature*. Washington DC: Island Press. 244 p.

Kellomaki, S.; Savolainen, R. 1984. The scenic value of the forest landscape as assessed in the field and the laboratory. *Landscape Planning*. 11: 97-107.

Mok, J.H.; Landphair, H.C.; Naderi, J.R. 2006. Landscape improvement impacts on roadside safety in Texas. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 78: 263-274.

Nelson, W.R., Jr. 1976. Esthetic considerations in the selection and use of trees in the urban environment. In: Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-22. Upper Darby: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. 13-24 p.

Sullivan, W.C.; Lovell, S.T. 2006. Improving the visual quality of commercial development at the rural-urban fringe. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 77: 152-166.

Summit, J.; Sommer, R. 1999. Further studies of preferred tree shapes. *Environment and Behavior*. 31: 550-576.

Turner, D.S.; Mansfield, E.R. 1990. Urban trees and roadside safety. *Journal of Transportation Engineering*. 116: 90-104.

Ulrich, R.S. 1973. *Scenery and the shopping trip: the roadside environment as a factor in route choice*. Michigan Geographical Publication No. 12. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan.

Ulrich, R. 1986. Human response to vegetation and landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 13: 29-44.

Wolf, K.L. 2003. Freeway roadside management: the urban forest beyond the white line. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 29: 127-136.

6.7 Buffers for visual screening

Brush, R.O.; Williamson, D.N.; Fabos, J.G. 1979. Visual screening potential of forest vegetation. *Urban Ecology*. 4: 207-216.

Drummond, R.R.; Lackey, E.E. 1956. Visibility in some forest stands of the United States. Tech. Rep. EP-36. Natick, MA: Environmental Protection Research Division, Headquarters Quartermaster Research and Development Command. 25 p.

Hull, R.B.; Robertson, D.P.; Buhyoff, G.J.; Kendra, A. 2000. What are we hiding behind the visual buffer strip? *Journal of Forestry*. 98: 34-38.

Kaplan, R.; Kaplan, S.; Ryan, R.L. 1998. *With people in mind: design and management of everyday nature*. Washington DC: Island Press. 244 p.

McPherson, G. 1988. Functions of buffer plantings in urban environments. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*. 22/23: 281-298.

Mok, J.H.; Landphair, H.C.; Naderi, J.R. 2006. Landscape improvement impacts on roadside safety in Texas. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 78: 263-274.

Reethof, G.; Heisler, G.M. 1976. Trees and forests for noise abatement and visual screening. In: Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-22. Upper Darby, PA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station: 39-48.

Turner, D.S.; Mansfield, E.R. 1990. Urban trees and roadside safety. *Journal of Transportation Engineering*. 116: 90-104.

7.0 Outdoor Recreation

7.1 Trail design and wildlife

Beale, C.M.; Monaghan, P. 2004. Human disturbance: people as predation-free predators? *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 41: 335-343.

Benninger-Truax, M.; Vankat, J.L.; Schaefer, R.L. 1992. Trail corridors as habitat and conduits for movement of plant species in Rocky Mountain National Park, Colorado. *Landscape Ecology*. 6: 269-278.

Boyle, S.A.; Samson, F.B. 1985. Effects of nonconsumptive recreation on wildlife: a review. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 13: 110-116.

Briffett, C. 2001. Is managed recreational use compatible with effective habitat and wildlife occurrence in urban open space corridor systems? *Landscape Research*. 26: 137-163.

Cole, D. 1993. Minimizing conflict between recreation and nature conservation. In: Smith, D.S.; Hellmund, P.C., eds. *Ecology of greenways*. Minneapolis: Minnesota Press: 105-122.

Colorado State Parks. 1998. *Planning trails with wildlife in mind*. Denver: Trails and wildlife task force, Colorado state parks, and Hellmund Associates. 51 p.

Dickens, S.J.M.; Gerhardt, F.; Collinge, S.K. 2005. Recreational portage trails as corridors facilitating non-native plant invasions of the Boundary Waters Canoe Area Wilderness. *Conservation Biology*. 19: 1653-1657.

Hesselbarth, W.; Vachowski, B. 2004. *Trail construction and maintenance handbook*. 0023-2839-MTDC-P. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Technology and Development Program. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/00232839/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].

Hickman, S. 1990. Evidence of edge species attraction to nature trails within deciduous forest. *Natural Areas Journal*. 10: 3-5.

Kent, R.L.; Elliott, C.L. 1995. Scenic routes linking and protecting natural and cultural landscape features: a greenway skeleton. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 341-355.

Mason, J.; Moorman, C.; Hess, G.; Sinclair, K. 2007. Designing suburban greenways to provide habitat for forest-breeding birds. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 80: 53-164.

Miller, S.; Knight, R.; Miller, C. 1998. Influence of recreational trails on breeding bird communities. *Ecological Applications*. 8: 162-169.

Miller, S.; Knight, R.; Miller, C. 2001. Wildlife responses to pedestrians and dogs. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 29: 124-132.

Poague, K.L.; Johnson, R.J.; Young, L.J. 2000. Bird use of rural and urban converted railroad right-of-ways in southeast Nebraska. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 28: 852-864.

Potito, A.P.; Beatty, S.W. 2005. Impacts of recreation trails on exotic and ruderal species distribution in grassland areas along the Colorado Front Range. *Environmental Management*. 36: 230-236.

Schiller, A.; Horn, S.P. 1997. Wildlife conservation in urban greenways of the mid-southeastern United States. *Urban Ecosystems*. 1: 103-116.

Sinclair, K.E.; Hess, G.R.; Moorman, C.E.; Mason, J.H. 2005. Mammalian nest predators respond to greenway width, landscape context, and habitat structure. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 71: 277-293.

Steinholtz, R.T.; Vachowski, B. 2001. Wetland trail design and construction. Tech. Rep. 0123-2833-MTDC. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Missoula Technology and Development Center. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/01232833/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].

Stohlgren, T.J.; Bull, K.A.; Otsuki, Y.; Villa, C.A.; Lee, M. 1998. Riparian zones as havens for exotic plant species in central grasslands. *Plant Ecology*. 138: 113-125.

Taylor, A.R.; Knight, R.L. 2003. Wildlife responses to recreation and associated visitor perceptions. *Ecological Applications*. 13: 951-963.

Tyser, R.W.; Worley, C.A. 1992. Alien flora in grasslands adjacent to road and trail corridors in Glacier National Park, Montana (USA). *Conservation Biology*. 6: 253-262.

7.2 Flight initiation distance buffers

Altmann, M. 1958. The flight distance in free-ranging big game. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 22: 207-209.

Beale, C.M.; Monaghan, P. 2004. Human disturbance: people as predation-free predators? *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 41: 335-343.

Blumstein, D.T.; Fernandez-Juricic, E.; Zollner, P.A.; Garity, S.C. 2005. Inter-specific variation in avian responses to human disturbance. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. 42: 943-953.

Blumstein, D.T.; Anthony, L.L.; Horcourt, R.; Ross, G. 2003. Testing a key assumption of wildlife buffer zones: is flight initiation distance a species-specific trait. *Biological Conservation*. 110: 97-100.

Colorado State Parks. 1998. Planning trails with wildlife in mind. Denver: Trails and wildlife task force, Colorado state parks, and Hellmund Associates. 51 p.

Cooke, A.S. 1980. Observations on how close certain passerine species will tolerate an approaching human in rural and suburban areas. *Biological Conservation*. 18: 85-88.

Erwin, R.M. 1989. Responses to human intruders by birds nesting in colonies: experimental results and management guidelines. *Colonial Waterbirds*. 12: 104-108.

Fernandez-Juricic, E.; Vaca, R.; Schroeder, N. 2004. Spatial and temporal responses of forest birds to human approaches in a protected area and implications for two management strategies. *Biological Conservation*. 117: 407-416.

Fernandez-Juricic, E.; Venier, M.P.; Renison, D.; Blumstein, D.T. 2005. Sensitivity of wildlife to spatial patterns of recreationist behavior: a critical assessment of minimum approaching distances and buffer areas for grassland birds. *Biological Conservation*. 125: 225-235.

Holmes, T.L.; Knight, R.L.; Stegall, L.; Craig, G.R. 1993. Response of wintering grassland raptors to human disturbance. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 21: 461-468.

Miller, S.; Knight, R.; Miller, C. 1998. Influence of recreational trails on breeding bird communities. *Ecological Applications*. 8: 162-169.

Miller, S.; Knight, R.; Miller, C. 2001. Wildlife responses to pedestrians and dogs. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 29: 124-132.

Richardson, C.T.; Miller, C.K. 1997. Recommendations for protecting raptors from human disturbance: a review. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 25: 634-638.

Rodgers, J.A., Jr.; Smith, H.T. 1995. Set-back distances to protect nesting bird colonies from human disturbance in Florida. *Conservation Biology*. 9: 89-99.

Rodgers, J.A., Jr.; Smith, H.T. 1997. Buffer zone distances to protect foraging and loafing waterbirds from human disturbance in Florida. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*. 25: 139-145.

Schultz, R.D.; Bailey, J.A. 1978. Responses of national park elk to human activity. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 42: 91-100.

Taylor, A.R.; Knight, R.L. 2003. Wildlife responses to recreation and associated visitor perceptions. *Ecological Applications*. 13: 951-963.

7.3 Trails along riparian corridors

Cole, D. 1993. Minimizing conflict between recreation and nature conservation. In: Smith, D.S.; Hellmund, P.C., eds. *Ecology of greenways*. Minneapolis: Minnesota Press: 105-122.

Hellmund, P.C.; Smith, D.S. 2006. *Designing greenways: sustainable landscapes for nature and people*. Washington, DC: Island Press. 270 p.

Hesselbarth, W.; Vachowski, B. 2004. Trail construction and maintenance handbook. 0023-2839-MTDC-P. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Technology and Development Program. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/00232839/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].

Manning, R.E. 1979. Impacts of recreation on riparian soils and vegetation. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 15: 30-43.

Miller, J.R.; Hobbs, N.T. 2000. Recreational trails, human activity, and nest predation in lowland riparian areas. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 50: 227-236.

Miller, J.R.; Wiens, J.A.; Hobbs, N.T.; Theobald, D.M. 2003. Effects of human settlement on bird communities in lowland riparian areas of Colorado. *Ecological Applications*. 13: 1041-1059.

Miller, S.; Knight, R.; Miller, C. 1998. Influence of recreational trails on breeding bird communities. *Ecological Applications*. 8: 162-169.

Schaefer, J.M.; Brown, M.T. 1992. Designing and protecting river corridors for wildlife. *Rivers*. 3(1): 14-26.

Settergren, C.D. 1977. Impacts of river recreation use on streambank soils and vegetation – state of the knowledge. In: *River recreation management and research*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-28. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 55-60.

Steinholtz, R.T.; Vachowski, B. 2001. Wetland trail design and construction. Tech. Rep. 0123-2833-MTDC. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Missoula Technology and Development Center. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/01232833/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].

Stohlgren, T.J.; Bull, K.A.; Otsuki, Y. [and others]. 1998. Riparian zones as havens for exotic plant species in central grasslands. *Plant Ecology*. 138: 113-125.

7.4 Soil erosion and trail recreation

Brown, J.H., Jr.; Kalisz, S.P.; Wright, W.R. 1977. Effects of recreational use on forested sites. *Environmental Geology*. 1: 425-431.

Bryan, R. 1977. The influence of soil properties on degradation of mountain hiking trails at Grovelsjon. *Geografiska Annaler*. 59: 49-65.

Burde, J.H.; Renfro, J.R. 1986. Use impacts on the Appalachian Trail. In: Lucas, R., ed. *Proceedings of the national wilderness research conference: current research*. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-212. Ogden, UT: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station: 138-143.

Deluca, T.H.; Patterson, W.A., IV; Freimund, W.A.; Cole, D.N. 1998. Influence of llamas, horses, and hikers on soil erosion from established recreation trails in western Montana, USA. *Environmental Management*. 22: 255-262.

Gabriels, D.; Moldenhauer, W.C. 1978. Size distribution of eroded material from simulated rainfall: effect over a range of texture. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 42: 954-958.

Green, D.M. 1998. Recreational impacts on erosion and runoff in a central Arizona riparian area. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 53: 38-42.

Hellmund, P.C.; Smith, D.S. 2006. *Designing greenways: sustainable landscapes for nature and people*. Washington, DC: Island Press. 270 p.

- Hesselbarth, W.; Vachowski, B. 2004. Trail construction and maintenance handbook. 0023-2839-MTDC-P. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Technology and Development Program. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/00232839/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].
- Jubenville, A.; O'Sullivan, K. 1987. Relationship of vegetation type and slope gradient to trail erosion in interior Alaska. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 42: 450-452.
- Lehvavirta, S. 1999. Structural elements as barriers against wear in urban woodlands. *Urban Ecosystems*. 3: 45-56.
- Leung, Y.; Marion, J.L. 1996. Trail degradation as influenced by environmental factors: a state-of-the-knowledge review. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 51: 130-136.
- Manning, R.E. 1979. Impacts of recreation on riparian soils and vegetation. *Water Resources Bulletin*. 15: 30-43.
- Monti, P.W.; Mackintosh, E.E. 1979. Effect of camping on surface soil properties in the boreal forest region of Northwestern Ontario, Canada. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. 43: 1024-1029.
- Parker, T.C. 2004. *Natural surface trails by design*. Boulder, CO: NatureShape. 80 p.
- Parker, T.C. 1994. *Trail design and management handbook*. Pitkin County, CO: Open Space and Trails Program. 230 p.
- Roovers, P.; Dumont, B.; Gulinck, H.; Hermy, M. 2004. Visual obstruction of herb vegetation, defining standards for natural barriers. Working papers of the Finnish Forest Research Institute 2. <http://www.metla.fi/julkaisut/workingpapers/2004/mwp002-60.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].
- Settergren, C.D. 1977. Impacts of river recreation use on streambank soils and vegetation – state of the knowledge. In: *River recreation management and research*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-28. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 55-60.
- Smith, D.S.; Hellmund, P.C., eds. 1993. *Ecology of greenways*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 222 p.
- State of New Hampshire. 2004. *Best management practices for erosion control during trail maintenance and construction*. Concord, NH: Division of Parks and Recreation, Bureau of Trails. 33 p.
- Steinholtz, R.T.; Vachowski, B. 2001. *Wetland trail design and construction*. Tech. Rep. 0123-2833-MTDC. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Missoula Technology and Development Center. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/01232833/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].
- Stevens, M.E. 1966. Soil surveys as applied to recreation site planning. *Journal of Forestry*. 64: 314-316.
- Stohlgren, T.J.; Bull, K.A.; Otsuki, Y. [and others]. 1998. Riparian zones as havens for exotic plant species in central grasslands. *Plant Ecology*. 138: 113-125.
- 7.5 Trail users preferences**
- Bjerke, T.; Østdahl, T.; Thrane, C.; Strumse, E. 2006. Vegetation density for urban parks and perceived appropriateness for recreation. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 5: 35-44.
- Gobster, P.H.; Westphal, L.M. 2004. The human dimensions of urban greenways: planning for recreation and related experiences. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 68: 147-165.
- Hammit, W.E.; Cherem, G.J. 1980. Photographic perceptions as an on-site tool for designing forest trails. *Southern Journal of Applied Forestry*. 4: 94-97.
- Herzog, T.R. 1985. A cognitive analysis of preference for waterscapes. *Journal of Environmental Psychology*. 5: 225-241.
- Herzog, T.R.; Herbert, E.G.; Kaplan, R.; Crooks, C.L. 2000. Cultural and developmental comparisons of landscape perceptions and preferences. *Environment and Behavior*. 32: 323-346.
- Herzog, T.R.; Kirk, K.M. 2005. Pathway curvature and border visibility as predictors of preference and danger in forest settings. *Environment and Behavior*. 37: 620-639.
- Herzog, T.R.; Kropscott, L.S. 2004. Legibility, mystery, and visual access as predictors of preference and perceived danger in forest settings without pathways. *Environment and Behavior*. 36: 659-677.
- Herzog, T.R.; Kutzli, G.E. 2002. Preference and perceived danger in field/forest settings. *Environment and Behavior*. 34: 819-835.
- Hull, R.B.; Stewart, W.P. 1995. The landscape encountered and experienced while hiking. *Environment and Behavior*. 27: 404-426.

Kaplan, R.; Kaplan, S.; Ryan, R.L. 1998. *With people in mind: design and management of everyday nature*. Washington DC: Island Press. 244 p.

Kent, R.L.; Elliott, C.L. 1995. Scenic routes linking and protecting natural and cultural landscape features: a greenway skeleton. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 341-355.

Luymes, D.T.; Tamminga, K. 1995. Integrating public safety and use into planning urban greenways. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 391-400.

Lynn, N.A.; Brown, R.D. 2003. Effects of recreational use impacts on hiking experiences in natural areas. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 64: 77-87.

Talbot, J.F. 1993. Public participation in rail-trail planning: two case studies. In: Gobster, R., ed. *Managing urban and high-use recreation settings*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-163. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 13-16.

7.6 Trail layout

Gobster, P.H. 1995. Perception and use of metropolitan greenway system for recreation. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 401-413.

Hellmund, P.C.; Smith, D.S. 2006. *Designing greenways: sustainable landscapes for nature and people*. Washington, DC: Island Press. 270 p.

Lindsey, G.; Han, Y.; Wilson, J.; Yang, J. 2006. Neighborhood correlates of urban trail use. *Journal of Physical Activity and Health*. 3 Suppl 1: S139-S157.

Linehan, J.; Gross, M.; Finn, J. 1995. Greenway planning: developing a landscape ecological network approach. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 179-193.

Randall, T.A.; Baetz, B.W. 2001. Evaluating pedestrian connectivity for suburban sustainability. *Journal of Urban Planning and Development*. 127: 1-15.

Shriver, K. 1997. Influence of environmental design on pedestrian travel behavior in for Austin neighborhoods. *Transportation Research Record*. 1578: 64-75.

Siderelis, C.; Moore, R. 1995. Outdoor recreation net benefits of rail-trails. *Journal of Leisure Research*. 27: 344-359.

Smith, D.S.; Hellmund, P.C., eds. 1993. *Ecology of greenways*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 222 p.

Steinholtz, R.T.; Vachowski, B. 2001. Wetland trail design and construction. Tech. Rep. 0123-2833-MTDC. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Missoula Technology and Development Center. <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/fspubs/01232833/>. [Date accessed: September 24, 2007].

Talbot, J.F. 1993. Public participation in rail-trail planning: two case studies. In: Gobster, R., ed. *Managing urban and high-use recreation settings*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-163. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 13-16.

7.7 Trail access and usage

Bjerke, T.; Østdahl, T.; Thrane, C.; Strumse, E. 2006. Vegetation density for urban parks and perceived appropriateness for recreation. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 5: 35-44.

Brownson, R.C.; Housemann, R.A.; Brown, D.R. [and others]. 2000. Promoting physical activity in rural communities: walking trail access, use, and effects. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*. 18: 235-241.

Gobster, P.H. 1995. Perception and use of metropolitan greenway system for recreation. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 401-413.

Gobster, P.H.; Westphal, L.M. 2004. The human dimensions of urban greenways: planning for recreation and related experiences. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 68: 147-165.

Gordon, P.M.; Zizzi, S.J.; Pauline, J. 2004. Use of a community trail among new and habitual exercisers: a preliminary assessment. *Preventing Chronic Disease*. 1(4): 1-11.

Krizek, K.J.; Johnson, P.J. 2006. Proximity to trails and retail: effects of urban cycling and walking. *Journal of the American Planning Association*. 72: 33-42.

- Lindsey, G.; Han, Y.; Wilson, J.; Yang, J. 2006. Neighborhood correlates of urban trail use. *Journal of Physical Activity and Health*. 3 Suppl 1: S139-S157.
- Owen, N.; Humpel, N.; Leslie, E. [and others]. 2004. Understanding environmental influences on walking: review and research agenda. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*. 27: 67-75.
- Pucher, J.; Buehler, R. 2006. Why Canadians cycle more than Americans: A comparative analysis of bicycling trends and policies. *Transport Policy*. 13: 265-279.
- Ryan, R.L.; Fabos, J.G.; Allen, J.J. 2006. Understanding opportunities and challenges for collaborative greenway planning in New England. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 76: 172-191.
- Saelens, B.E.; Sallis, J.F.; Frank, L.D. 2003. Environmental correlates of walking and cycling: findings from the transportation, urban design, and planning literatures. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*. 25: 80-91.
- Shriver, K. 1997. Influence of environmental design on pedestrian travel behavior in for Austin neighborhoods. *Transportation Research Record*. 1578: 64-75.
- Talbot, J.F. 1993. Public participation in rail-trail planning: two case studies. In: Gobster, R., ed. *Managing urban and high-use recreation settings*. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-163. St. Paul, MN: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station: 13-16.
- Troped, P.J.; Saunders, R.P.; Pate, R.R. [and others]. 2001. Associations between self-reported and objective physical environmental factors and use of a community rail-trail. *Preventive Medicine*. 32: 191-200.
- Wendel-Vos, G.C.; Schuit, A.J.; de Niet, R. [and others]. 2004. Factors of the physical environment associated with walking and bicycling. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 36: 725-730.
- Westphal, L.M.; Leber, S.R. 1986. Predicting the effect of alternative trail design on visitor satisfaction in park settings. *Landscape Journal*. 5: 39-44.
- 7.8 Greenways and public safety**
- Bjerke, T.; Østdahl, T.; Thrane, C.; Strumse, E. 2006. Vegetation density for urban parks and perceived appropriateness for recreation. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*. 5: 35-44.
- Crewe, K. 2001. Linear parks and urban neighbourhoods: a study of the crime impact of the Boston south-west corridor. *Journal of Urban Design*, 6: 245-264.
- Flink, C.A.; Olka, K.; Searns, R.M. 2001. *Trails for the twenty-first century: planning, design, and management manual for multi-use trails*. Washington, DC: Island Press. 210 p.
- Gobster, P.H.; Westphal, L.M. 2004. The human dimensions of urban greenways: planning for recreation and related experiences. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 68: 147-165.
- Greer, D.L. 2000. Omaha recreational trails: their effect on property values and public safety. Omaha, NE: University of Nebraska, Recreation and Leisure Studies Program. 18 p. <http://atfiles.org/files/pdf/omahastudy.pdf>. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].
- Herzog, T.R.; Kirk, K.M. 2005. Pathway curvature and border visibility as predictors of preference and danger in forest settings. *Environment and Behavior*. 37: 620-639.
- Herzog, T.R.; Kropscott, L.S. 2004. Legibility, mystery, and visual access as predictors of preference and perceived danger in forest settings without pathways. *Environment and Behavior*. 36: 659-677.
- Herzog, T.R.; Kutzli, G.E. 2002. Preference and perceived danger in field/forest settings. *Environment and Behavior*. 34: 819-835.
- Jorgensen, A.; Hitchmough, J.; Calvert, T. 2002. Woodland spaces and edges: their impact on perception of safety and preference. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 60: 135-150.
- Kuo, F. 2003. The role of arboriculture in a healthy social ecology. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 29: 148-155.
- Kuo, F.; Sullivan, W.C. 2001. Environment and crime in the inner city: does vegetation reduce crime? *Environment and Behavior*. 33: 343-367.
- Luyms, D.T.; Tamminga, K. 1995. Integrating public safety and use into planning urban greenways. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 33: 391-400.
- Nasar, J.L.; Fischer, B.; Grannis, M. 1993. Proximate physical cues to fear of crime. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 26: 161-178.

Schroeder, H.W.; Anderson, L.M. 1984. Perception of personal safety in urban recreation sites. *Journal of Leisure Research*. 16: 178-194.

Talbot, J.F.; Kaplan, R. 1984. Needs and fears: the response to trees and nature in the inner city. *Journal of Arboriculture*. 10: 222-228.

Tracey, T.; Morris, H. 1998. Rail-trails and safe communities: the experience on 372 trails. Washington, DC: Rails-to-Trails Conservancy. 33 p. http://www.railtrail.org/resources/documents/resource_docs/tgc_safecomm.pdf. [Date accessed: September 26, 2007].

Ulrich, R.S. 1986. Human responses to vegetation and landscapes. *Landscape and Urban Planning*. 13: 29-44.